Curtin University Sustainability Policy (CUSP) Institute

Biophilic Design:
A Social Movement Journey

Jana Christina Söderlund

This thesis is presented for the Degree of
Doctor of Philosophy
of
Curtin University

September 2015

DECLARATION

To the best of my knowledge and belief this thesis contains no material previously published by any other person except where due acknowledgment has been made.

This thesis contains no material which has been accepted for the award of any other degree or diploma in any university.

Human Ethics (For projects involving human participants/tissue, etc) The research presented and reported in this thesis was conducted in accordance with the National Health and Medical Research Council National Statement on Ethical Conduct in Human Research (2007) – updated February 2014. The proposed research study received human research ethics approval from the Curtin University Human Research Ethics Committee (EC00262), Approval Number #..RGS-09-12

Signature:

Date:

ABSTRACT

Cities are experiencing rapid population growth and an urban transformation to post-industrial knowledge-based economies. Within this transition is a proposed redefining of urbanites' relationship with nature which suggests that significant human nature interaction should occur within cities, not just outside. Biophilic design has emerged as a social movement which suggests there is an innate human need to affiliate with nature within the built environment. The thesis begins by examining the evidence for this innate human need and how this flows into socio-psychological and environmental benefits. These are likely to lead to economic benefits. Together these factors create the basis for a social movement which is the focus of this thesis.

Social movements begin with a core group of people uniting with a shared social goal, typically towards change. They are categorised into three stages of development: emergence, coalescence and mainstream. In order to understand biophilic design as a social movement an immersive journey of heuristic inquiry was undertaken. Heuristic inquiry has four phases which were used to trace the biophilic design social movement:

1. Focus – the initial engagement through the literature (Chapters 2 and 3);
2. Immersion – the direct experience in a local journey (Chapter 4) and a global journey (Chapter 5) involving interviews with key players in the social movement;
3. Incubation – the writing of the immersive journal and summarising the interviews (Chapter 4 and 5) is combined with reflection on the collected data enabling insight for the final stage; and
4. Creative Synthesis – the social movement journey from emergence to coalescence to mainstream is analysed (Chapter 6) in terms of language, the motivators and drivers of change, the barriers and silos preventing change, the interplay between these factors and the steps towards mainstreaming.

The thesis concludes that biophilic urban design is a social movement moving quickly into the mainstream phase. The thesis is completed with a ten step framework for assisting in the mainstreaming of the social movement of biophilic design based on the conclusions of the heuristic inquiry.

Connecting urbanites to nature through biophilic design appears to encourage a desire for more. The biophilic design social movement journey, if enabled, could ripple through and transform our sterile urban landscapes into urban nature habitats.

Dedicated to the memory of my parents

who held my hand at the beginning of this journey and my heart at the end

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

There have been many people who have helped me throughout this research and I am extremely grateful to all.

In particular I would like to express wholehearted thanks to:

Professor Peter Newman, this research would not have happened without the faith and encouragement of my prime supervisor and I extend deep thanks to him for his patience, perseverance and precious time and energy throughout.

Annie Matan, my co-supervisor for her patience and precision.

Tim Beatley, who provided the initial inspiration.

My Thesis Chair Dora Marinova for the hot chocolate that got the journey started.

Imran, Moshe and Phil, whose morning smiles and humour were my daily sustenance. Cole who shared and cared with much encouragement and faith.

All staff and fellow PhD students at CUSP who together supported the journey.

May Carter for her assistance with the Greenskins project.

The City of Fremantle especially Mayor Brad Pettitt and Michael Leers for their willingness and dedication to the green wall trial.

The many people who gave of their time, energy and passion to share their stories in the interviews.

My friends for their support and encouragement, particularly Adie who shared the mother role when needed and suggested the US trip.

My son Bodhi for his support and surprise return.

This research was supported by APA, CUPSA and SBE. Thank you.

My biggest most heartfelt gratitude and thanks go to my son Jett who journeyed with me through the years of the research. He provided technical assistance and was my camera man and travelling companion. Most of all he stepped up when needed, cooked me meals, was amazingly understanding and patient and never faltered with a loving hug when needed.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

TABLE OF FIGURES

TABLE OF TABLES

CHAPTER ONE
INTRODUCTION AND METHODOLOGY

1.1 Introduction

Cities around the world are growing dramatically. More people now, in 2015, live in cities than in rural areas (Lehmann, 2015, p. 1). “By 2030, 60 percent of the world population, or 4.9 billion people, are expected to live in urban areas” (Girardet, 2015, p.4). Human settlement has not occurred in such a way before. High fossil fuel and resource consumption has enabled this expansive urbanisation while contributing significantly to global warming and climate change (Giradet, 2015; Lehmann, 2015; Haas & Olsson, 2014). Yet, cities are not only expanding, they are changing in their roles and in their function. De-industrialisation, increased mobility and a growing service sector have seen urban areas transform into post-industrial knowledge based economies of consumption rather than production (Olsson & Haas, 2014). Emerging from this shift in focus of cities’ function is an evolving change in form: a change in the way buildings are being designed, constructed and landscaped.

Typically, industrialised cities, with their focus on function, became harsh, engineered landscapes of paved surfaces and inner city urban canyons. Fromm (1964), and more recently Salingaros and Masden (2008), recognised this, proposing that contemporary cities can be viewed as mechanistic, sterile, industrialised, commoditised and devoid of nature. Fromm (1964) also argued that urban dwellers were facing a disconnect from nature and loss of the psychological benefits that can ensue from a healthy human-nature relationship. To follow a positive, progressive pathway in life Fromm proposed that a love of life was necessary. He coined the term ‘biophilia’ to express this human-nature connection, with ‘bio’ meaning life and ‘philia’, the opposite of ‘phobia’, meaning attraction or love (Fromm, 1964). Significantly, years later another scholar, prominent sociobiologist, Edward Wilson, utilised Fromm’s term biophilia to describe emotions which were provoked in a period of immersion in nature (Wilson, 1984). Wilson defined biophilia as the “innate tendency to focus on life and life-like processes” (Wilson,1984, p.1). His book, *Biophilia*, presented a similar perspective to earlier conservationists such as Arne Naess (1989), though with a perception of the human

connection to nature as an innate, biological need, not solely an inherent interdependence. Traditionally there have always been thinkers who have recognised human connection and interdependence with nature and encouraged others to do the same (Leopold, 1949; Naess, 1989). Illustrative descriptions of nature and ecosystems were set in the forests, rivers and natural areas, not in the cities. People travelled outside of the city to have a nature experience. Conservation, environmental or deep ecology movements tended to be 'anti' cities, focussed on protecting the nature that remained outside urban areas. Yet the shift in the function of cities, globalisation and the emergence of compact city theory (Lehmann, 2015) is paving the way for a redefining of urbanites' relationship with nature, utilising the term biophilia introduced by Fromm in the 1960s.

Fromm's, and later Wilson's, suggestion of a biological need for nature which influences behaviour provoked interest and led to the assemblage of a group of interested scholars a decade later to discuss the concept which included Kellert, a socio-biologist. From this gathering, a hypothesis emerged, 'the Biophilia Hypothesis', with a book of the same name edited by Kellert and Wilson (Kellert & Wilson, 1993). The hypothesis formalised Wilson's earlier theory and proposed that biophilia, a love of life, is inherent and part of our species evolutionary heritage (Kellert, 1993, p. 21). *The Biophilia Hypothesis* received a positive reception amongst scholars but it was not until some years later, in 2007, that Kellert brought together a diverse group including academics, industry representatives and real estate investors who had shown a shared interest in increasing the opportunity for nature to find expression in urban design. Many ideas were discussed and design principles emerged. These resulted in a book called *Biophilic Design* (Kellert, Heerwagen & Mador, 2008) which introduced the concept and rationale for nature no longer being minimised in cities but recognised as having much to offer. Biophilic design is *"*the expression of the inherent human need to affiliate with nature in the design of the built environment*"* (Kellert & Heerwagen, 2008, p.viii).

With technological advancements supported by academic research and literature, the inclusion of nature in cities has, in many cities, been rapidly, and globally, expanding. What began with a term coined by Fromm has attracted further investigation and development by interested people with common goals and a desire to enable a greater opportunity for urban dwellers to affiliate with nature, and all the benefits this provides, within the built environment. The focus on the human-nature connection is no longer relegated to conservationists and natural areas

outside of cities; it is coming from urban inhabitants. A social movement based on biophilic design has evolved.

The movement appears to be supported by increasing urban population and changing city function which has led to a mutable dynamic and interplay between urban places and spaces. This recent and expanding transformation in human urban settlement is requiring a new approach to building cities. Cities need to be designed, planned, built and retrofitted to be sustainable and liveable (Storey & Kang, 2015). Higher building density, urban canyons and paved surfaces modify local climate, particularly temperature, leading to a phenomenon known as the urban heat island effect (Mills, 2015). This correlation between increasing global urban population, climate change and urban heat island effect, and the need for liveable, higher density cities is repeated throughout sustainability literature discussing cities and design (Newman & Jennings, 2008; Owen, 2009; Steiner, 2011). Within this framework, nature and biophilic design are finding a renewed status and recognition as essential components of a healthy, sustainable city (Lehmann, 2015, p. 20).

Global examples of biophilic design demonstrate that in many instances the initiative is not purely a functional response to a city's sustainability challenges. There is a motivation beyond the function. Indicators are there that a shift in the approach to the human-nature urban connection has occurred. The principles of biophilic design represent these newly emerging initiatives that are occurring in cities. The origins of biophilic design and the fact that it signifies a social shift in thinking contribute towards defining it as a social movement.

In many global cities, biophilic design principles are being rapidly adopted. While the current literature suggests how to design with biophilia and argues for the need for biophilic design, there is little research on what the positive motivators and drivers are for the rapid uptake of biophilic design or how to catalyse uptake within cities. The aim of this dissertation is to gain an understanding of the motivators and drivers which contribute towards the successful adoption of biophilic design in cities. Cognising these motivators and drivers will reveal a guideline, or framework, for biophilic design implementation in cities.

The academic literature is segmented, with the benefits of biophilic design isolated within their social or environmental category and little research on the economic outcomes. A wholistic portrayal of the full potential of biophilic design is not readily available. By first reviewing the social, environmental and economic literature on

biophilic design this dissertation will assess the rationale for the theoretical claims of biophilia. This review will also present a more complete understanding of the social and environmental benefits of biophilic design, which together ensure economic benefits.

To assist this, it is illuminating to examine this emergence of biophilic design within a social movement framework and how it has progressed as a social movement. Social, environmental and economic motivators and drivers will all be examined. While understanding of the environmental motivators and drivers is important, they are also more apparent. An understanding of the social motivators and drivers requires a deeper investigation. Mascia et al. (2003) encapsulates this concept:

> "Although it may seem counterintuitive that the foremost influences on the success of environmental policy could be social, conservation interventions are the product of human decision-making processes and require changes in human behaviour to succeed. Thus, conservation policies and practices are inherently social phenomena, as are the intended and unintended changes in human behaviour they induce."

Social movement structure defines and guides this research by providing a list of indicators and components to study and observe. Understanding the stages that social movements progress through also provides a framework from which to assess the progression of biophilic design.

1.2 The significance of this research

With the current literature focussing on the why and how of biophilic design, with successful models and examples outlined throughout, little has been written on the social movement that the growing literature, media and experience indicates is occurring.

Beatley (2011, p. 66, p. 150) suggests the need to build social capital and leadership in biophilic urbanism, by gaining a better understanding of the social aspects involved. Van den Born, Lenders, De Groot and Huijsman (2001) researched people's visions of nature, assessing their biophilia (nature-friendliness), involving both qualitative and quantitative methodology. Their summary suggested further lines of research including how more could be done to *"…*discover lay

people's visions, and bring improved articulation of these concepts back to their originators" (Van den Born et al., 2001). They go on to suggest that "the second and quite policy relevant line for further research concerns the origins of people's visions of nature"(Van den Born et al., 2001). Their research had revealed a childhood/adulthood linkage with people's connection and view of nature, and they expressed concern that lack of nature for contemporary children was not perpetuating this connection and the "biophilic cohort" could die off (Van den Born et al., 2001). For them it is critical to see biophilic design in cities and to gain an understanding of the social drivers and motivators in achieving this.

Examination of the benefits to humans and the urban environment that biophilic design can bring raises the question of why cities have been built with such exclusion of nature. In Hillary Brown's prologue to 'Biophilic Design' (Brown 2008, p. xiv) she also queries this, viewing "this design sensibility" as "one more intuitively biologic in nature", so much so that it should be an "inherent organising principle of all works of architecture". However, common sense doesn't mean it is actually part of professional practice and policy; it has to be driven by the broader culture. This dissertation can assist in addressing these points by understanding the "drivers of the broader culture".

The documenting of the emergence of the social movement of biophilic design not only provides insights into biophilic design but also contributes to the understanding of contemporary social movements and their significance and potential to dramatically impact and change societies. This dissertation tells the story of an idea, a theory, and how this theory developed into a concept which currently is of global significance in its implementation and which shows potential for embedding in the way cities are designed.

In identifying the motivators and drivers pushing the developmental social movement stages, the research provides a template of knowledge with the potential to assist further global development of biophilic design.

Government, non-government organisations, industry involved with biophilic initiatives, and academia may gain deeper perspectives on how to progress biophilic design in their cities by understanding what may motivate and drive the players in different arenas to embrace the concept. By examining the characteristics of the biophilic design movement and identifying the strengths, characteristics, power flows, durability and triggers, policy makers will have a foundation on which to base decision making in implementing new planning guidelines for urban design.

Identifying biophilic design as a significant social movement will assist in the growth of the concept in cities. It will provide guidelines on the potential attributes to seek out and nurture and it will provide security for people wishing to invest in biophilic businesses or implementation measures.

This dissertation contributes to the field of biophilic design as it unites many elements of biophilic design which have previously been scattered throughout the literature. A larger and more comprehensive overview of biophilic design which includes social, environmental and economic benefits is presented. The environmental and social benefits of incorporating the principles of biophilic design into cities tend to be isolated from each other in research and in implementation. This translates into a lack of recognition of the full economic benefits. By uniting these silos of research and implementation in this dissertation under the term biophilic design, the full impact and benefits have a chance to be recognised. This further supports and deepens the significance of the understanding of how to motivate progression of an urban design movement that can dramatically alter the way cities are inhabited.

This dissertation also contributes to heuristic inquiry by effectively utilising the methodology for research and perhaps contributes to social movement theory though in both cases this is not the goal of the work, which is merely to utilise these approaches to better understand biophilic design.

1.3 Research questions and objectives

Overall research question

What is motivating the rapid uptake of biophilic design elements in cities globally and can they be further enabled?

Core research questions

1. Is biophilic design a new social movement?
2. Does the research literature support the assertions of the biophilic design theorists?
3. What are the motivators and drivers of the pioneering people involved in implementing biophilic design features within cities?

4. Can identified motivators and drivers for biophilic design implementation be developed into a framework to assist mainstreaming this design approach?

Research objectives

1. To imbed myself in projects and people involved in implementing biophilic design principles and to document their journey and progress.

2. To observe and record the motivators and drivers, characteristics, power flows and patterns of these journeys through a variety of mediums.

3. To determine the significance of what is happening with biophilic design as a social movement and whether these social insights can help to overcome barriers for implementation and provide guidelines for greater incorporation of biophilic design into cities.

1.4 Research framework, methods and design

1.4.1 Research framework

Background

My parents both spent their childhoods on the land and they shared a deep affinity with nature. Together they raised their children on my father's family orchard which he sold when I was two. I was raised in suburban green, with nearby sand hills and bush in which to roam with the neighbourhood kids. Every school holidays we travelled, camping and exploring. We walked trails and hugged trees; we learnt the names of the flowers and we listened to the bird calls.

When I was young and living in the suburbs we had many birds fly into our windows. I would nurse the survivors and bury the dead. As I grew the casualties diminished, the bird calls lessened and the houses developed. The sand hills and bush disappeared. After my school years I travelled, exploring the greater world, mostly in the 'underdeveloped' countries, enjoying spending time with peoples deeply connected to the earth. The highlight was time spent with the Mbuti tribe in Africa, the pygmy people. With them I learnt to live off the land, making bark cloth, ropes

and hunting nets from what the forest provided. The Mbutis' survival skills and connection with the rhythms of the forest were impressive and profound. I felt a deep peace and enjoyment living in my leaf hut deep in the Ituri forest of Zaire.

After three and a half years of travel I returned to my home town and spent some time adjusting to urban life. I finished my environmental science degree, incorporating some philosophy units in which I was later asked to tutor. I related to the concepts presented in these units, discovering that they echoed many of the insights I had travelling. My honours thesis reflected my passion, being titled *The protection of wilderness areas involving indigenous people.* The birth of my first son kindled a strong desire to raise him in the rural countryside. When he was four the opportunity came and we moved to a beautiful property in the south western area of Australia with both ocean and forest.

After 16 years of rural living, life circumstances required a move back to the city. I struggled with the right angles and paved surfaces; gone were the curvaceous tree lines and foot-worn paths. If I had to live in this urban environment, I decided I would try and bring as much nature to the city as I could. Serendipitously, a visiting scholar provided the framework for me to begin this quest. He introduced me to biophilic design, and the thought of increasing nature in our urban environment through these design principles struck a deep, resounding and passionate chord. I soon discovered that this concept was rapidly expanding globally via a growing social movement. Questions immediately sprang to mind, the first being the question why? What was motivating this to happen now? What was driving this?

A deeper more personal question that I have pondered throughout my life is one to explore, but probably not answer, in this thesis. Throughout my life I had noticed people responded differently to nature. I could be overtaken by wonder and awe at the beauty of a sunset or a tree, where other people could walk on by. I was not alone in this. The question for me therefore was why were some people like this and others not? Was this a nature or nurture outcome?

To receive the answers to my questions regarding the growing biophilic design movement, to understand the circumstances, the motives and emotions that were driving this social movement required an immersive journey. I needed to embed myself within the movement to understand it. Fortuitously, as soon as I had heard about biophilic design, it had resonated so truly with me that I realised I was already a part of it.

Heuristic inquiry

The opportunity to pursue my questions was provided by the research framework of heuristic inquiry.

Heuristic inquiry is qualitative research entailing *"*a process that begins with a question or problem which the researcher seeks to illuminate or answer*"* (Moustakas, 1990, p.15). The initial question is one the researcher is passionate about or, as in a description by Abbot (2004, p. 83) of heuristic researchers, *"*We often come at an issue with only a gut feeling that there is something interesting about it". Heuristic inquiry is an immersive process where the researcher is "open and receptive to the nature of discovery" (Moustakas, 1990, p.10), an auto-biographical process of self-discovery and self-dialogue where the personal understandings are also socially significant. There is a certain freedom within heuristic research yet it is demanding and *"*places immense responsibility upon the researcher*"* (Frick, 1990, p.14). The heuristic researcher is seeking to understand the wholeness through the patterns of experiences in *"*a scientifically organised and disciplined way*"* (Abbot, 2004, p. 88). It is a process of connectedness rather than detachment.

Moustakas (1990) suggests there are seven concepts and processes of heuristic research:

- Identifying with the Focus of Inquiry – To understand the question the researcher uses open-ended inquiry, self-directed research and immersion in active experience.

- Self-dialogue – This begins with an understanding and questioning of the researcher's own experience combined with receptivity to all facets of discovery "allowing comprehension and compassion to mingle and recognising the place and unity of intellect, emotion and spirit". It requires the researcher to move between the individual feelings and experiences to the general words and concepts.

- Tacit knowing – The researcher's own awareness and understandings, coupled with receptivity and being attuned to the experience, allows the researcher "to sense the unity or wholeness of something from an understanding of the individual qualities or parts".

- Intuition – Intuition is required to form the bridge from the tacit knowing to the explicit. The intuitive capacity enables the patterns and relationships to be recognised in a meaningful manner thus creating the whole.

- Indwelling – This is the process of inner reflection and thought. Life experiences that relate to the qualities of what is under investigation are gathered to assist in providing the reflective analysis of portrayal.

- Focussing – This is the process of inner attention where the central meanings, themes, and qualities of the experience are identified.

- The internal frame of reference – An understanding of one's life experiences that have contributed towards creating an internal reference or world view is necessary to then understand another's. Open conversation with the other person is a way to achieve a deeper understanding of their experiences.

These concepts, as presented by Moustakas (1990), flow into creating identifiable phases of heuristic research developed further as a basis for this thesis. From the initial engagement with the topic of intense concern the researcher moves to one of immersion within the question, alert to all opportunities, perceptions and intuitions, allowing the unfolding of the exploration. The period of inner incubation also involves a period of detachment to allow inner processes to surface on their own accord. Illumination and explication involves recognition then examination of the themes and qualities identified. The final phase is the creative synthesis, the integration and personal expression of the core themes and essential meanings via a narrative, poems, stories, or some creative form.

> "Essentially, in the heuristic process, I am creating a story that portrays the qualities, meanings and essences of universally unique experiences."
>
> (Moustakas, 1990, p.13)

Heuristic inquiry as a research framework

My early encounter with the concept of biophilic design contributed to adopting heuristic research methods as a framework due to the immediate resonance experienced. This enabled me to become quickly embedded and deeply immersed

within the movement. The research journey, though, could not be planned. Biophilic design as a movement was rapidly progressing and documenting this entailed surrender to the unfolding journey and not anticipating the pathway. Although the research may be action based, it is gentle action guided by intuition in following the 'flow' of movement. This enabled me to draw on my life experiences and understandings to help interpret the immersive journey's personal experiences into ones of universal significance. The many encounters, exchanges, experiences and opportunities of the research journey would require inner reflection and a focus on being attuned to gain an understanding of the bigger perspective. Continuous observation and documentation plus awareness of opportunities would all be needed.

Throughout the immersive and active experience it would be necessary to take time to reflect, to integrate the 'outer learnings' with the 'inner' life experiences and knowing. This would involve a diary of the inner dialogue, especially the moments when pieces come together, illuminating a discovery in the 'aha' light bulb moment.

Heuristic inquiry requires open and receptive interactions with people who are contributing to the journey. Conversations would need to be open-ended and involve good listening as well as exchange and acknowledgement of a shared passion where it existed. A balance would need to be achieved between allowing the journey to unfold and being proactive in pursuing opportunities. How easily information and opportunities flowed my way would also be an indicator of the movement's momentum and the social response to the concept of biophilic design. Who I met along the journey would indicate the arenas in which the idea was being picked up, and potentially why.

Social Movement theory as a research framework

To further guide the immersive journey and to provide indicators as to what to investigate and how to structure the experience, the research is supported by a framework of social movement theory. The changing nature of social movements in a digital age of social media has led to new, and varying, images and theories of social movements. For this reason the single social movement theory of James Jasper (2007) is adopted. This is discussed in detail in section 2.2, but a brief overview is presented here.

Jasper considers that the emerging features of current social movements are where people are being driven by empathetic connection to the world around them, through cultural meanings and moral intuitions (Jasper, personal communication, 2015). He outlines three categories of components of contemporary social movements: microfoundations, strategies and emotions, plus four features which delineate social movements: intention, coordinated action, persuasive tactics and that they are sustained over time.

Social movements can be viewed as progressing through stages (Jasper, 2007; Christiansen, 2009):

- Emergence – where people with similar moral visions and emotions come together to plan strategies for change.
- Coalescence – clear strategies have emerged, leaders have emerged and the movement is gaining momentum.
- Mainstream – the philosophy of the movement is adopted and appearing in everyday literature, policy and other mainstream initiatives.

Jasper's (2007) social movement theory provided names to the components of the biophilic design movement which may be encountered in the immersive journey: the players, the arenas, the strategies, the motivators and drivers, the stages and the barriers. This meshed well with heuristic inquiry as both frameworks entail exploring motivators, themes and patterns.

1.4.2 Research methods and design

> "Methods of heuristic research are open-ended. They point to a process of accomplishing something in a thoughtful and orderly way that guides the researcher. There is no exclusive list that would be appropriate for every heuristic investigation, but rather each research process unfolds in its own way."
>
> (Moustakas, 1990, p. 43)

Research design

The concepts and process of heuristic research translate into four distinct phases to follow in conducting the research:

Phase one – This phase is the initial engagement with the topic. It aids the identification with the focus of inquiry, clarifying the question and elucidating the context. To do this, the literature on biophilic design is explored with awareness and receptivity to the possibility of further questions arising. This phase also defines biophilic design and investigates how it progressed. Does its emergence correlate with social movement theory? The assertions of the theory of biophilic design and the benefits associated with biophilic design elements are assessed to establish the rationale for this design approach and to provide an understanding of possible motivators and drivers that may be encountered in the immersive journey.

Phase two – The second phase requires an immersive journey of heuristic inquiry in an active experience of the social movement of biophilic design. It also requires a direct, personal encounter with the phenomenon being investigated. After identifying with the focus of inquiry this is the self-directed research, the unfolding of the journey and the time of self-dialogue and tacit knowing framed by a personal internal reference. It is the time of 'living the question', alert to possibilities, the time of listening to inner thoughts, even dreams, for direction and understanding.

Phase three – The third phase is a time of incubation. It involves periods of detachment and retreat to allow the *"*the inner workings of the tacit dimension and intuition to continue to clarify and extend understanding*"* (Moustakas, 1990, p. 29). With receptivity, this incubation leads to the natural occurrence of illumination, where the qualities cluster into themes, new unseen features may emerge and creative discoveries are made. These discoveries are then taken into a process of explication where they are fully examined in the consciousness. Through continuation of the heuristic processes of in-dwelling and self-searching, new insights and themes may synthesise. Ultimately, a composite and comprehensive depiction of the core themes and components is discovered.

Phase four – The fourth phase is the creative synthesis where intuition, in-dwelling and focussing results in a creative analysis and composite depiction of the central meanings, qualities and themes of the research.

Research methods

This research involved a mixed-method approach driven by the unfolding immersion; thus it is necessarily reflexive and adaptive to situations and opportunities. This required constant reflection, analysis and data collection

modification as new insights generated new questions and opportunities provided new directions.

The framework of heuristic inquiry provides action based methods of research and a guide on how to immerse within the research to explicate the potential revelations. Social movement theory provides a check list of what, who and where to look to aid the understanding of biophilic design as a social movement. The combination of the two frameworks provides a complementary and wholistic research design palette as both require similar methods of investigation in identifying themes, patterns and motives. Narratives and stories are an effective way of collecting and communicating the history, the emotions and the moral themes of a social movement (Jasper, personal communication, 2015). This effectively aligns with the framework of heuristic inquiry and the creative synthesis of the immersive journey where the researcher *"*develops an aesthetic rendition of the themes and essential meanings of the phenomenon*"* (Moustakas, 1990, p.52).

The methods utilised within this research combine a literature analysis (historical, contemporary and meta-analysis), active and immersive experiential participation, a social survey and semi-structured interviews with participants. These methods combine to form a creative synthesis of discovery with thematic analysis and intuitive and tacit understandings. This approach aims to extract the motivators and drivers for the progression of biophilic design and the interplay between the different arenas of civic, government, industry and academia to enhance understanding of successful drivers in implementing biophilic design as a resilient and sustainable design approach for cities. These methods are further explained.

Phase one – Initial engagement with the focus of inquiry

The literature review characterises the initial engagement with the focus of inquiry where a greater understanding and clarity of the question emerges. The additional aims were to discover the evolution of biophilic design as a concept and to identify if there was a clear progression which supported its emergence as a new social movement. This section also sought to answer a core research question of whether the academic research supports the assertions made by biophilic design theorists.

It also was to provide:

- An understanding of what comprises biophilic design;

- An analytical framework as a reference for the experiential research;
- An overview of what was being researched in the field.

The literature research followed the heuristic framework. It was continuous throughout the research, aiding the adaptive formulation of objectives and direction where new research or innovations or new players required a reassessment or re-evaluation of short term plans.

Phase two – Immersion

A quality of the immersive phase of heuristic inquiry is direct experience of the phenomenon being studied. *"*In heuristic research the investigator must have had a direct and personal experience with the phenomenon being investigated*"* (Moustakas, 1990). It entails an experience of connectedness and relationship. This active and experiential participation consisted of two parts: the local journey and the North American journey.

A project of driving and implementing a trial green wall as a biophilic design initiative enabled a direct experience of being a player in the biophilic design movement. A social survey was conducted alongside the green wall to gauge people's responses to the wall and, if they were favourable, what was motivating this. Two interviews were conducted with key players. This experience was supported by three other smaller local experiences in which I was approached to potentially implement biophilic initiatives in developing projects. The four examples of local immersion are documented as a synopsis of the journal that was kept throughout the experience. This immersion provided a personal perspective of significance from which to extract the social commonalities and the universal story.

A significant component of the immersive journey was travel through ten cities of the United States (US) and Canada. With the US being the birthplace of biophilic design there was the opportunity to meet and interview the pioneers of the biophilic design movement. Twenty-six interviews were conducted. The interviews followed the heuristic research framework. A heuristic interview is not ruled by rigid structures and time constraints; it is a conversation which flows with the shared experience and passions of the researcher and the interviewee. The aim is to ultimately deepen and extend the understanding through the eyes and voices of others, encouraging a natural unfolding of dialogue. Moustakas calls this the *"*conversational interview or dialogue*"* (1990, p.47). The focus of the interviews was to gain an understanding of

the motivators and drivers which were aiding progression of the social movement of biophilic design in the emergent, coalescent and potentially mainstreaming stages through the stories, experiences and perceptions of those directly involved: the players.

The interviews conducted throughout the research were with people who I considered significant players in the biophilic design social movement. They were heuristic in the style of dialogue, which was flowing and often passionate when an idea resonated with both the interviewee and the interviewer. The interviewees were encouraged to present their point of view and to go off on tangents; to 'ramble' into insights that they considered relevant with a flexibility of direction. In all but one interview, the interview reached a natural conclusion, a point where both parties felt satisfied with the exchange of information.

All the interviewees were provided with an interview guide on topics to be covered, with an understanding that the process and questions are flexible. The interviews were both recorded and filmed with complementary note taking. As well as the interview guide, a consent form and background information were presented to all participants. This research received Ethics C (low risk research) clearance from Curtin University's Human Research Ethics Committee (HREC). All interviews were voluntary.

Journalising and note taking were a component of the immersive journey, recording reflections and self-dialogue.

Phase three – Incubation

The incubation phase began with the writing of the immersive journey and the interviews. This allowed the motivators and drivers revealed by the interviewees to be compiled ready for a deeper incubation period of indwelling, intuition and focussing. Interwoven throughout the writing of the immersive journey are excerpts of the reflective self-dialogue. These are characterised by the use of the first person. This journal which began in the immersive period was also an essential component through the period of incubation and into the creative synthesis. In the form of a small book, it travelled with me constantly but, if not at hand, alternatives were found. Many times the illuminations occurred when walking in nature. This period of incubation entailed times of engagement with the immersive journey data intermingled with times of detachment, reflection and inner attention.

Phase four – Creative synthesis

After the personal exploratory immersion within the movement of biophilic design and the period of incubation and illumination, the resulting core themes and understandings are presented in a creative synthesis. Statistical research is not the concern; stories are the integral component.

The period of incubation involved reflection on the motivators and drivers for the social movement of biophilic design which were identified throughout the immersive journey. From these, following heuristic design, the core motivating themes for the emergent and coalescent stages of the social movement are identified, discussed and presented in a composite depiction which includes their interplay. Other encountered concepts which triggered deeper searching and intuition and whose significance was allowed to reach the full illumination, are also presented. These themes and understandings are extended to then provide a framework for the progression of the biophilic design movement into mainstream acceptance.

1.5 Structure of the dissertation

The dissertation is divided into three sections and seven chapters derived from heuristic inquiry methodology.

1.5.1 Section one – Initial engagement with the focus of inquiry

This section reviewed the literature in two chapters and established a clearer understanding and context of the overall research question.

Chapter Two: The emergence of biophilic design

This chapter provides an overview of the emergence of biophilic design through review of three progressive books which culminated in the third book, *Biophilic Design*. This story of the emergence of biophilic design also contributed towards establishing it as a social movement. The significance of understanding social movements is briefly discussed and biophilic design is discussed within the social movement theory of Jasper Jones. This provides a framework of components to assist in the analytical structure of the immersive journey.

Chapter Three: The supporting evidence for biophilic design

After outlining the design elements of biophilic design this chapter utilises these to guide the literature review of the associated research. The review assesses whether the research supports the theoretical underpinnings for biophilic design through discussing the social, environmental and economic benefits. This builds on the previous chapter's foundation of possible motivators and drivers as well as the rationale for the implementation of biophilic design. To gain a clearer perspective and an initial framework of what design elements and what benefits are receiving most attention, the chapter concludes with a meta-analysis of the literature.

1.5.2 Section two – Immersion and Incubation

This section contains two chapters documenting the immersive journey. The journey was the immersion, the writing of the journey and interviews comprised part of the incubation.

Chapter Four: The local journey

This chapter presents a synopsis of the local journey and begins the collection of data. This journey of immersion is directed by heuristic inquiry methodology and involves direct experience of the phenomenon being investigated: biophilic design. Four local experiences provided this opportunity and these are related with a focus on any identified key themes, players, arenas, motivators and drivers.

Chapter Five: The global journey

Chapter Five builds on the previous chapter's data collection by documenting the immersive journey in the United States and Canada through an exemplary selection of the conducted interviews. Motivators, drivers and barriers were extracted and are presented in a matrix at the conclusion of each interview.

1.5.3 Section three – The creative synthesis and conclusion

This section contains the result from the period of incubation: the creative synthesis. The concluding chapter is also presented.

Chapter Six: The creative synthesis

After the period of incubation and illumination, Chapter Six presents the resulting core themes and understandings in a creative synthesis. The identified motivating themes for the social movement stages of emergence, coalescence and mainstream are discussed. Other themes and insights which emerged in the period of explication are presented, contributing towards the resulting framework for mainstreaming biophilic design within a city.

Chapter Seven: Conclusion and suggested future research

This concluding chapter brings the biophilic design social movement story up to date. It briefly examines the progression of the movement and where there are indicators that it is moving into mainstream. This flows into the conclusion to the dissertation where suggestions for future research are also presented.

In addition to the main chapters this dissertation is supported by Appendices A, B, C and D.

Appendix A: This appendix contains the meta-analysis of the literature.

Appendix B: This appendix includes the full list of interviewees plus the interview stories which were not included in Chapter Five.

Appendix C: This includes a matrix of websites concerning biophilic design.

Appendix D: This appendix contains the Google trends graphics.

SECTION ONE

INITIAL ENGAGEMENT WITH THE FOCUS OF INQUIRY

CHAPTER TWO
THE EMERGENCE OF BIOPHILIC DESIGN

2.1 Introduction

This chapter begins the engagement with the topic, deepening the focus of inquiry and clarifying the questions while being alert to the possibility of other questions arising. The chapter further defines the terms biophilia, biophilia hypothesis and biophilic design, which were introduced in the previous chapter. The question of whether biophilic design is a new social movement is addressed. Discussion of the origins of the term biophilia as proposed by Fromm is important so as to establish the context of where a 'love of life' sits within the human pyche. This understanding and explanation extends the discussion of biophilic design by revealing its deeper dimensions and potential motivators and drivers. The chapter also discusses why understanding social movements is important and how this understanding may contribute towards further strategies of implementation.

By examination of the literature where the terms are introduced, the social movement progression from 'biophilia' to 'the biophilia hypothesis' to 'biophilic design' is revealed. This is through three books. Two of the books resulted from gatherings of interested participants with established background knowledge and contain suggestions of contributing motivators and drivers towards this interest in pursuing and developing the topic; the second gathering resulted in the book, *Biophilic Design,* a significant part of the journey outlined in this thesis.

With an understanding of this evolution, it is then possible to establish how biophilic design sits within a social movement framework and how this framework is used to aid the immersive journey and the analytical creative synthesis. The components of a social movement as suggested by social movement theorist Jasper (2007) are outlined and contibute towards the social movement framework for the research.

2.2 The origins of biophilia as a psychological term

Biophilia is frequently seen as a term conceived by Nobel Prize winning biologist E. O. Wilson (Wilson, 1984; Kellert & Heerwagen, 2008). However biophilia, meaning love of life, was a term first brought to life by the psychoanalyst Erich Fromm in his exploration of the 'essence of man': that which defines humanity (Fromm, 1964). He saw that humans' awareness of their 'beingness', their mortality, separates them from nature, instilling a deep anxiety and conflict. This is a contradiction inherent in human existence, the belonging to two conflicting worlds:

> "Man is confronted with the frightening conflict of being a prisoner of nature, yet being free in his thoughts; being part of nature, and yet to be as it were a freak of nature; being neither here nor there. Human self-awareness has made man a stranger in the world, separate, lonely, and frightened."
>
> (Fromm, 1964, p.113)

It is this frightening contradiction and the quest to seek a solution that defines humankind. This search reveals choices, which are reflected in humans' inherent capacity for good or evil.

Early human societal existence tended to regress back to unevolved roots: to animalistic beginnings of nature and violence, to archaic selves, where the fear of the anxiety of separation can disappear. This regressive path is not just in primitive religions but also found in pathological behaviour involving necrophilia and narcissistic and incestuous symbioses. These are tendencies that may be repressed in a collective culture by laws and religions but, interestingly, if the tendencies are supported and shared by many, then consensus gives them credence, reason and reality. This pathway of regression Fromm calls 'the syndrome of decay' (Fromm, 1964, p. 114).

The opposite direction, following the 'syndrome of growth', is where the anxiety of separation is faced and transcended, and replaced by a love of life where there is a 'full development of human forces' (Fromm, 1964, p. 114). This is the progressive path of life. Fromm suggests that for the majority of people there is mostly a blend of the two orientations.

Fromm saw cities as becoming more mechanistic, industrialised and commoditised, separating humans further from nature and increasing anxiety and even hate for life (1964, p. 10). In his 1964 book he was expressing concern that, even when there are known extreme consequences, such as in war, there is a stronger societal drive to go to war than to oppose it, which represents the regressive path as the stronger force.

The potential for a triggered eruption of mass violence will always be present as long as there are any human archaic, regressive impulses within. Not until they are fully replaced by a love of life will this potential for regressive behaviour go. At the same time it is possible for a love of life to be fully replaced by the traits of regression. In either situation, the choice of which path to go down will be lost.

Fromm considers there are three orientations along the progressive path: freedom and independence, love for neighbour and love of life or biophilia (1964, p. 110). Within the biophilic realm is the inherent motivation to live and survive that, as suggested by Fromm and other biologists and philosophers such as Spinoza (Fromm 1964, p. 41), all living substance possesses. Other biophilic qualities include the tendency to integrate and unite, to construct rather than just retain, to adventure to the new rather than stay with the certainty of the past, to use love and reason rather than force and control. *"*The biophilous conscience is motivated by its attraction to life and joy; the moral effort consists in strengthening the life-loving side in oneself*"* (Fromm 1964, p. 43).

Fromm outlines the personal conditions he considers necessary for the development of biophilia which include:

- Warm, affectionate contact with others during infancy
- Freedom and the absence of threats
- Teaching by example (not preaching) the principles of inner harmony and strength
- Guidance in the 'art of living'
- Stimulating influence of and response to others
- A way of life that is generally interesting

He concludes that being around people who have a love of life will foster a love of life in a child. Fromm identifies the needed societal conditions as security, freedom and justice (Fromm 1964, p. 47-48). Biophilia, as in a love of life, with a sense of place and connection, provides a solid stepping stone to altruism and love of neighbour. Fromm's recognition that mechanistic and sterile cities contribute to a

disconnection from nature leads to an acknowledgement of the potential for cities to become places of nature which nurture the biophilic consciousness.

2.3 Biophilia as a biological term

The concept of the biophilic human being was then examined and popularised in 1984 by the sociobiologist Edward Wilson in his book *Biophilia* (Wilson, 1984). Here, Wilson defined biophilia as *"*the innate tendency to focus on life and lifelike processes*"* (Wilson, 1984, p. 1). He utilised the term biophilia to describe his deep feelings of connection to nature during a period of exploration and immersion in the natural world. Wilson's exploration of the term biophilia deepened Fromm's writings; these two thinkers agreed that a biophilic love of life is inherent in human beings, is able to be nourished by connecting with nature and that, if the opportunity to foster a biophilic love of life is not present in a human's life, then the tendency is to follow a regressive, more destructive life path. Wilson's unique proposal was that this biophilic propensity developed as part of evolutionary survival and thus encompasses certain characteristics.

Wilson observed that there were common landscape features that attracted him, raising questions about whether there were preferred habitats for humans, as displayed by animals. He hypothesised that, if given a choice, there are key features that humans would select, features similar to the original evolutionary environment of savannah grasslands and supplementary features that aided survival. These he listed as the savannah itself, vantage points and water bodies (Wilson, 1984, p. 110).

When given free choice, Wilson observes, people build on vegetated, higher ground near water but, when unable to, attempt to recreate a similar terrain, an action he labels 'savannah gestalt' (Wilson, 1984, p. 111). In crowded cities, small gardens with fountains and pools flourish alongside trees and shrubs, often pruned to heights and shapes similar to the tropical savannah.

Through his writings Wilson was able to provide an evolutionary biologist's view of biophilia as something that humans have evolved to need, arguing that human existence, and mental development, depends on this propensity. He concludes his book suggesting:

> "……as biological knowledge grows the ethic will shift fundamentally so that everywhere, for reasons that have to do with the very fiber of

> the brain, the fauna and flora of a country will be thought part of the national heritage as important as its art, its language, and that astonishing blend of achievement and farce that has always defined our species."
>
> (Wilson, 1984, p. 145)

2.4 Developing the biophilia hypothesis

Wilson received significant response to his book. His narration of a personal journey brought the term biophilia to life, with a biological focus that was easier for many to relate to than Fromm's psychological perspective. As Fromm first postulated, affiliation with nature can assist in humans' intellectual, emotional and spiritual fulfilment; Wilson then expanded this to suggest that evolution has impelled humans' biological design to respond positively to this contact with nature (Wilson, 1993).

Scholars from diverse fields collected together a decade later to collaborate their thinking and debate the concepts presented by Wilson. In Kellert's introduction to the book he suggests that a much richer and deeper book resulted from "the highly attractive, retreat-like setting and the highly productive conversation*"* (Kellert, 1993, p. 24). From this assemblage of intellectuals emerged the book *The Biophilia Hypothesis*. The challenge with the book was to sufficiently examine evidence to build a foundation to support future inquiry into the suggested assertions of the nature of humans' desire to connect with life and lifelike processes. The biophilia hypothesis proposes that the qualities of this desire are that it is:

> - "Inherent (that is, biologically based)
> - Part of our species' evolutionary heritage
> - Associated with human competitive advantage and genetic fitness
> - Likely to increase the possibility for achieving individual meaning and personal fulfilment
> - The self-interested basis for a human ethic of care and conservation of nature, most especially the diversity of life."
>
> (Kellert, 1993, p. 21)

2.4.1 The Collective Focus

The group who came together to discuss and ultimately write the *The Biophilia Hypothesis* were invited by Wilson and Kellert on the basis of the relevance of their prior work (Kellert, 1993). Kellert expressed in his introduction the importance of not having the book dismissed as promoting an idealisation of nature (p. 21), but seeing it as a scientific based inquiry. He also recognised that they were building on previous knowledge in the area, though not labelled as biophilia, and that the *"*richness of the topic requires no less than a multidisciplinary consideration*"* (p. 22). The book indeed reveals a diverse collection of authors who all are, in varying ways, connected with nature. Nature was the thread that brought them together, but, in all of their writings they have recognised some form of disconnect from nature that pervades current urban society, and of something lost through this separation. This united discontent with modern cities supported the acknowledgement of the need for change in contemporary lifestyles. According to social movement theorists (Jasper, 2007; Christiansen, 2009), the first stage of formation of a social movement is with a collective discontent and desire for change.

Particular author chapters reflect this more than others; Orr titled his chapter on biophobia and the obstacles to biophilia, *'Love it or lose it: The coming biophilia revolution'* (Orr, 1993), but the concluding chapter by Soulè, *'Biophilia: The unanswered questions'*, a commentary on the discussions that took place in the prelude to the book's publication, is particularly revealing of the group's sentiment and desire for change (Soulè, 1993). Soulè suggests that, like notions of non-violence or civil disobedience, the idea of biophilia could bring about change, but he thinks that social inertia will retard the move, as has happened historically in other social movements (Soulè, 1993). He suggests that:

> "If biophilia is destined to become a powerful force for conservation, then it must become a religion-like movement. Only a new religion of nature, similar but even more powerful than the animal rights movement, can create the political momentum required to overcome the greed that gives rise to discord and strife and the anthropocentrism that underlies the intentional abuse of nature."
>
> (Soulè, 1993, p. 454)

2.5 The emergence of biophilic design

Even though there was a strong, positive reception of the book *The Biophilia Hypothesis,* it was fourteen years later, in 2007, that the next progression of the biophilia hypothesis truly occurred, through another gathering of people. This meeting was only briefly mentioned in the preface and acknowledgements of a resulting book, *Biophilic Design: The Theory, Science, and Practice of Bringing Buildings to Life*. The only information given was that it was a diverse group from widely varying disciplines and that it took place on Rhode Island in a beautiful setting.

The book*, Biophilic Design: The Theory, Science, and Practice of Bringing Buildings to Life*, was published in 2008 and has since generated a lot of interest. The book presented the birth of biophilic design and articulated a new approach in thinking and design by defining an alternative human-nature connection for urban inhabitants. It gave exactly what the title suggests: the theory of biophilic design, the evidence and benefits, and the 'how' of implementation and practice. In the preface Kellert and Heerwagen define biophilic design as:

> "The expression of the inherent human need to affiliate with nature in the design of the built environment".
>
> (Keller & Heerwagen, 2008, p.viii)

Kellert and Heerwagen saw that contributors to the book offered more than strategies for sustainability but also strategies for achieving *"*a more satisfying and fulfilling modern society in harmony with nature*"* (Keller & Heerwagen, 2008, p.vii). This, they then suggested, would be a paradigm shift in how we design and build. Berkebile, Fox and Hartley (2008) encapsulate this. They suggest that biophilic design provides *"*a new language for interpreting the built environment*"* (347) and *"*biophilia represents an abundantly creative moment in design*"* (349). They discuss the possibility for a new ethic for excellence in design with the hope that in the near future green building design will no longer be a specialty field but that the biophilic design movement has *"*driven a fundamental shift*"* (Berkebile, Fox and Hartley, 2008, p. 349), perhaps one that would also offer greater potential to follow the biophilic progressive path of life.

The social movement of biophilic design was emerging.

2.5.1 Biophilic Urbanism

Within the book, *Biophilic Design,* was a contribution by Tim Beatley which integrated the idea of biophilia at the urban scale as biophilic urbanism. It differs from just designing nature into the city by including consideration of the human-nature connection and the need for humans to have a daily interaction with nature. Beatley suggested that biophilic urbanism could contribute towards the creation of biophilic cities and he later wrote a book on this topic and he has become a focus for growing activity around this concept.

It is with this possibility in mind that there is recognition that to envision a future where sustainable, biophilic-designed cities exist requires a new mindset, a new philosophy, a new paradigm or cultural shift, and to achieve this a social movement or transformation is needed. Thus we need to understand the features of such a movement.

2.6 Social movement theory

Understanding of social movements is significant as they are the essence of social life: *"*They provide a framework for people coming together to solve problems. Time, energy and money will be devoted to a collective purpose, actions will be coordinated. This is what social life is all about. Movements help us ask, what are people like, and why do they do what they do? How do they get things done? How do they create something new*?"* (Jasper, personal communication, 2015).

As global cultures evolve and change through history so do societal structures and social needs and causes. Throughout history people have united through discontent with an aspect of their society, with the intention of progressing a change. Like thinkers come together to design and implement strategies, they create a social movement for change. The manner in which the unification, the strategies and the implementation of change occurs has been flexible and responsive to the societal conditions and the causes being championed. Definitions of social movements have been as elastic as the structures. The Online Encyclopaedia Britannica provides a contemporary general and workable definition:

> "**Social movement,** loosely organized but sustained campaign in support of a social goal, typically either the implementation or the prevention of a change in society's structure or values. Although

> social movements differ in size, they are all essentially collective. That is, they result from the more or less spontaneous coming together of people whose relationships are not defined by rules and procedures but who merely share a common outlook on society."
>
> (Smelser, n.d.)

2.6.1 The changing nature of movements

As recently as the 1950s, social movement groups were typically seen as involving violent, active protest by angry, oppressed peoples, often psychologically damaged and disconnected. Since the mid 1960s, after the success of the black civil rights movement, the 'psychological' model of the 1950s was replaced with an economic model, comprising movements such as the animal rights movement, environmental movement or the women's movement. These movements tended to be portrayed as more sympathetic movements, focussed on their own beliefs, and were never quite given respect for their contribution to the greater good of society (Jasper, 2015, personal communication).

Today's communication technologies, particularly the internet, permit social connection on an unprecedented scale, which has allowed social movements to form in new ways. The vast diversity of global interests is well presented, and easily found. It is rare to search for a topic and not find some reference to the subject. It has become easy to discover other people with similar perspectives and attitudes on life. This has enabled social networks to evolve globally at a rapid pace. Online social movements such as Avaaz and 350.org have become large and powerful voices. They both began with a cause and a group of passionate people. Avaaz define themselves as *"*a global web movement to bring people-powered politics to decision making everywhere*"* (http://www.avaaz.org/en). There is online activism through global petitions, global emails, videos and on the ground activism campaigns. Founded in 2007, Avaaz promotes activism on climate change, human rights, animal rights, corruption, poverty and conflict (Avaaz, 2015). According to Wikipedia, it began with a group of seven and in eight years has grown to over thirty million members in 194 countries. Avaaz does not try to promote a singular ideology, their mission is to unite idealists interested in closing the gap between the world they want and the world they see.

Founded around the same time as Avaaz, in 2008, 350.org has emerged as another powerful online social movement. 350.org describe themselves on their website:

> "350.org is building a global climate movement. Our online campaigns, grassroots organising, and mass public actions are coordinated by a global network active in over 188 countries."
>
> (http: //350.org/about/what-we-do/)

Again, similarly to Avaaz, 350.org was founded by a small group, an alliance of university friends along with climate change author Bill McKibben. They have the single focus of fighting climate change by reducing the carbon dioxide level to 350 parts per million, which is considered the safe upper limit to avoid global climatic catastrophe. With the success of Avaaz and 350.org, similar online social movement groups have developed such as GetUp! and Change.org. These social movements are structured and function in vastly different ways to historical social movement groups which tended to be confined within a cultural group. Social networks are now easily formed on a global scale.

2.6.2 The social movement theory of James Jasper

With these changes, scholars are beginning to articulate newer images of social movements. Due to the differing definitions and social movement theories, I chose to focus on one social movement theorist whose research and ideas resonate with my own: James Jasper, a sociologist at the Graduate Centre of the City University of New York.

Jasper acknowledges that social movement definitions vary amongst scholars. He suggests that common usage *"*portrays social movements as sustained and intentional efforts to foster or retard social changes*"* (Jasper, 2007). 'Sustained' means they are beyond reactive riots and rallies, and 'intentional' indicates a link to the culture and psychology that has cultivated the ideas and motivation. He summarises four things to consider when asking if something is a social movement or not:

1. Intention
2. Coordinated action
3. Persuasive tactics
4. Sustained over time.

Jasper sees emerging features of the current vision of social movement as being more accurate and more empathic. The view is of movements of people who are connected to the world around them in many ways, embedded in the world. They are connected first through cultural meanings, as in the way they understand the world as something they share with others. This includes their moral vision; people are driven by moral intuitions and principles, not just by self-interest. The reflection of these attributes in social networks facilitates the development of collective identities (Jasper, personal communication, 2015).

Jasper (2014) has proposed what he considers components of a more relevant contemporary model of social movements:

1. Microfoundations – This is the recognition of the subtleties of the movement, the assumptions that are quietly there and the acknowledgment that social movements are difficult to define, often constructs brought to life through the rhetorical claims of the individuals involved.

2. Strategies – Jasper utilised the word 'intentional' in his social movement definition in suggesting it as the link to strategy and culture. If a social movement is considered as intentional then it naturally follows that the psychology of the culture will influence both what people want and how they will get it. A social movement will utilise a strategy to progress the movement and to engage others to help.

3. Emotions – Emotions are reactions to the world around us and connect us to that world. They are a part of social life and social action but have tended to be dismissed as contributing to irrational social behaviour. Jasper suggests emotions are intrinsic and important and argues against the previous dismissal of 'emotional protestors'. Emotions are part of the response and help to shape goals. Without emotions there is no motivation.

2.6.3 Defining the Social Movement of Biophilic Design

The emergence of biophilic design has involved a collection of people who are deeply embedded and active in their culture, jointly recognising that there is a need to change the approach to designing cities. The moral vision of bringing nature into city design reflects a shared understanding and collective goal beyond self-interest.

Biophilic design can begin to be defined as a social movement by utilising the delineating features of the Encyclopaedia Britannica definition plus Jasper's criteria summarised in the following way:

1) The coming together of a group of people with a common outlook (intention) – Biophilic design as a concept arose when a group of people came together to discuss the biophilia hypothesis. It was a diverse group of academics, researchers and industry specialists. Despite their professional disparity, the group was drawn together through a common interest, and intrigue perhaps, in the biophilia hypothesis that had been jointly proposed by one of the conference organisers. All members of the group recognised that potential was there to *"*address the neglect of the human-nature connection in modern architecture and construction*"* (Kellert & Heerwagen, 2008, p. viii).

2) Support of a common goal such as the implementation of a change in society's structure or values (coordinated action) – The goal of biophilic design is to *"*maintain, enhance and restore the beneficial experience of nature in the built environment*"* (Kellert & Heerwagen, 2008, p. vii) and to *"*create a paradigm shift in how we design and build with nature in mind*"* (Kellert & Heerwagen, 2008, p. vii).

3) A sustained campaign in support of a social goal (persuasive tactics) – Following the initial meeting in 2007 the core group progressed biophilic design by publishing a book, *Biophilic Design* (Kellert et al., 2008), outlining the problem, the evidence for the necessity for change plus the strategies for implementation. Since then, further published research, conferences and educational initiatives have seen biophilic design become a rapidly progressing global movement.

2.6.4 Biophilic Design within Social Movement Theory

Biophilic design has been referred to as a 'movement' by people within the movement and people outside of the movement. While attending a Biophilic Cities conference in Virginia in 2013, I had the pleasure of listening to one of the keynote

speakers, Jennifer Wolch. She began her lecture stating that biophilic design *"*is a movement so powerful that it has exploded across the world*"* (Wolch, 2013). In 2015, The Biophilic Cities group advertised a presentation on the Biophilic Cities Project with the words *"*This event brings together two international leaders in the Biophilia Movement*".* The articulated assumption in both these examples was that biophilic design was a social movement. This was a microfoundation.

Since the initial 2007 conference where biophilic design as a term was established, strategies have intentionally and non-intentionally been utilised to promote it. Published research in the form of papers and books have progressed and supported the movement. These have either focussed specifically on biophilic design, or on research that is in support of the concept and the need for a new approach to urban lifestyles. Websites, blogs and conferences have disseminated information on biophilic design. Implementation of policy has been a strategy successfully employed in some cities, particularly in the United States, as a tool to coerce people to build with biophilic initiatives. Another strategy has been to refine and promote ways of implementing biophilic design, the how-to guides and ideas, with both current and historical examples.

Emotions need to be examined as part of a movement's own dynamics (Jasper, 1998). They are tied to moral values, beliefs and assumptions and provide the motivation for responsive action. Emotions are processes that not only involve thinking and feeling but all things happening in human bodies. Emotions can give meaning to the *"*something that resonates*"* (Jasper personal communication, 2015). Emotions as a component of the social movement of biophilic design may be significant where they are identified. Biophilia's root origins were with the emotion of love, the term biophilia meaning 'love of life'. In investigating the drivers and motivators that have contributed to the expansion of biophilic design, is it possible to also seek the emotions behind the actions? Is love of life a prime motivator? Or is a sense of connection to nature an emotion? Have emotions been a social trigger of the movement?

Collecting individuals' stories is an important contribution to revealing emotions and motivators, but to gain a wholistic perspective of the social movement the individual responses need to be aggregated. This helps to identify the collective identity of the social movement. Even with individual interests a sense of solidarity can exist between members with a clear collective identity. This involves "aligning of frames" (Jasper, 1998). Within social movements cognitive agreement alone does not lead to action; aligning of motivational frames is also important, giving the motivation and

emotion to protest. There may be a variety of motivators, dependent on the player and the arena, yet with a deeper commonality that encourages people to get involved. The common problem must be identified and the common prescription for solving it. Collective rites are frequently part of the collective identity and they can help clarify frame alignment. These bring together the main players/characters but also allow new players to connect with the movement and join the collective identity. Part of the collective identity is the recognition not only of the benefits but also of the risks, which present as barriers to the implementation of biophilic design.

Proponents of biophilic design may feel strongly about the current way humans design and inhabit cities. There may be a communal sense of injustice towards biophobic cities which deny their inhabitants meaningful contact with nature. As Jasper suggests, social movements need the victims and the villains and the heroes (Jasper, personal communication, 2015). In this framework, biophobic cities and the associated issues such as disconnection from nature, urban heat island effect, and water and air pollution are the villains. Distressed inhabitants and the natural environment are the victims. The heroes of biophilic design may be the local champions who are striving to implement design elements within their arena. Identifying these characters is important in examining a social movement. Jasper also refers to 'players' as *"*those who engage in strategic action with some goal in mind*"* (Jasper, 2014) and are significant to social movements. Players may not be a part of the initial 'protest group', but they have capacities to pursue and progress the movement's goals. They can be individuals (simple) or groups (compound) (Jasper, 2014). Individuals in government can be effective players by implementing policy and thus forming a compound group of players. The framework of rules, resources and roles within which a player operates Jasper calls the 'arena' and they are structures that may be economic, social, academic or political (Jasper, 2014; Jasper, personal communication, 2015).

2.6.5 The Stages of Social Movement

Although Jasper prefers not to examine social movements by developmental stages (Jasper personal communication, 2015), to assist in the clarity of the analysis I chose to delineate stages based on the four stages of social movements suggested by Christiansen (2009). Christiansen based these stages on previous work by social movement theorist, Henry Blumer (Christiansen, 2009). In this research on the social movement of biophilic design I have delineated three stages:

Emergence – Both Jasper (2007) and Christiansen (2009) describe this stage as the period of discontent, of the initial stirrings and 'social ferment'. It is the recruitment stage, when those with similar moral visions and emotions come together and begin to plan strategies. It is when decisions are made and choices decided; a direction of action emerges.

Coalescence – Christiansen (2009) suggests that this is when the obstacles, or barriers, have been overcome and there is a clearly defined strategy for direction. Leaders emerge and the social movement gains momentum.

Mainstream – This is where the philosophy of the movement is appearing in everyday, mainstream literature or is being implemented through policy or mainstream initiatives.

2.6.6 Social Movement as a Framework

Utilising the identified components of social movement theory as outlined by Jasper (1998, 2007) and Christiansen (2009) provides a framework for analysis of the social movement of biophilic design and will be used to help frame the rest of the thesis. This is underpinned by the heuristic research framework. This framework will be utilised throughout the immersive journey in interviews with key players both locally and overseas as discussed in Chapter Four and Chapter Five.

Where they are encountered, the following components will be identified:

Players – the interviewees

Arenas – where the players are situated: academia, government, Industry (biophilic design industry and profession) or civic

Strategies – what they are using to implement biophilic design: policy, research, application, innovation etc.

Motivators and drivers – what urges the players to be involved in biophilic design initiatives

Stages – emergent, coalescent or mainstream

Barriers – any difficulties which players have encountered in their journeys.

Each conversation or interview will have a tabular analysis at the end with a snapshot of the extracted components as presented in Table 2.1 below. This analysis is based on two key principles of doing this kind of qualitative research:

1. The extraction of the motivators, drivers and barriers was based on word usage and responses to direct questioning. Literature research provided a short list of reasons motivating or hindering biophilic design initiatives plus key words associated with these. Where these occurred in an interview it was noted and they were listed in the interview matrix. Reflection on the written interviews revealed any other words which were frequently used in discussion around motivators, drivers and barriers. At the conclusion of the interviews the phrases and words which compiled the matrices were listed and a word frequency analytical tool used to reveal the common motivators, drivers and barriers. The motivators and drivers were themed and the barriers discussed.
2. In all qualitative research, especially with conversations, there is a certain amount of bias as the process relies on the researcher's perceptions and the focus that has been chosen to interpret the data. The interviews were recorded as well as extensive notes taken so there is accuracy in what was spoken and the words which were used. However the bias is towards answering the questions in this thesis. As a result there are word usage patterns that emerge from all the interviews and these have been used to frame the analysis.

This analysis will contribute towards the creative synthesis phase of heuristic inquiry after the period of incubation.

Two questions were asked of the interviewees at the end of each interview. The first question was whether they had a connection with nature and whether this was established in early childhood or later in life. It was not a rigorous quantitative assessment, but it was personally interesting and would deepen my understanding of humans' connection to nature. It was useful to reflect on this when considering Kellert's proposal that biophilia is a weak biological tendency.

Interviewees were also asked for one word to describe the feeling evoked when they are in nature. The collected words represent some of the emotions that key players in the biophilic design social movement experience when in nature. It reveals the most dominant emotion. The limitation to this is the select group

interviewed. They are all involved in an urban nature based movement where the broader populace may tend to express a greater variance in positive and negative emotions. Nevertheless they help to paint a picture of this particular social movement.

Table 2.1 Interview matrix example

Player	Arena	Strategy	Word	Connection to nature

	Motivators and Drivers		
Stages of social movement	**Environmental**	**Social** (including emotional)	**Economic**
Emergence			
Coalescence			
Any Identified Barriers			

2.7 Conclusion

Fromm utilised the term biophilia to describe a love of life that is beneficial in the human psyche in the quest for 'wholeness' and spiritual fulfilment. By reviewing the early literature on biophilia and biophilic design this chapter confirmed biophilic design as new social movement driven by a collection of people with the common aim of reconnecting people to nature in an urban environment, with all the social benefits that accompany this. They were motivated by discontent with the current disconnect from nature that can occur within cities and they wanted to change this. The groups which gathered shared experiences and creativity alongside a desire to create healthier and more pleasing cities. This answered the first core question: Is biophilic design a new social movement?

Social movement theory has provided a rationale for exploring biophilic design as a social movement. Together with heuristic inquiry a framework has been created from which to examine biophilic design in the immersive journey developed.

The book*, Biophilic Design: The Theory, Science, and Practice of Bringing Buildings to Life* (Kellert et al., 2008), developed the ideas in *The Biophilia Hypothesis* (Kellert, 1993)*.* The theory, the science and the design elements presented in the book focus on the human-nature connection and the social benefits this brings. The following chapter will examine whether the research supports the theory and assertions of biophilic design and whether the benefits identified within the research literature validate it as a worthy design approach for cities.

CHAPTER THREE
THE SUPPORTING EVIDENCE FOR BIOPHILIC DESIGN

3.1 Introduction

The previous chapter introduced biophilic design as a social movement driven by scholars and others who united in advocating for the benefits that this design approach could bring to cities. It also identified possible motivators and drivers for this emergence as revealed in the literature. This chapter continues the engagement with the topic and the focus of inquiry by exploring the rationale for this design approach and whether the research supports the theory behind biophilic design.

By outlining the design elements that define biophilic design the associated social and environmental benefits can be investigated through an extensive review of the associated literature. Gaining an understanding of the benefits is important as it builds on the previous chapter's foundation of possible motivators and drivers as well as the rationale for the implementation of biophilic design.

The chapter briefly looks at the problems of the lack of nature in contemporary urban design approaches and then outlines biophilic design principles which are based on the human evolutionary connection and support the greater inclusion of nature in cities. The research which examines the innate biological human response to nature from both a psychological and physiological perspective is reviewed. This concludes with a list of the social benefits that flow from this innate connection. The environmental benefits are reviewed through examination of the design elements of biophilic design to gain a perspective of their significance. Both social and environmental benefits combine to provide potential economic benefits, though there is little direct research on this. To gain a clearer perspective and an initial framework on what design elements and what benefits are receiving most attention, the chapter concludes with a meta-analysis of the literature.

3.2 The current urbanity

A core theme from the biophilic design literature is that humans have lost something in their approach to building design in modern times (Heerwagen & Gregory, 2008). Human affiliation with nature is seen to be historically reflected in organic building designs and materials, in patterning and spaces that mimic those of nature and in traditional living in close but respectful proximity to the natural environment. Greening of roofs and walls was commonplace in traditional architecture, providing insulation, food and aesthetics. However, modern architecture has lost this scope. Advancements in industry and technology not only provided the means to mechanise and sterilise buildings and design, but also the ability to influence humans' psychological attitude to nature. Salingaros and Masden (2008) proposed the three "conceptions of human beings":

1. The Abstract Human Being – humans are regarded as a component in a mechanical world.

2. The Biological Entity – the human being is an organism made of sensors that interact with its environment.

3. The Spiritual Being – humans are something more than a biological neural system, connected to the universe in ways that other animals are not.

(Salingaros & Masden, 2008, p. 66-67)

They suggested the contemporary, mechanistic and sterile urban world has fostered an increase in the abstract human being, of people living without direct connection to nature. They live as "an inert passenger in a fundamentally sterile and non-interactive world" (Salingaros & Masden, 2008).

Societies have been able to surpass the need to accommodate direct connections with nature, modifying the environment to perceptually suit human needs whilst encouraging a separation and disconnect from the natural world (Miller, 2005; Orr, 1993). The intuitive more humanistic designs of human history were left behind. Modernist designs encouraged a fear of nature (due mostly to waterborne diseases and parasites) that led to very sterile urban environments (Newman & Matan, 2012). There is significant academic and practice-based literature on the health, including mental health, of contemporary cities (e.g. the WHO Healthy cities which began in

1986). The contention is therefore made by biophilic design writers that contemporary cities are places not designed for mental health and wellbeing (Hes & Du Plessis, 2015). Biophilic designers see the missing evolutionary element in modern cities as a need to re-establish an innate connection to nature in everyday life. As Tim Beatley says 'we need a daily dose of nature', which means nature must be integrated into all parts of buildings, not separating people in buildings from people in nature (Beatley, 2011). They suggest that as biological beings, humans have not adapted physiologically, emotionally or psychologically to the current sterile urban technological cities. This 'mis-match', where the environment humans live in is so alien from the one from which they have evolved, is thus hypothesised to lead to much of modern stress and to mental health issues (Nesse & Williams, 1995; Burns, 2005).

The evidence for such associations will be assessed below but first the kind of design approaches suggested to enable nature to be better incorporated into cities will be outlined.

3.3 Biophilic design attributes

The ability of architectural design to influence individuals' physiological and psychological states is an extension of the biophilic connection to nature. Expression of this connection through biophilic design in architecture has occurred throughout history, not always consciously or even acknowledged, conveying a subjectiveness which testifies to its inherent quality in humans. Nature can be mimicked by using patterning, forms, materials, symbols and spaces which represent nature and evoke similar responses. Christopher Alexander recognised this in his seminal book Pattern Language; though not using the term biophilia, he expressed similar insights:

> "Many of the patterns here are archetypal – so deep, so deeply rooted in the nature of things, that it seems likely that they will be a part of human nature, and human action, as much in 500 years as they are today."
>
> (Alexander, Ishikawa & Silverstein, 1977)

As with biophilic design theory, Alexander believed that the pattern language of the nature of things in the environment “can make people feel alive and human” (Alexander, Ishikawa & Silverstein, 1977). When people cannot surround themselves with nature, then architecture and landscapes that contain some archetypal natural elements have found expression in urban design.

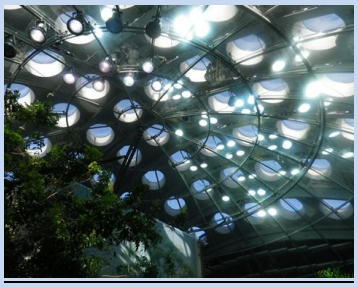
Similar to Wilson (1984), Appleton (1975), a landscape architect, considered that humans’ aesthetic reactions to landscape and architecture “are in part inborn” and therefore people cannot stray too far from the natural patterning before destroying their “aesthetic experience” (Appleton, 1975, viii). He posited that humans must seek to recreate something of the ‘primitive connection’ with nature to maintain an experience of wellbeing. The prospect-refuge theory conceived by Appleton suggests that individuals feel good when safe in a place of refuge, a feeling enhanced when they have a window overlooking life and the happenings around them. This reflects the innate protective need to survey for hazards from a place of safety (Appleton, 1975). Either refuge or prospect on its own can still contribute to a sense of wellbeing but Appleton suggests the two together are the most appealing.

Wilson (1984) had also considered prospect (vantage points) and refuge attributes that contribute to positive human feelings. In addition, he theorises that humans’ evolutionary beginnings in the African savannah similarly led to a positive psychological response to environments with shade trees, waving grasses and far vistas. This is now commonly known as the ‘savannah effect’ and is demonstrated in a design example by Frank Lloyd Wright with his iconic Johnson-Wax building.

Proponents of biophilic design have elaborated on these design concepts, finding validity through experience, intuitive knowing and historical examples (Heerwagen & Gregory, 2008; Wilson, 2008; Kellert, 2008a). Authors in the book*, Biophilic Design: The Theory, Science, and Practice of Bringing Buildings to Life* (Kellert et al., 2008), recognised the need to define the dimensions of biophilic design as the beginning of a tool kit for urban designers and developers. Heerwagen and Gregory (2008) categorised seven major attributes whereas Kellert (2008a) listed six elements with seventy design attributes.

Ryan et al. (2014) refined these design elements of biophilic design with supportive qualitative and quantitative research in both the physiological and the psychological. Browning, recognising previous design attribute lists were unwieldy and potentially confronting for urban designers, consolidated the design attributes to the following fourteen patterns within three categories.

Table 3.1 Patterns of Biophilic Design

		
NATURE IN THE SPACE incorporation of plants, water and animals into the built environment, especially with movement.	***NATURAL ANALOGUES*** one degree of separation away from true nature; patterns and materials that evoke nature.	***NATURE OF THE SPACE*** the way humans respond psychologically and physiologically to different spatial configurations.
1. Visual connection with nature – plants inside and out, green roofs and living walls, water, nature artwork	**8. Biomorphic forms and patterns** – organic building forms, structural systems (savannah effect),	**11. Prospect** – views, balconies, 6 m and above focal lengths, open floor plans
2 .Non-visual connection with nature – sun patches**,** textured materials, bird sounds, weather, nature scents	**9. Material connection with nature –** wood, earth and stone construction, natural colours,	**12. Refuge** – protected spaces, overhead canopies or lowered ceilings, places providing concealment
3. Non-rhythmic sensory stimuli – clouds, shadows, nature sounds, water reflections	**10. Complexity and order** – fractal patterns, sky lines, plant selection and variety, material textures and colours	**13. Mystery –** winding paths, obscured features, flowing forms
4. Access to thermal and airflow variability – shade, radiant heat, seasonal vegetation		**14. Risk/Peril** – floor to ceiling windows, water walks, high walk ways
5. Presence of water – rivers, fountains, water walls, ponds, daylighted streams		
6. Dynamic and diffuse light – light from different angles, ambient diffuse lighting, circadian lighting		
7. Connection with natural systems – seasonal patterning, wildlife habitats, diurnal patterns		

(Adapted from Ryan et al., 2014)

Kellert recently revised and simplified his seventy design attributes. Twenty four design attributes were headed by three categories of experience similar to Ryan et al.: direct experience of nature, indirect experience of nature and experience of space and place (Kellert & Calabrese, 2015).

These design principles contribute to biophilic design as a new design theory on better contact with nature within and on buildings. But does the biophilic design literature generate confidence that there is evidence to support the need for this design approach?

3.4 Evidence from human psychology and physiology

In the last 30-40 years technological advancements in both psychological and physiological testing have enabled further exploration and testing on whether there is an innate human relationship with nature which is the fundamental rationale for biophilic urbanism.

In 1979, Ulrich began investigating links between psychological wellbeing and physiological responses when individuals are exposed to nature, or even views of nature. Psychological testing of responses to projected slides revealed that stressed individuals feel considerably better when exposed to views of nature (Ulrich, 1979). In 1984 Ulrich decided to test this response with hospital patients' analgesic usage and recovery times with and without a view of nature. Recovery times were faster for the patients with the view to nature, with less need for pain relief (Ulrich, 1984).

Kaplan and Kaplan were also researching the potential benefits of the human relationship with nature and in 1989 presented a psychological perspective of 'experiencing nature'. They built on the 1892 work of William James who had identified two types of attention, voluntary and involuntary. Involuntary attention is what is given to things that 'catch the eye', often moving, patterned, bright and stimulating. Voluntary attention is where we hold a focus, blocking out unwanted stimuli, and it can be exhausting. Aggressive, irritable and anti-social behaviour plus slow responses can result from directed attention fatigue. Restoration is important and involves involuntary attention. Kaplan and Kaplan suggested that exposure to nature over a range of environmental choices can fulfil the criteria for directed attention or voluntary attention restoration (Kaplan and Kaplan, 1989).

In 1991 Ulrich et al. employed electrocardiograms (EKG) and measured pulse rates, frontalis muscle tension and skin conductance plus self-ratings of emotional states to further investigate the physiological relationship with nature. Both physiological and verbal results indicated that recovery from stress was faster in a natural setting than an urban one. The physiological results also suggested an involvement of the parasympathetic nervous system (Ulrich et al., 1991). Ulrich et al. proposed a psycho-evolutionary theory that nature restores through increasing positive feelings, positive physiological responses and sustained involuntary attention. Ulrich's stress reduction theory was perceived to contradict the Kaplans' restorative theory which suggests that peoples' directed attention relaxes in nature due to an involuntary (fascination) attention and thus is restorative. Kaplan's investigation of this apparent dichotomy led to an integrative understanding that deepened the theoretical exploration of the human-nature connection and formed the Attention Restoration theory (Kaplan, 1995).

The biochemical underpinnings of human psychological and physiological responses were a little examined area until the work of neuroscientist Candace Pert and her colleagues. Pert's discovery in 1972 of humans' opiod receptors (Pert & Snyder, 1973) and the subsequent discovery of the natural opiate of enkephalin (endorphin) by Hughes and Kosterlitz (Pert, 1997, p. 64) pioneered the ability to test for feelings of pleasure and wellbeing. The link between psychological wellbeing and physiological responses became established.

Since Pert's early work other physiological markers of psychological feelings and moods have been established, enabling quantifiable physiological analysis. Cortisol and cortisone are hormones released when the body is stressed. Cortisol is now widely used as a stress marker. Blood pressure, heart rate, skin moisture conductivity all increase when individuals are anxious or stressed. Studies have emerged from Japan on the effects of the traditional Shinrin-yoku, or forest bathing. These and other research have shown that exposure to nature reduces heart rate variability and pulse rates, decreases blood pressure, lowers cortisol and increases parasympathetic nervous system activity whilst decreasing sympathetic nervous system activity (Li et al., 2011; Berman et al., 2012; Matsunaga, Park, Kobayashi & Miyazaki, 2011; Park, Tsunetsugu, Kasetani, Kagawa & Miyazaki, 2010; Tyrväinen et al., 2014; Berman, Jonides & Kaplan, 2008). These responses contribute to improved cognitive functioning, working memory and learning rates. Forest walking has also revealed that levels of the hormone DHEA tend to increase (Li et al., 2011).

Both Kaplans' and Ulrich's theories have been put to the test in the years since they were first proposed, either directly or by studies revealing supporting results. Berto (2005) undertook three experiments involving thirty-two participants, concluding that restorative environments and experiences that involve nature do greatly support mental fatigue recovery. She suggests that in a 'world overflowing with information', mental fatigue is endemic and much could be done, especially in institutions, to help cognitive wellbeing (Berto, 2005). Following the increasing interest in Kaplan's restoration theory, Tenngart Invarsson and Hagerhall (2008) also began investigations into the restoration values between differing forms of natural environments amongst built environments, such as gardens. The varying results between gardens suggested that greater understanding of the form of the natural environment, and its potential to be restorative, was needed (Tenngart Ivarsson & Hagerhall, 2008).

Salingaros and Masden suggest that "environments devoid of neurologically nourishing information mimic signs of human pathology. Drab minimalist surfaces reproduce symptoms of strokes and macular degeneration, for example" (Salingaros & Masden, 2008, p. 69). Environments that are devoid of any representation of nature can not only make people psychologically unwell and regressive in their behaviour but people can also display physical symptoms and responses. A recent study which examined human responses to design stimulii concluded that the primal flight or fight response is increased when individuals are exposed to hard edged architecture rather than curving contours (Nanda, Pati, Ghamari, Bajema, 2013).They also suggested that this response is heightened when a person is already in a stressful environment such as a hospital (Nanda et al., 2013). Hartig, Bringslimark and Patil (2008) support the theoretical evidence for restorative environments. They discuss the relationship between restorative environmental design and biophilic design suggesting that restorative design encompasses more than biophilic design by taking into account low-impact technologies, people's activity cycles and varying needs for restoration plus the impact of cultural experience on people's receptivity to biophilic influences.

Increasing greenery in housing estates resulted in less violence and aggression, less crime and better interpersonal relationships (Kuo & Sullivan, 2001). Further research by Kuo also suggested that greener environments in poorer public housing estates reduce mental fatigue and assist "residents' psychological resources for coping with poverty" (Kuo, 2001). Studies by Guègan and Stefan observed that

short immersions in nature elicited a more positive mood and a greater desire to help others (Guéguen & Stefan, 2014).

Berman, Jonides and Kaplan (2008) investigated the interaction with nature on direct attention restoration and improved cognitive functioning by comparing urban and natural environments. Results further validated Kaplan's restoration theory and showed that even viewing pictures of nature can improve cognitive functioning, mood and working memory (Berman, Jonides & Kaplan, 2008). Raanaas, Evensen, Rich, Sjøstrøm and Patil conducted controlled laboratory experiments on attention restoration with and without plants. Though only four pot plants were utilised there were improvements in performance in the room with the plants compared to the room without (Raanaas, Evensen, Rich, Sjøstrøm & Patil, 2011). Their results suggest that exposure to nature could be a valid supplement to treating depression and other disorders, with improvements to mood and memory span (Berman et al., 2012; Tyrväinen et al., 2014).

Park and Mattson (2008) suggested that, with further supporting evidence, plants should be used in hospitals as a supplementary healing mode. Their research had confirmed Ulrich's early studies on the positive effects that nature has on a patient's recovery period and analgesic need. Park and Mattson found that indoor plants "enhance patients' physiological responses, with lower ratings of pain, anxiety and fatigue, and more positive feelings and higher satisfaction with their hospital rooms" (Park and Mattson, 2008). A study in Michigan revealed a 24% less frequency of health care visits for prison residents with views of nature (Moore, 1981). Measurements of elderly women exposed to a green rooftop forest on a hospital showed that they were more physiologically relaxed and restored (Matsunaga et al., 2011).

Research on the physiological and psychological responses of office workers to a vase of roses by Ikei, Komatsu, Song, Himoro and Miyazaki in 2014, demonstrates use of both psychological and physiological markers. Heart rate variability, pulse rate and subjective responses, evaluated through a Profile of Moods (POMS) questionnaire, were measured. Heart rate variability is a physiological indicator of the human nervous system and thus can be used to reflect parasympathetic and sympathetic nervous system activity (Li et al., 2011; Park et al., 2010; Matsunaga et al., 2011). The study showed that by simply viewing roses, parasympathetic nervous system activity increases, indicating lower stress and a greater sense of wellbeing (Ikei et al., 2014).

A Finnish study investigated the psychological effects (restorativeness, vitality, mood and creativity) and the physiological effects of short term immersion in nature (Tyrväinen et al., 2014). The physiological response was measured using salivary cortisol as an indicator of stress. Results suggested that even short term exposure to nature had positive effects on stress compared to the urban built environment (Tyrväinen et al., 2014).

Nieuwenhuis, Knight, Postmes and Haslam (2014), noticing two opposing trends in offices, conducted studies of the comparison: lean versus green. They concluded that lean is “meaner than green”, not only because it was less pleasing to the workers but also because organisational output and productivity was significantly less in the lean offices.

It is not just direct exposure to greenery that has positive human responses. Research by Tenngart Ivarsson and Hagerhall (2008) suggested that there may be different human responses to different natural forms. People respond both psychologically and physiologically to natural patterning and the spaces of nature. Prime amongst these are the fractal patterns of nature (self-replicating patterns that occur at increasingly smaller magnification and are found throughout nature), especially those with “high randomness and mid to low fractal dimension”. Research suggests that these patterns relax and de-stress people (Hagerhall et al. 2012).

Viewing nature, especially the richer patterns, is literally pleasurable due to the stimulation of the mu-opiod receptors in the human brain and greater endomorphin release (Biederman and Vessel, 2006). Although seen throughout architecture and art and intuitively appreciated, it is only recently that measurement of the psychological and physiological responses to fractal patterns has occurred, enabled by Pert’s earlier and significant discovery (Ode, Hagerhall & Sang, 2010; Stamps, 2002; Taylor, 2006). It was found that certain fractal dimensions trigger more intense physiological responses, with many of these responses indicative of stress reduction (Taylor, 2006). Taylor suggests how incorporating a rich variety of fractal patterns into buildings can be useful in situations where “people are deprived of nature’s fractals” (2006). Varying sounds, colours and light can produce similar pleasurable physiological responses, as can movement such as waving grasses, especially when viewed in the eyes’ periphery.

Thus there is strong evidence for an innate human response to nature. The conclusion to this section is that psychological and physiological evidence is now emerging to suggest that there is a scientific base to biophilic design and the

assertion that humans respond positively to nature and the patterns and spaces of nature. If this is the case then there should be strong social, environmental and economic outcomes associated with such design.

3.5 The socio-psychological benefits

From the research already reviewed a list of socio-psychological benefits can be compiled:

- Improved mental health: (Ulrich, 1979; Ulrich et al., 1991; Berman et al., 2012; Tyrväinen et al., 2014).
- Reduced stress: (Li et al., 2011; Berman et al., 2012; Matsunaga et al., 2011; Park et al., 2010; Tyrväinen et al., 2014; Berman et al., 2008; Ikei et al., 2014; Hagerhall et al., 2012; Taylor, 2006).
- Attention restoration: (Kaplan, 1995; Berto, 2005; Tenngart Ivarsson & Hagerhall, 2008; Raanaas, 2011).
- Increased wellbeing: (Li et al., 2011; Berman et al., 2012; Tyrväinen et al., 2014; Berman et al., 2008; Ikei et al., 2014; Hagerhall et al., 2012).
- Decreased violence and crime: (Kuo & Sullivan, 2001).
- Faster healing rates in hospitals: (Ulrich, 1984; Park & Mattson, 2008; Moore, 1981).
- Greater altruistic behaviour: (Guèguen & Stefan, 2014).

Such benefits are not isolated but interact with all aspects of human settlements. Do they also provide a validation for the social motivators and drivers of biophilic design which may be revealed in the immersive journey?

The evidence will next be assessed for the environmental and economic benefits that flow from a better connection between humans and nature in urban design.

3.6 The environmental benefits

Decreased biodiversity, urban heat island effects and pollution have become current and urgent environmental issues that challenge the resilience of cities. Kellert, Heerwagen and others in the biophilic design movement from the 2006 conference and beyond, recognised the potential environmental benefits of restoring and enhancing nature in urban design. These emergent biophilic design advocates primarily focussed on the human-nature connection though they acknowledged the possible benefits, not only with the human-nature relationship, but also environmentally that a shift towards a design approach that integrates nature into cities could bring. Following this time, the biophilic design movement, especially Beatley (2011) and his research group (http://biophiliccities.org), has emphasised environmental restoration and regeneration.

In the last decade research on the environmental benefits of biophilic design has focussed on the benefits of direct greenery, predominantly on roofs. Green roofs have a historical place in urban design with the early sod roofs of European architecture, but have developed new engineering techniques to enable green roofs to become a major architectural feature of innovative buildings (Tan, 2013). Vertical greenery has also progressed from vine covered facades to vertical living walls since the aesthetic designs and constructions of innovative French botanist Patric Blanc (Beatley, 2011; Yok et al., 2009). As a result a range of environmental benefits have been evaluated including improvements to water, air, biodiversity and heat.

3.6.1 Water management

The global expansion of urbanised, paved and concreted regions has contributed to storm water run-off being a significant management problem in many cities (Anders & Walker, 2011; Mentens, Raes & Hermy, 2006; Schroll, Lambrinos, Righetti & Sandrock, 2011). The ability of vegetation, including the growing medium, to uptake and absorb water is proving to be a successful strategy to manage run-off and associated waterway pollution (Gregoire & Clausen, 2011; Lee, Moon, T. Kim, H. Kim & Han, 2013). Quantifying research of the efficacy of this is consistently showing that significant reductions of storm water run-off can be achieved, especially through the use of green roofs (Mentens et al., 2006; Schroll et al., 2011; Gregoire & Clausen, 2011) and, to a lesser extent, green walls (Ostendorf et al.,

2011). Variance in retention occurs due to climate, seasons, plant type, slope of roof and substrate depth but the appropriate combination can achieve average retention rates of 70% or more (Anders & Walker, 2011; Schroll et al., 2011; Mentens et al., 2006).

Biophilic design in the form of green roofs and rain gardens is significantly aiding stormwater reduction by utilising plant uptake and absorption of rain water. Green roofs are particularly appealing as they potentially utilise previously unused or underused areas so they do not compete with public space (Mentens et al., 2006). Vertical green walls also have the advantage of utilising 'unused' facades, having minimal footprint and significantly adding, through their visibility, to the aesthetics of the urban environment. Aside from reducing storm water run-off, they have the potential to reuse water from reclaimed waste water plus recirculating any excess drainage water for the vertical wall (Burrows & Corragio, 2011).

Water pollution

Gravity encourages water to flow down a living wall and through the plants' growing medium and, depending on the living wall system, this can act as a biofilter for the water used. The large vertical root zone typical of a living wall can also efficiently purify water through phytoremediation processes of phytofiltration and rhizofiltration (Burrows & Corragio, 2011)

In many US cities storm water management is a significant issue. This is due to heavy rainfalls along with urban hard surfaces that collect impurities. Substantial contributors to water pollution in the US are the combined sewer systems (CSSs) that are commonplace in the north east, Great Lakes and Pacific north west areas and as urban storm water run-off increases so does the problem. The system originated in Hamburg, Germany, and was first implemented in the US in Chicago and Brooklyn, its adoption continuing through the perception of its cost effectiveness (Burian, Nix, Pitt & Durrans, 2000). In these systems a single conduit carries both storm water and household sewage and waste water. Heavy rain events are resulting in more frequent combined sewage overflows (CSO), carrying both household pollutants and surface pollutants into waterways (Rowe, 2011; Wang, Eckelman & Zimmerman, 2013). The US government has introduced regulations and policies to mitigate waterway pollution through control of storm water run-off (Burian, Nix, Pitt & Durrans, 2000). Washington's Clean River Act is an example of

the outcome of one of these policies, an initiative that has catalysed the introduction of green roofs throughout the city (Anacostia Watershed Society, 2015).

Research on the effectiveness of green roofs in lessening pollutants in run-off varies in results. While overall the research suggests green roofs can help mitigate water pollution (Rowe, 2011; Gregoire & Clausen, 2011), there are difficulties quantifying the results due to variance in substrates, plant selection, roof age and weather events (Seidl, Gromaire, Saad & de Gouvello, 2013; Rowe, 2011). However, there is little doubt that reducing or slowing water run-off through biophilic initiatives such as green roofs and green walls does reduce the overall amount of pollutants entering waterways (Gregoire & Clausen, 2011).

3.6.2 Air pollution

Carbon reduction

With high levels of concern about climate change the sequestration of carbon from the atmosphere is being given an elevated status. Plant photosynthesis in cities is able to assist in airborne carbon reduction as long as carbon sequestration in roots and stems lasts long enough to meet recommended standards (Akbari, 2001; Leung et al., 2011; Sheweka & Magdy, 2011). Carbon can also make its way into the soil from the plant when the plant dies or goes dormant. A deepening of the understanding of this process has led to terrestrial sequestration being examined as a potential aid in atmospheric carbon reduction through managed land practices that impede the stored carbon from being exposed to oxygen and re-entering the atmosphere (Plains CO2 Reduction Partnership). It is possible to use the same principles in biophilic design initiatives, especially with green rooftops and living walls (Carey, 2013; Leung et al., 2011; Sheweka & Magdy, 2011; Miyawaki, 1998; Ottele, Perini, Fraaij, Haas & Raiteri, 2011). Carbon sequestration by urban street trees can be significant in reducing a city's CO_2 level with each 50 m^2 crown of trees sequestering 4.5-11 kg of carbon (Akbari, 2002); thus it is likely that biophilic design can also demonstrate carbon sequestration though large scale demonstrations are yet to occur.

Phytoremediation

Phytoremediation refers to the use of plants and associated soil microbes to reduce the concentrations or toxic effects of contaminants in the environment; it is the ability of plants to 'clean' or remediate the surrounding air, soil or water (Carey, 2013; Leung et al., 2011; Sheweka & Magdy, 2011; Pugh, MacKenzie, Whyatt & Hewitt, 2012). Pollutants such as ozone, nitrogen oxides, sulphur dioxide, ammonia, nitric acid, carbon monoxide and particulates can be remediated by urban vegetation (Leung et al. 2011; Ottele, van Bohemen & Fraaij, 2010). Vegetation planted on streets between high rises (street canyons) can reduce particulate matter by as much as 60% and nitrogen dioxide by 40% (Pugh et al., 2012). Particulate matter adhering to leaf surfaces is absorbed into the plant or at least diluted when it is released. In the root area contaminants are broken down due to interactions between plants and soil. In the plant tissue, compounds are chemically transformed (Ottelè et al., 2011; Carey, 2013). Phytoremediation involves different mechanisms and different processes so particular plants are more suitable than others for particular pollutants (Carey, 2013; Ottele et al., 2011). Although few studies have yet appeared this well-known science would suggest that mechanical filtration and phytoremediation could enable grey water to be used to irrigate green roofs and living walls in hot areas with little water and substantial reduction of pollutants (Carey, 2013).

Ongoing research conducted at NASA on the potential of plants to assist air purification in closed systems has evolved from a focus on air quality in space stations and closed-system buildings, with particular attention to the removal of formaldehyde and other volatile compounds (Wolverton, McDonald & Watkins, 1984). Wolverton concluded that plants, particularly the spider plant, were effective in pollutant removal. Studies conducted in a primary school that monitored temperature, carbon dioxide, carbon monoxide, VOCs, carbonyls and particulate matter with and without plants corroborated NASA's findings (Pegas et al., 2012). NASA's research also revealed that the soil, particularly if it contained activated carbon, played an important part in absorption of pollutants, storing them until the plants are able to utilise the pollutants for food (Wolverton et al., 1984; Levin, 2014). The US EPA's chief of Indoor Air critiqued NASA's research arguing that it would take 680 plants in a typical house to achieve the same results as the tests.

The University of Guelph in Toronto, Canada, furthered NASA's research in conjunction with Canadian and European Space Agencies. They also concluded that it was the soil microbes which removed indoor air pollution. Living walls provide

the solution. They can support a large number and variety of plants, thus also a variety of microbes, and be hydroponic thereby supporting beneficial microbes. Combined with fans circulating air through the wall of plants, an effective indoor biofilter is created. The University of Guelph's Controlled Environment Systems Research Facility designed their first one in 2001, installing the first wall in the University in 2004. Toronto now has a number of indoor biofilter living walls and the number is growing. With successful outcomes and responses, architects are discovering that developers are cost cutting in other areas to pay for the installation of a biofilter green wall.

3.6.3 Biodiversity

With declining biodiversity, increasing habitat in cities through increased urban vegetation is receiving focus in many countries. Biodiversity loss is a growingg global issue, galvanising agreements by governments at the UN 2012 conference on biodiversity to increase commitment and spending to halt the rate of the loss (CBD International, 2012). With increasing urbanisation the importance of biodiversity conservation in cities increases (Kowarik, 2011). Green roofs and green walls, with the appropriate plant species selection, have the potential to mitigate 'the loss of ecosystem services in urban areas' (Cook-Patton & Bauerle, 2012; Grant, 2006). Switzerland, particularly Basel, has been studying the progression of biodiversity associated with green roofs with encouraging results, resulting in mandatory green roofs on new flat-roofed buildings (Brenneisan, 2006). Some bird species are beginning to colonise the Swiss green roofs (Baumann, 2006). In a study of 115 'wild colonised' green roofs in northern French cities, 86% of the colonies were found to be native plants (Madre, Vergnes, Machon & Clergeau, 2014). This suggests that, once established, biophilic architectural features could act as important sites for biodiversity colonisation from the surrounding bioregion.

Singapore's KTP hospital incorporated greenery and biophilic design throughout the hospital in the hope that this initiative would encourage the butterflies back. A goal of 100 butterfly species was set. After 3 years 102 species were sighted at the hospital (Newman, 2014).

Newman (2014) in his assessment of Singapore's biophilic urbanism suggests that the value of high density cities for biodiversity is the high manpower and much greater variety in the structure of habitats (especially vertical sites like forests in high

rise areas). There is much more scientific work to be done in designing and evaluating biophilic architecture for its biodiversity, but the early signs are encouraging that a whole new set of ecological techniques could be emerging.

3.6.4 Urban heat island effect reduction and reduced energy consumption

With increasing urbanisation, urban vegetation is being replaced by low albedo surfaces such as concrete and asphalt which, alongside less evapotranspiration, leads to a phenomenon known as the urban heat island effect (Wong et al., 2010). The appropriate use of vegetation in the built environment can adjust the urban microclimate and improve thermal behaviour of building envelopes (Kontoleon & Eumorfopoulou, 2010).

Akbari (2002) reports that a 25% reduction in net heating and cooling energy use can be achieved in urban areas by planting street trees. Sixteen shade trees saved 30% energy cooling (Leung et al., 2011). These results suggest that biophilic design could have a similar impact.

Studies done with models suggest that vegetated facades can reduce the urban heat island effect around 2 degrees Celsius, improving air quality, thermal comfort and human health, with savings in electricity consumption of 5% to 10% (Sheweka & Mohamed, 2012; Susca, Gaffin & Dell'Osso, 2011). Shading heat-absorbing surfaces with vegetation may reduce daily temperature fluctuations by 50% while evapotranspiration can convert large amounts of solar radiation (Wong et al., 2010). Vegetated facades also reduce interior temperatures and delay solar heat transfer, leading to reductions in energy consumption used in air conditioning (Cheng, Cheung & Chu, 2010).

Green roofs are capable of reducing the use of energy for cooling and heating (Susca, Gaffin & Dell'Osso, 2010). French studies concluded that a green roof reduced summer indoor air temperatures by 2 degrees with the annual energy demand reduced by 6% (Jaffal, Ouldboukhitine & Belarbi, 2012). Hong Kong research revealed a maximum temperature decrease of 8.4 degrees if both green walls and green roofs are used to create a green urban canyon. Citywide this could reduce energy needed to cool buildings by between 32% and 100% (Hongming & Jim, 2010). Sproul, Wan, Mandel and Rosenfeld (2014) examined the economics of green, white and black roofs. They concluded that either white or green were far more beneficial and therefore economical than black. Biophilic green roofs save in

energy costs through insulating effects and evapotranspiration but appear to contribute less to cooling than white roofs (Sproul et al., 2014).

3.6.5 Conclusions to Environmental benefits

The discussed benefits are listed:

Water management: including reduction in water pollution

Air pollution: plus carbon reduction and phytoremediation

Biodiversity: both ecosystem services and species retention and regeneration

Energy: reduction of urban heat island effect and reduction of energy consumption

3.7 Economic benefits

The socio-psychological and environmental benefits are likely to combine to contribute to significant economic benefits as set out in Figure 3.1.

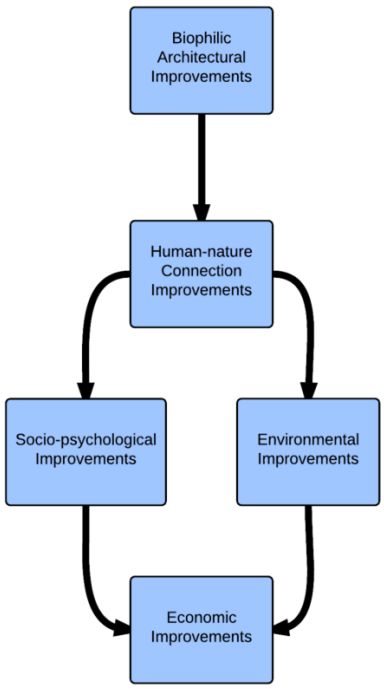


Figure 3.1 Biophilic architectural benefit flow

(Source Author)

If humans are functioning better and their environment is working better then the human economy is going to be more productive and efficient.

Research has provided some quantifiable data that has enabled the economic case to be made, but it has tended to focus on the economics of either an individual benefit or a few connected benefits. The article *'The Economics of Biophilia'* (Browning et al., 2012), although still in grey literature, specifically focusses on 'making the economic case' for biophilic initiatives but restricts itself to the social benefits in workplaces, health facilities, retail, schools, property value and crime reduction. With biophilia originating in the human-nature connection this is justifiable, and Browning et al. support this further by pointing out that *"*today productivity costs are 112 times greater than energy costs in the workplace*"* and that daylighting schemes in offices can *"*save over $2000 per employee per year in office costs*"* (2012). The economic gains to be made from environmental benefits such as reduced energy costs, extended building life, and decreased water management costs are apparent. Extrapolating the quantitative figures to support this is particular to location and local costs, but presents an area of research needing further attention.

The evidence for economic benefits from biophilic design is set out to include better workplace productivity, improved health and healing, increased retail potential, decreased crime and violence, increased property values and employee attraction and increased liveability in dense areas.

3.7.1 Increased Worker Productivity

With productive salaries and benefits, absenteeism and presenteeism (being at a work station but mentally removed) contributing to more than 90% of a company's operating costs, worker performance and the workplace environment is receiving increasing attention as the productivity gains associated with high quality interior environments are supported by further research (Heerwagen, 2000).

Thermal comfort and daylighting work environments have both been increasingly linked to productivity (Erwine & Heschong, 2000). Workers with greater control over their internal environment with both air-conditioning and natural ventilation have been found to have increased productivity, and less illness and absenteeism (Heerwagen, 2000). The Herman-Miller research project utilised an existing worker population, with known productivity, who were being moved from their old

windowless factory with no skylights to a newly designed building with extensive daylighting, internal skylights and plants, and operable windows. For the night time shift there was no gain in productivity, while the daytime shift with the benefit of seeing outside, had significant gains. The swing shift had mixed results that were found to be seasonal. In summer, productivity was increased; the workers felt more positive about coming to work and job satisfaction increased (Heerwagen, 2000; Browning et al., 2012).

Studies on the effects of lighting on productivity and wellbeing have been undertaken by Heschong and the California Energy Commission. Schools, shops and offices have been involved (Heschong, 2002). In one of the studies in a call centre, researchers revealed that workers with views to the windows handle calls 6-7% faster than those without views. Spending $1000 per worker to angle desks so a natural view was available, plus providing operable windows, achieved annual productivity savings of $2990 per employee, delivering a payback period of four months (Browning et al., 2012).

A study conducted by the University of Oregon found employees with views of nature took fewer sick days (Browning et al., 2012). It concluded that productivity, health and worker wellbeing were significantly affected by light, air quality and variance, indoor plants and dynamic views of nature, with decreased absenteeism and presenteeism (Browning et al., 2012). Heerwagen (2000) agrees, suggesting that a growing body of evidence supports that the presence of positive, up-lifting features can promote greater wellbeing and increased tolerance to other stresses. These features include “daylight, sun patches, window views, contact with nature, and overall spatial design” (Heerwagen, 2000). Contact with nature and window views of nature can be both psychologically and physiologically beneficial, reducing stress and enhancing wellbeing (Ulrich et al., 1991; Kaplan, 1995; Nieuwenhuis et al., 2014). Stress reduction in the workplace is not only beneficial to the organisation’s productivity but also to worker health. Viewing nature also restores attention as expounded by Kaplan’s attention restoration theory (Kaplan, 1995). With focussed office and computer work particularly, attentional fatigue results so a view of nature, especially dynamic views, renews attention, restores cognitive functioning and thus increases productivity and a sense of wellbeing in the work place. Increases in productivity through biophilic work place environments have the potential to contribute US$470 million towards economic benefits in New York City (Browning et al., 2012).

3.7.2 Health and Healing

Quality workplace conditions not only increase productivity but can also reduce absenteeism and health care costs by increasing employee wellbeing (Heerwagen, 2000; Singh, Syal, Grady & Korkmaz, 2010). Direct health care cost benefits can be calculated utilising research into healing rates, anaesthesia usage and psychological benefits gained from the incorporation of biophilic design in health care facilities. Ulrich's research from 1984 that revealed increasing healing rates in hospitals with views of nature has been corroborated by ongoing research. Increased daylight in patients' rooms can reduce depression and pain (Beauchemin & Hays, 1996; Ulrich, 2006). This can lead to shorter hospital stays, from 2.6 to 3.67 days, particularly with patients' suffering from bipolar disorder or depression (Benedetti, Colombo, Barbini, Campori & Smeraldi, 2001; Beauchemin & Hays, 1996).

As well as daylight, views of nature, pictures of nature and hospital healing gardens, all have the ability to reduce the need for anaesthesia, increase satisfaction with the hospital stay for patients and their families, reduce stress and improve clinical outcomes (Park & Mattson, 2008; Matsunaga et al., 2011; Ulrich, 2002). Browning et al. (2012) have incorporated these studies with statistics of hospital and medication costs in the US to conclude that reducing the average length of a hospital stay by 0.41 days with daylighting and views of nature would result in 93 million dollars in reduced hospital costs (Browning et al., 2012).

3.7.3 Increased Retail Potential

A consumer study of varying biophilic initiatives in store design and retail streets ranging from streets with no visible vegetation, streets with scattered vegetation to streets with a high level of street trees that even obscured shopfronts, revealed that the more vegetated streets attracted a greater number of shoppers who were prepared to spend up to 25% more and travel further (Wolf, 2005). Joye, Willems, Brengman and Wolf (2010) introduced the concept of Biophilic Store Design (BSD) in a research article. They hoped that the paper would reinforce the awareness of the beneficial effects of vegetation for retail stakeholders and that commercial practices, greater profits and greenery are "mutually reinforcing practises" (Joye et al., 2010). A later study which explored the consumer impact of in-store greenery discovered that shoppers were less stressed and enjoyed more feelings of pleasure

(Brengman, Willems & Joye, 2012). The same study also suggested that shop employees responded to in-store greenery with less stress, more positive moods and improved customer service and job satisfaction (Brengman, Willems & Joye, 2012). In 1995 a *Wall Street Journal* article reported that Wal-Mart, after adding skylights to one of their stores, had found that sales in the sky-lit part had significantly risen. Erwine and Heschong, on behalf of their energy consulting firm, decided to investigate this further, utilising a different chain store with surprising results (2000). With 99% statistical certainty they concluded that skylighting one of the chain's stores would result in a 40% sales increase, plus or minus 7% (Erwine & Heschong, 2000).

3.7.4 Decreased violence and crime

There are many studies of crime and the causes of violence but few have yet included biophilic design parameters in their analysis. In 2001 Kuo and Sullivan undertook a two year study of crime rates in Chicago public housing with and without greenery, finding a 52% reduction in felonies. Browning et al. (2012) calculated that this would save US$162,000 per year for the Illinois Department of Corrections. Biophilic landscapes could save New York City US$1.7 billion through crime reduction (Browning et al., 2012). More research is needed in this area.

3.7.5 Increased property value and employee attraction

It can be anticipated that biophilic design features will increase the value of properties and also result in higher staff attraction and retention rates. Some research is now showing this. Eichholtz, Kok and Quigley (2010) found that buildings with a 'green rating' attract higher rental prices, 3% per square foot or 7% in effective rents. A 'green' building, though, may or may not incorporate biophilic features to attain their rating. Studies such Benson, Hansen, Schwartz and Smersh's (1998) on real estate prices have concluded that people are willing to pay more for views of nature. It is known that gentrification tends to occur where there are parks and greenery in dense urban spaces. This has been recently experienced by property owners and tenants in the vicinity of the New York High Line vegetated walkway (Beatley, 2011). Coupling this phenomenon with the research on

productivity and the workplace environment, it makes sense that higher rental prices would be valid in biophilic buildings.

Employee turnover is costly and companies are finding building design that contributes to employee wellbeing is attracting and retaining high quality workers (Heerwagen, 2000). Major companies, such as the Bank of America with a Manhattan office building, utilise views of nature and green buildings to entice and retain top candidate employees. The Bank of America ensures that 90% of their employees have river, park or green roof views (Browning et al., 2012).

There is much anecdotal evidence for the economic benefit of biophilic features but not enough research has been done yet to quantify this.

3.7.6 Increased liveability – enabling higher density and reduced footprint

Perhaps the most significant economic gain from biophilic architecture is from making higher density more attractive. Denser cities have much lower footprints and enhanced economic productivity due to reduced costs of sprawl, improved agglomeration economies and greater opportunities for attracting knowledge economy capital (Newman & Kenworthy, 2015). However cultural and political barriers to density can prevent these economic benefits. By introducing biophilic design features into dense buildings, the chances of delivering these economic benefits are greatly increased.

3.7.7 Conclusions to Economic benefits

The compiled benefits are listed:

Increased worker productivity

Health and healing benefits

Increased retail potential

Decreased violence and crime

Increased property value and employee attraction

Increased liveability enabling higher density and reduced footprint

3.8 Concluding thoughts

This research review demonstrates that the emerging area of biophilic design is rapidly becoming significant. This review found that there is a strong human psychological and physiological rationale as well as good environmental and socio-psychological evidence for the value of this design approach. Together these factors combine to suggest significant economic advantages. Browning et al. summarise the benefits this way:

> "By assigning value to a variety of indicators influenced by biophilic design, the business case for biophilia proves that disregarding humans' inclination towards nature is simultaneously denying potential for positive financial growth."
>
> (Browning et al., 2012)

A lot more research is needed to quantify all these benefits but the presence of a fundamental theoretical foundation for improving the human-nature connection in daily urban life is likely to achieve multiple benefits in how people live and how cities can therefore be managed better.

3.9 Meta-analysis of the literature

To deepen my understanding of the uptake, interest and response to biophilic design, I conducted a meta-analysis of the literature relating to the implementation of biophilic design principles. This analysis summarises the detailed review of the literature already presented in the chapter. Presenting it in a matrix (see Appendix A) with aggregated results reveals the numbers, trends and patterns, thus gaining indicative answers to the following questions which emerged during the engagement with the literature:

- Which design principles are being investigated?
- What benefits are being identified in the research?
- Which aspect of biophilic design is receiving most attention?
- Where is the research being undertaken?

The selection criteria for the literature were:

- It linked directly to biophilic principles being put into practice.
- It was published in the last ten years (unless an oft-cited seminal work).
- It was cited a minimum of two times by other authors.

X denotes area of primary research. O denotes secondary research.

The sorting of the biophilic literature into different aspects has been done using the categories of: social, environmental, economic and multiple (integrated analysis not clearly defined by one or other of these areas). These categories cover all the disciplines and professional practice areas that are used to discuss biophilics.

3.9.1 Summarised outcomes of the meta-analysis

The first meta-analysis (Appendix A.1) looked at design priciples. The articles, design principles and which sustainability pillar they relate to are summarised in the Table 3.1 below, with a graphical representation also in Figure 3.2 and Figure 3.3.

Table 3.2 Biophilic Design Principles in Research

		Number of Articles
		47
Design Principles		
	Green Roofs	26
	Vertical Living Walls	10
	Indoor Plants	10
	View of Nature	3
	Green Connectors	2
	Fractal Patterns	2
	Natural Lighting	1
	Bioretention Basin	1
Sustainability Pillars		
	Environmental	34 (32 Primary, 2 Secondary)
	Social	16 (11 Primary, 5 Secondary)
	Economic	10 (1 Primary, 9 Secondary)
	Multiple	8

(Source Author)

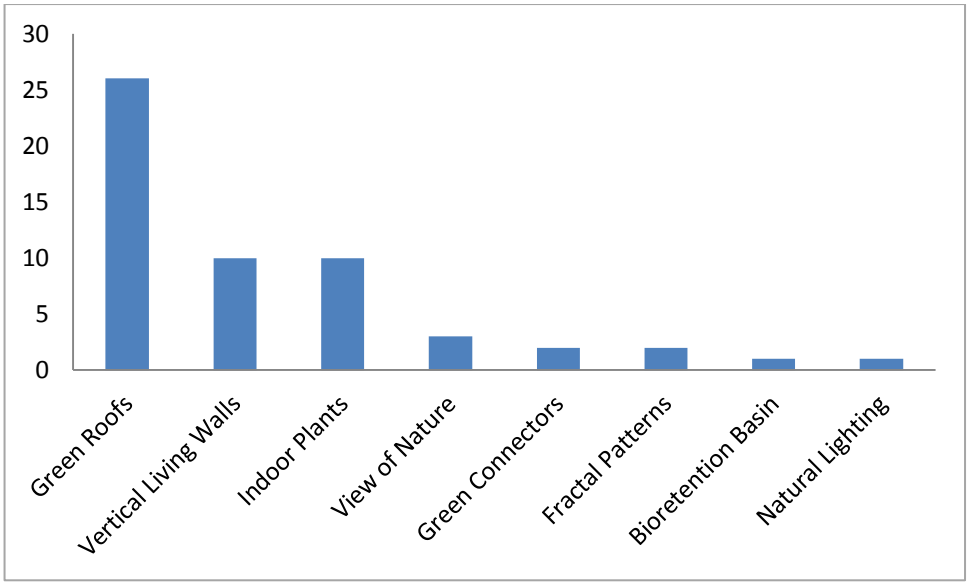


Figure 3.2 Biophilic Design Principles in Research Articles

(Source Author)

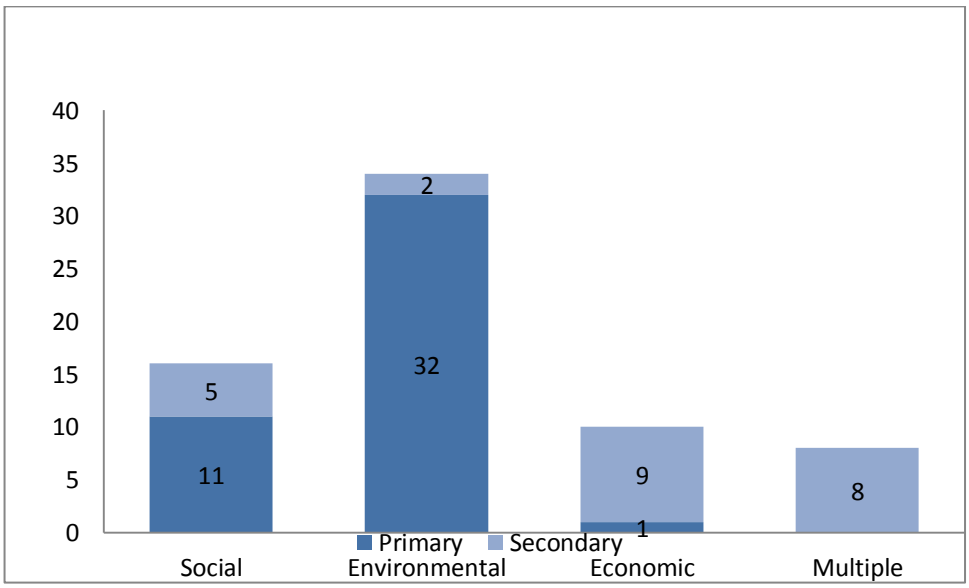


Figure 3.3 Relationship to sustainability pillars

(Source Author)

The meta-analysis and figures clearly reveal that the biophilic design principle receiving most attention and research is the green roof. It also revealed that the research is focussing on the environmental benefits that can result from the implementation of biophilic initiatives. Green walls and indoor plants are the second

highest design principle being researched. With green walls the environmental outcomes are still the most researched but with indoor plants it is the social benefits being considered.

This is significant as biophilic design originated through exploration of the human and nature connection. The fact that design principles are primarily being implemented for environmental reasons, not social, indicates that other factors are in play beyond the human-nature connection which provides a further question for the immersive journey: If not the biophilia human-nature connection, what is driving the implementation of biophilic design principles in countries?

It was helpful to also consider from which countries the research was emerging. This would assist to direct the immersive journey plus provide another possible question to consider. I was aware that countries such as Switzerland and Germany were not represented in my literature review even though they are renowned for their traditional green roof implementation and technology. This is possibly because much of their literature is not in the English language. It is also possibly due to the fact that they have been implementing green roofs for some time and no longer need to research them as they are an accepted standard. Figure 3.4 and Table 3.2 depict from which countries the research is emerging.

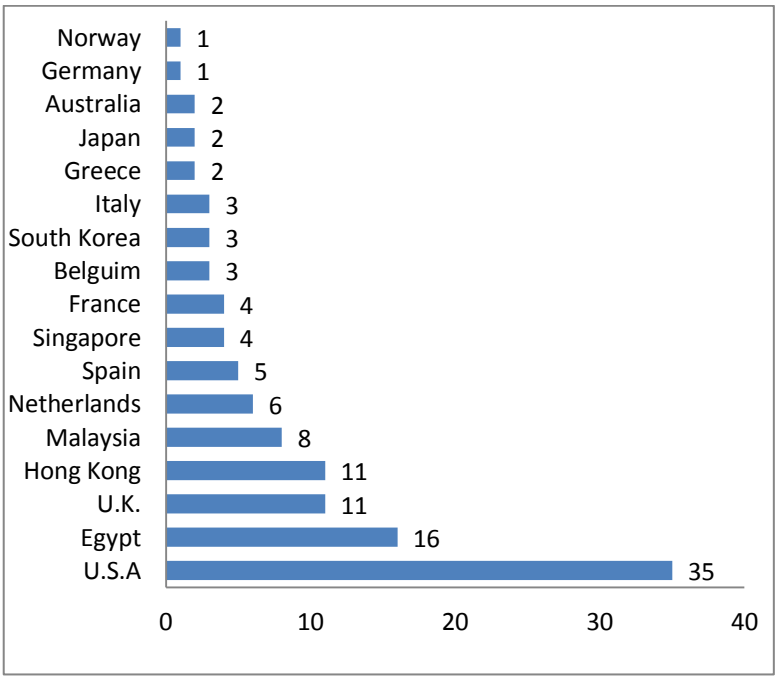


Figure 3.4 Countries investigating design principles

(Source Author)

Table 3.3 Countries investigating design principles

Design Principles

Country	Number Of Articles
U.S.A	35
Egypt	16
U.K.	11
Hong Kong	11
Malaysia	8
Netherlands	6
Spain	5
Singapore	4
France	4
Belgium	3
South Korea	3
Italy	3
Greece	2
Japan	2
Australia	2
Germany	1
Norway	1

(Source Author)

The main countries from which the research is originating tend to be ones experiencing high urban density in their major cities. The larger share of the research came from the United States (US); the US is also where biophilic design as a concept originated. This result indicated that an immersive journey to the US could be helpful in answering my research questions.

Utilising the same criteria as the design principles literature, I also analysed which aspects of the human responses to nature were attracting the most investigation and interest (Appendix A.2). Again the results of the meta-analysis were compiled in tables and graphs.

Table 3.4 Most researched human-nature connection benefit

The human-nature connection in research	Number of articles 22
Increased Wellbeing	9
Reduced Stress	4
Aesthetically Pleasing	3
Attention Restoration	2
Increased Productivity	2
Increased Healing Rate	2
Cognitive Enhancement	1
Improved Mental Health	1
Decreased Violence and Crime	1

(Source Author)

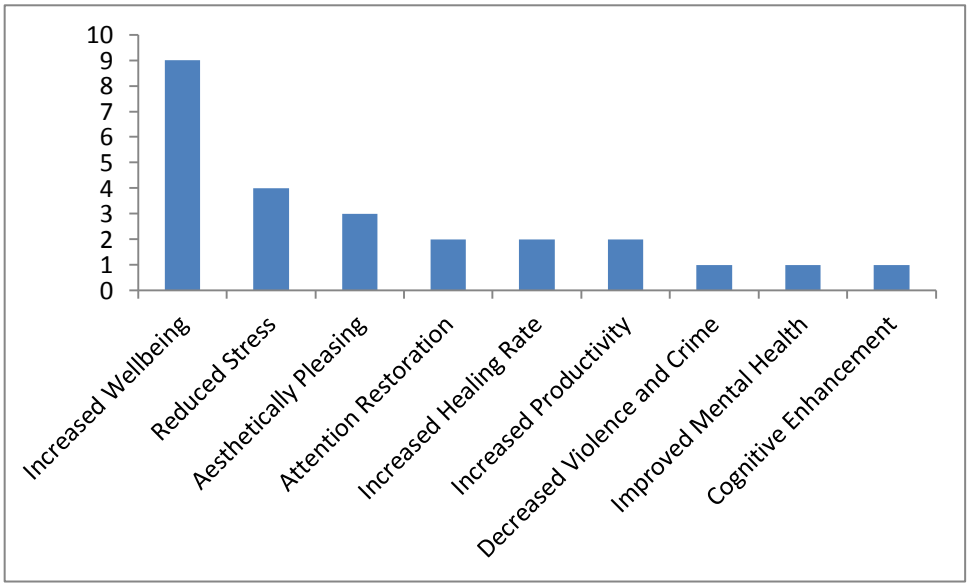


Figure 3.5 Most researched human-nature connection benefit

(Source Author)

The meta-analysis revealed that most interest was in investigating the benefits on human wellbeing which contact with nature can provide as shown in Table 3.3 and Figure 3.5. Among the nine papers which investigated this broader picture the reduction of stress was frequently considered as a component of wellbeing. The next most frequent topic under prime investigation was stress reduction. This tends to indicate that stress is a significant issue in the contemporary world and that there must be baseline understanding that nature can help alleviate stress to trigger the initial research. It was interesting that aesthetics receives more attention in the research than healing rates or crime rates. The beauty of nature, though, has been extolled through various mediums for centuries.

Again, countries undertaking the research were considered.

Table 3.5 Countries investigating human-nature benefits

Country	Number of Articles
U.S.A	10
Japan	5
U.K.	3
Australia	2
South Korea	1
Norway	1
Portugal	1
Sweden	1
Finland	1

(Source Author)

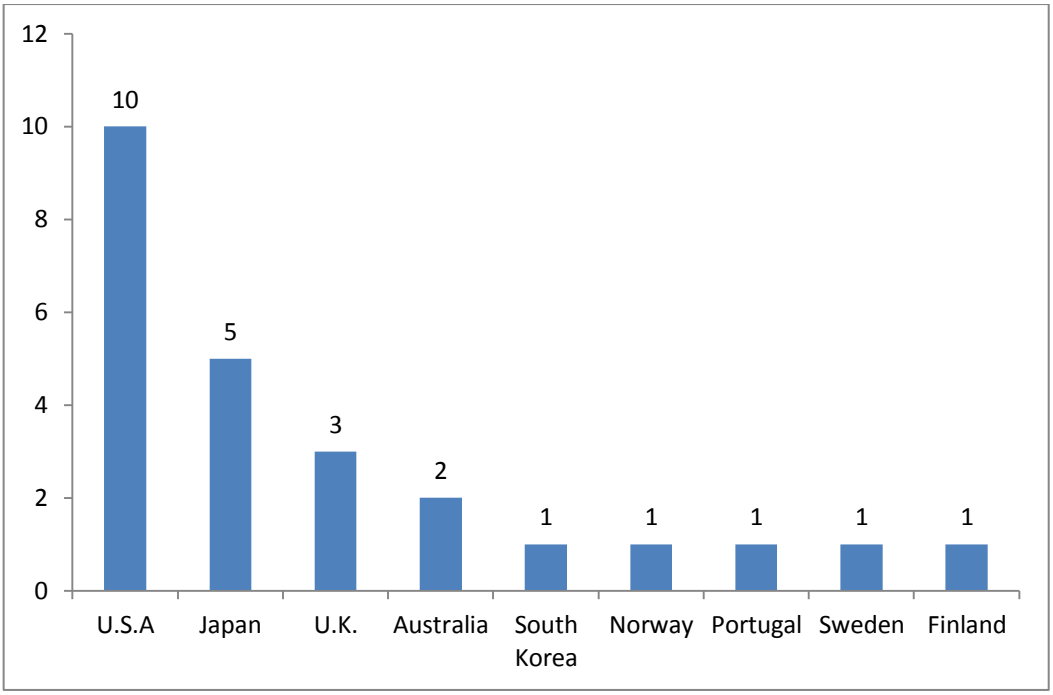


Figure 3.6 Countries investigating human-nature benefits

(Source Author)

The meta-analysis revealed that a significant amount of research is occurring in the United States as depicted in Table 3.4 and Figure 3.6. This was consistent with the previous tally of researched design principles. The other countries varied. The result confirmed that the US was a country active in implementing biophilic design principles and interested in researching the social and environmental benefits which result.

3.10 Conclusion

Having further established the need for biophilic design within contemporary cities, this chapter then outlined the design elements that contribute to biophilic design. Once these were established, they were utilised to guide the review of the research investigating social, environmental and economic outcomes of biophilic design.

This revealed substantial growth in understanding of both psychological and physiological research on the human-nature connection in the last decade. Increased wellbeing and stress reduction were consistently revealed as areas in which there were positive responses to exposure to nature and for this reason were attracting a significant amount of investigation. There was good evidence for the

environmental benefits which together with the social benefits translate into significant economic advantages. More research is needed in this area but biophilic design appears to be providing the theoretical foundation for the multiple benefits which can result from improving humans' daily connection with nature in the built environment. This mounting evidence of the human response to nature supports the theory of biophilic design as a valid, valuable and indeed essential approach to urban design and liveability. Thus the thesis has addressed the core research question: Does the research literature support the assertions of the biophilic design theorists?

The most investigated design principle is green roofs. Much of the research focussed on the related storm water management benefits. Vertical green walls and indoor plants also attracted investigation. Aside from the benefit of storm water management, decreased energy consumption, indoor and urban cooling, air quality, stress reduction and aesthetics were the main benefits attracting attention.

The countries in which the research is occurring tend to be those with bigger, global cities where density and associated problems rather than the benefits have highlighted the need for more biophilic design. These cities were designed in an era of automobile and energy dependence, with a simple modernism that did not allow or encourage natural features in the built environment. Apart from recognition of the benefits of biophilic design motivating implementation, lack of space within such dense cities could be necessitating clever biophilic designs and utilisation of roofs and walls (Newman, 2014).

Having gained an understanding of the benefits of biophilic initiatives as possible motivators and drivers for the expanding social movement of biophilic urbanism, a deeper journey of immersion into the social movement was required: phase two of heuristic inquiry. The journey began in my local area, where I submerged myself in the pursuit of answers to my questions, allowed the unfolding of the direction and was alert to possibilities. A further two questions had emerged from the last two chapters which the immersive journey would answer: Would the research verifying positive human responses to nature be reflected in the immersive journey and confirmed by experiential anecdotes? Was what was being investigated in the research being reflected in the global implementation?

SECTION TWO

IMMERSION and INCUBATION

CHAPTER FOUR
THE LOCAL JOURNEY

4.1 Introduction

The previous two chapters were phase one of the heuristic inquiry journey, the initial engagement with the focus of inquiry. This chapter begins the next phase of heuristic inquiry, the immersion. Having reviewed the literature in the previous chapters and gained an understanding of the emergence of the biophilic design movement plus the design principles and benefits, the next stage in the heuristic journey of inquiry was to engage directly with the phenomenon being experienced. This would provide the opportunity to gain an understanding of if, how and why the research was translating into practice. Do the benefits identified in the research provide a basis for the motivators for biophilic design implementation? The context for this was my local environment. It required total immersion and receptivity to possibilities, guided by integrity and intuition.

This chapter is the story of my immersion, experience and observations as a participant in the implementation of biophilic design initiatives in Perth, primarily green wall trials in the City of Fremantle. Through a personal journey of immersion in the outer experience, coupled with inner reflection, the aim was to gain a greater understanding of what was motivating interest in biophilic design in Perth. Being attuned to any barriers that presented helped extend the understanding of any difficulties that may retard the progression of biophilic design.

By utilising the heuristic third phase of incubation, reflection on my own learning and self-discovery facilitated the uncovering of the universal themes experienced by others within the local social movement of biophilic urbanism. A significant proportion of the documenting of this action-based research occurred in the incubation phase and assisted in the illumination of potential players, arenas, barriers and motivators, providing a deeper knowledge that only firsthand experience can bring. Personal reflections are scattered throughout, defined by the use of the first person. This chapter also provided a stepping stone to awareness of some of the dynamics and interplay between players and arenas which assisted in the global interviews.

A chronological diary of the events and conversations which occurred in this period was kept. The diary was also a vehicle for inner reflections and personal responses to events. Two local interviews were conducted. The local experience involved a variety of projects. For clarity, these were separated so each project had its own chronological story rather than intermingled. Meetings, significant emails and conversations were recorded and dated. This chapter contains the highlights of this local experience as it relates to the broader picture of the social movement of biophilic design with discussion of the key themes, players, arenas and motivators. Being a significant component of the local story, the results of the green wall trials will also be discussed.

4.2 Background

My immersion within the biophilic design movement began locally in 2012. The movement was new. Biophilic design was a little known term and people were only just starting to become aware of green roofs and green walls. The city of Perth, with the port city of Fremantle, had always been perceived as a big country town, isolated from the rest of Australia and the world. Since the 1900's, its development had been slow and steady and, with lots of space, the focus was on the suburban family blocks with big backyards. With beautiful beaches, these suburban developments sprawled along the coast. The city had never experienced any major crisis, socially or environmentally.

This changed in the late 1970s with a mining boom. The state of Western Australia, where Perth is situated, has long been known for its rich mineral deposits, especially iron ore. In 1981, in response to market demand, the state experienced a mining boom (Ye, 2008; Battellino, 2010). There was a rapid development of mine sites and workers flooded in from around the world with stories of employment. The mining companies decided that it made financial sense to fly workers in and out of the mine sites rather than build towns and amenities in the area. Perth experienced a rapid growth in demand for housing; the demand was from companies and individuals experiencing the wealth that came with mining and exporting a desired commodity. The population increased by 400,000 in seven years and passed two million in 2015.

Perth began to experience an affordable housing crisis (Worthington, 2012). Rental properties in the more popular suburbs became expensive and in short supply. New

housing was sought and there was rapid building in response to the demand. Land was cleared and Perth expanded outward, sprawling out to 120 km along the coast (Moran & Novak, 2009). Inner city apartments were also in demand and the inner city experienced an unprecedented growth in density. Perth's typical low density (Curtis, 2008) was beginning to change in response to demand as well as the necessity to curb the outward expansion with its associated bush clearing. New housing and precinct designs are now emerging that aim to create denser, more liveable suburbs. Australians typically love their outdoor living, gardens and backyards and hence were looking for a way to bring nature into the new denser housing options. Incorporating the elements of biophilic design may assist the embracing of higher density living.

Perth has a hot, dry climate with a decreasing rainfall. A sufficient water supply for the future is not ensured (Water Corporation, 2009) and the city now has more than half of its water supply from desalination. Thus the inclusion of direct nature needs to be water wise and utilise innovative water saving technologies. The use of water though has the potential to help reduce urban temperatures by evapotranspiration and the creation of micro-climates. The city's design focus has not considered the high and sustained temperatures of the summers. In many streets there is little shade and pedestrians scuttle in the summer from shade spot to shade spot. Urban heat, though not yet a disaster, has the potential to be fatal if excessive heat waves occur, such as Chicago, and recently India, have experienced.

Biophilic design initiatives offer the potential to cool the city and to facilitate high density living through aesthetically increasing wellbeing. This design approach, though, needs someone to start making it happen and convince others to invest in the design approach, be the risk taker, the early adopter, the leader. Fortunately the Mayor of the City of Fremantle was receptive to trialing green wall in his city.

4.3 Fremantle (Freo) Greenskins

Freo Greenskins was a collaborative project sparked by a particular event which occurred early in 2012. The City of Vincent, one of the Perth metropolitan councils, took the bold step of imposing the construction of a green wall as a building condition for a developer of a block of units. The new block was going to obstruct the view enjoyed by the tenants of an existing block of units, so the condition was

the compromise. The developer took the council to court and won, with the condition being removed due to lack of precedence and a lack of knowledge about the practice which could be involved. This example had quite an impact on me as I thought if councils were going to take the bold step of initiating these building conditions then it was a shame to lose the opportunity for a green wall due to a lack of precedence and knowledge. This case was discussed between academics at Curtin University Sustainability Policy (CUSP) Institute and the Mayor of the City of Fremantle with the decision to trial a green wall in Fremantle so the precedent and knowledge was established. The evidence for the benefits of green walls was there, but the question of whether it would be successful in the challenging climate of Perth was unanswered

4.3.1 The key players

The project attracted a lot of interest and many people played a part throughout. Four essential main players were there at the conception and were important in making it happen. They formed the steering group.

- Mayor Brad Pettitt
- CUSP director Peter Newman
- City of Fremantle Parks and Gardens manager Michael Leers
- PhD candidate Jana Soderlund

The Mayor and the Director of CUSP were in positions of power where they could allocate funds and seek necessary permissions. Their support was crucial but it was Leers and myself who did the needed groundwork. Throughout the project the four key players would meet to discuss progress and the next step. Early in the process the Mayor defined Leers as the person ‘driving’ the project. Leers controlled the funds allocated by the City of Fremantle and he and I met regularly in separate meetings. My role was to network, market, create the necessary documentation and organise events throughout.

There were six major stages throughout the project:

- Identifying the site
- Creating the tender brief
- Calling for tenders
- Designing the monitoring framework
- Installation and opening event
- Monitoring
- Analysing results

4.3.2 Identifying the site

Fremantle, having its origins as the port for Perth, has many heritage buildings from the late 1800s. Originally, we had hoped to construct the green wall on the outside of our institute but, being privately owned as well as heritage, it was not possible. It took some time to find a site that met with the criteria the steering group thought important.

- It was in the public eye.
- It was a council-owned building or the owners would agree to the wall's installation.
- There was an accessible water supply.
- The position would adequately test the climatic conditions that other green walls may have to: strong, salty sea breezes, radiant pavement heat and the north sun.

The Chosen Sites

Two sites and two different green wall systems (swatches) were chosen. Both are in the Fremantle CBD. Challenging sites, both socially and climatically, were intentionally chosen. Site A is a north facing wall in a little-used mall with significant anti-social behaviour. The area is a sun trap in summer with a high level of radiant heat from the paving and surrounding walls. Site B is a west facing street scape wall, again in an area where anti-social behaviour occurs. It is exposed to the late afternoon westerly sun and strong sea breezes.

The building on which the sites are located is privately owned and the owners were apprehensive and concerned about possible water damage. With the Mayor involved in the conversation and with reassurances, they gave their approval.

Figure 4.1 Site A

Figure 4.2 Site B

(Source Author)

4.3.3 Creating the tender brief

A few meetings were held to discuss the brief of each green wall swatch design and construction. We needed to get it right and be very clear in the parameters we were testing so we could provide a brief scope and concept plan (including fixing/support structures, maintenance plan and water source). There was discussion of variables between swatches: does each swatch contain similar species with similar water requirements? Are the species mixed to trial greater variety? Are species selected and swatches designed with potential water availability from sustainable sources as a parameter? A list was compiled:

- Design to address vandalism, ease of maintenance, and other similar criteria.

- There are two locations and two swatches – north facing wall in the Westgate Mall and the west facing wall opposite the Woolstores entrance.

- Budget for actual installation works is $20,000.

- Measurable outcomes to include water use, plant performance, comparison of ambient, wall or other temperatures.

4.3.4 Call for tenders

Expressions of interest to tender had already been received by five local contractors. Green wall construction was a small and highly competitive business in Perth. This was a high profile project. The contractors were keenly aware that their logo would be on the signage and their public exposure would be significant.

Once parameters had been clearly defined, a design criterion was created and sent to the five contractors with a two week submission deadline. Outlined within the criterion to be addressed were the following points:

- Design (including a schedule of all material types, images of example installation and details of irrigation system)
- Construction (including construction details of all joinery and wall attachment)
- Installation (including access and equipment requirements)
- Watering requirements (including plant species ET parameters and irrigation schedule)
- Maintenance (including frequency, tasks and cost)
- Species (differentiating between local native and exotic)
- Size of plants at time of planting
- Cost (pro bono components to be identified if included)
- Time frame (from award of contract to completion of installation).

By the close of business two weeks later, five tenders had been received and three of the four steering committee members assembled and selected the winning contractor. The contractor would construct and plant the green wall off-site, installing it after three months when there had been sufficient growth of the plants. This also meant that installation would occur in autumn, when climatic conditions are less harsh, and the plants would have time to settle before the test of summer.

4.3.5 Designing the monitoring framework

It was in this three month time period that the parameters and design of the social survey needed to be defined and the survey constructed. An article was placed in the Australian Institute for Landscape Architecture (AILA) newsletter outlining the project and asking if anyone wanted to help with the monitoring. May Carter, a social scientist and active place maker, responded. Carter was able to meet with the steering committee and this was the beginning of a continuing relationship.

It was agreed that she and I would compile the survey that was to be attached to the trial green walls in Fremantle. It was decided to link it to a QR code that could be placed on signage beside the walls and provide a direct link to the online survey.

Social survey goals

The purpose of the survey was to gain an indication of public response to building integrated vegetation in the urban environment. If their response was favourable, it was to then gauge what the prime motive for the positive response is. What draws them to respond to the survey? There is awareness that a strong negative reaction could still motivate them to fill in the survey. The survey and the green wall trial was also to gain some insight into whether there was any knowledge or understanding of the social and environmental benefits of nature as had been presented in the literature. Would the responses reflect awareness of the physiological and psychological benefits on offer? The questions explored several dimensions of response:

- Aesthetic: did people like how the walls looked?
- Design and function: did people feel the walls were useful and enhanced public space?
- Environmental: did the walls contribute to environmental amenity or urban biodiversity?

Respondents were also asked about their connection to nature and how much time they currently spent in nature or more natural surroundings.

Underpinning this were several questions:

- How do you assess the depth of the reaction?
- What emotions do the walls evoke (framing indifference as an emotion)?
- What aspect of the wall are they are responding to, e.g. the beauty, the 'green', the 'yah this might do something to this area', the environmental aspect?
- How interested are they in the concept and project?
- What are the emotions that are driving the interest?
- Would they support more green walls being installed and how strongly would they support this? What would they give up/ranking?
- How important is seeing more green in their urban environment to them?
- Would they like this in their home?
- Would they see it as saving the world? Are they interested?
- Are their feelings towards nature in cities influenced by whether they grew up in nature or an urban city environment?

These are big questions behind a small project but they were sparking the biophilic design social movement so considered essential.

Environmental monitoring goals

Having researched what had been monitored in other green wall trials such as Hort Park in Singapore, the decision was made to monitor the following parameters:

- Water usage
- Temperatures in canopy
- Temperatures behind wall
- Temperatures on nearby blank control wall
- Temperatures 15 cm out from canopy

Eighteen temperature-only data loggers and six temperature and humidity data loggers were installed. Water meters at Site A would measure water in and water out, so evapotranspiration rates could be extrapolated. Plant growth rates would be regularly visually assessed to determine which species are thriving. The City of Fremantle would maintain and manage the environmental monitoring plus undertake the analysis at the conclusion of the project.

4.3.6 Installation and opening event

The installing of the green walls 03/04/13

The day of installation was very exciting. It carried the sense of a project coming to fruition. The green walls were planted with species chosen for their resilience in hot dry conditions, comprising a combination of local plant species and exotics. Both sites utilise fertigation methods to provide nutrients and have a monitored watering system.

Figure 4.3 Installing the wall

(Source Author)

It was a long process to get them mounted on the wall and hooked up to the watering system. I visited the site at various times throughout the day to see how it was going and speak with the installers. By the middle of the day the installers

reported that many people had viewed the walls, with about 15-20 people stopping to inquire further. They said “there was definitely significant interest”. When asked what type of feedback they had received the answer was “If they weren’t drunk it was positive!” This comment was indicative of the social issues that the area can experience. While I was there an elderly man stopped to talk. He was willing to complete a survey and so was the first to do so. Shortly afterwards some young women stopped and spent quite some time there looking at the green walls, inquiring how they were done and wishing they could have one in their own houses. Both were happy to complete a survey. These were the first public responses to the installed green walls and the interest was encouraging.

Figure 4.4 Initial public interest

(Source Author)

The Official Opening 12/04/13

A crowd of nearly 50 turned out to celebrate the installation of the two trial green walls in Fremantle. This was surprising considering that it was 9 am in the morning, the only time convenient for the VIP attendees. A welcome to country by a Noongar elder offered the support and good wishes of the traditional owners. The Fremantle Mayor, Brad Pettitt, briefly outlined the 18 month process of collaboration between the City of Fremantle and CUSP that resulted in the installation.

Figure 4.5 The opening day crowd

(Source Author)

The location of the opening was by one of the green walls in Westgate Mall. It is on a bleak wall in a little-used urban mall and much of the feedback from the attendees was extremely positive, with many recognising the social benefits that greenery can bring to otherwise underused places. The feel amongst the crowd was one of inspiration, with talk of creating similar projects and many people wanting bigger and more of this type of living wall installation.

CUSP director Peter Newman introduced the online survey developed to research the social response to the green walls and most attendees completed the survey at the event.

Figure 4.6 Signage with QR code

(Source Author)

The day after the opening a Federal member of parliament launched an initiative at the mall site. He spoke highly of the green walls, inviting me also to speak. Already the site was attracting more people. This was to be the trend.

4.3.7 The response

As the project grew so did community awareness of the trial. With the installation and launching of the online survey, the interest rapidly increased. Our institute had an online blog with an article on the project, the survey and my email address. Regular emails were received from interested people. The queries ranged: how do I build a green wall or green roof? What are the regulations regarding them? Did I want to build a demonstration one on their roof? Who should they contact to get one built? What species should they plant at home? Did I need help?

Queries also came from media, with requests for interviews or information. There were articles in the local Fremantle newspaper about the project, plus a small one in the *The West Australian.* Discussions regarding the Freo Greenskins project were appearing in on-line blogs. The Biophilic Cities website posted an article about the project. They invited me to write a blog for their website and this was posted also. A short piece on the project will be included in two forthcoming books: one on resilient cities and another on sustainable development goals. A popular and well-respected Saturday morning radio show on gardening requested a live interview about the green wall trials (Lush & Hahn, 2013). 202020, a national network of organisations campaigning for increased urban green (20% more by 2020), invited the Fremantle Greenskins project to be included (202020, 2014).

A significant request came from Curtin University. Twice a year they publish their 'flagship' magazine with two featured research projects being undertaken at the university. The Fremantle Greenskins project was chosen to be featured. This entailed photographs and an interview. The Curtin University website also showcased the project on their homepage for a week and posted the story in their news and events (Daniel, 2012). When asked why the interest in this particular project, the answer was because it was perceived that "there is a lot of community interest in green walls and green roofs at the moment" (Daniel, personal communication, 2013).

In 2013, shortly after the Fremantle Greenskins opening, a representative from the Australian Federal government Major Cities Unit in the Department of Infrastructure

and Transport approached me for an article on the project to be included in the 2013 report *State of Australian cities.* This signified that the interest was national and government was considering that biophilic design and urban greening was growing within our cities. The foreword to the report by the Deputy Prime Minister indicates this:

> Like the three that have come before it, this year's State of Australian Cities report provides not just a snapshot of our 18 major cities, but a rich picture of their changing patterns and the effect that these changes have on the lives of the three out of every four Australians that live within them. Also this year, each chapter includes case studies which offer the reader insight into how universities, agencies, governments and individuals are helping us manage the myriad of challenges we face every day in our urban areas.
>
> (Albanese, 2013)

The amount and calibre of media, community and industry interest in some quite small green walls in Fremantle strongly indicated that the green walls were triggering something significant within our society. The social survey attached to the trial could provide an indicator of what that 'something' may be.

Although the green walls were (and still remain) situated in an area that can attract social problems, the walls have never been vandalised. The water monitoring system that is situated a few metres away did get tampered with, which negated our water use assessment. Small events have been held in the area. The area also attracted a graffiti artist that significantly improved the area (see Figure 4.7).

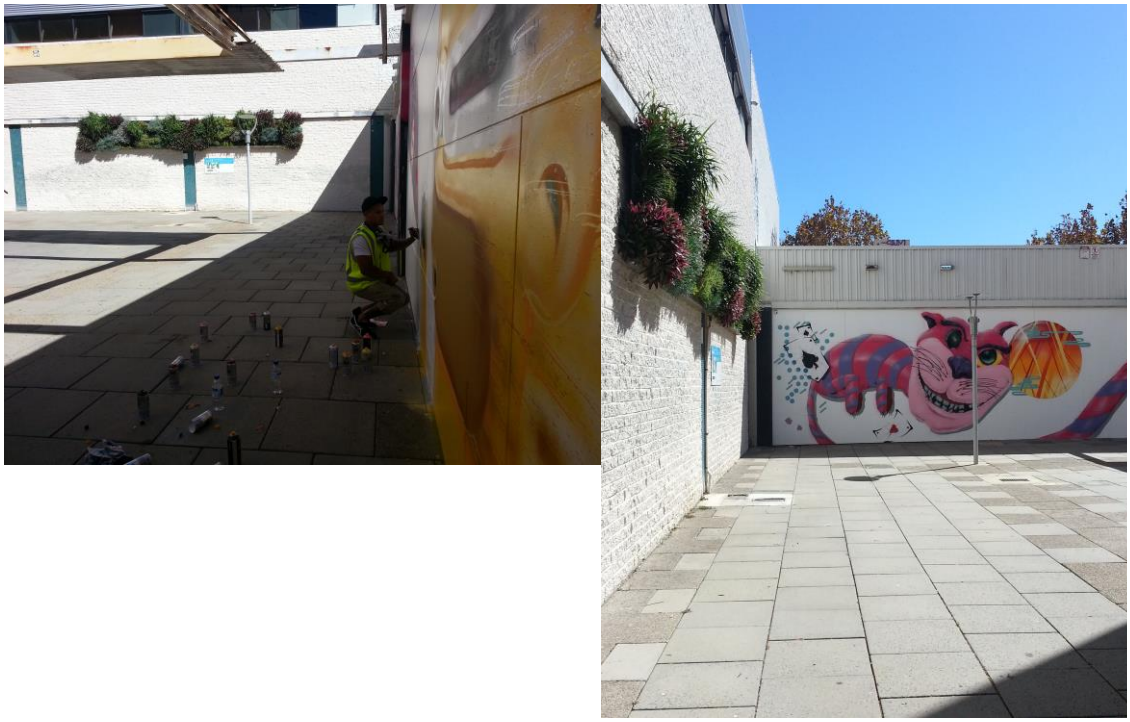


Figure 4.7 Activity in the area

(Source Author)

4.3.8 The social survey results

The response to the walls from the community and media had been very positive, but biased as it obviously was limited to people who were already interested enough to make contact. The survey would reveal whether similar attitudes were widespread in the greater community. There would still be a bias as the responses were only from those who cared or who were interested enough to take the time to complete the survey.

Survey respondents

Over a two year period from April 2013 to April 2015, survey responses were received from 83 people, though not all respondents chose to answer all questions. Of those who responded, 61 (74%) had actually seen the walls, while the remaining 22 people (27%) had not. People who had not seen the walls were not required to answer specific questions about the Fremantle Greenskins walls, and asked only to respond to more general questions about green walls and connection to nature.

The sample size (n=>83) is not sufficient for inferential statistical analysis. The responses collected were sufficient to generate descriptive outcomes, though in most cases the sample size within demographic categories was too small to enable identification of significant difference. Even so, the data is useful in giving an indication of community response to green walls. In terms of age and gender, this sample could be considered generally representative of the adult public living in Fremantle.

Slightly more than half of respondents were female (56%) and slightly less than half were aged between 25 to 44 years (46%). Approximately half of all respondents reported living in Fremantle or surrounding suburbs.

The majority of people grew up in a city (60%) or in both city and country (26%). A combined majority of respondents reported spending as much time as possible in nature (32%) or regularly spending time in nature (50%) as a child (total of 82%).

Table 4.1 Demographic profile and time spent in nature

	n	%
GENDER		
Female	**43**	***56***
Male	34	*44*
Total	77	*100*
AGE		
Under 18 years	2	*3*
18 to 24	9	*11*
25 to 34	**20**	***25***
35 to 44	**16**	***20***
45 to 54	14	*18*
55 to 64	10	*13*

65 to 74	7	*9*
75 or older	1	*1*
Total	79	*100*
WHERE DID YOU GROW UP?		
City	**48**	***60***
Country	12	*15*
Both city and country	21	*26*
Total	81	*100*
AS A CHILD, DID YOU SPEND TIME IN NATURE?		
Yes, as often as possible	**26**	***32***
Yes, quite regularly	**40**	***50***
Yes, but not often	12	*15*
Yes, but rarely	1	*1*
No	2	*2*
Total	81	*100*

Responses to survey questions

The survey consisted of 31 questions, including the demographic questions shown in Table 4.1, with several questions where respondents were asked to provide comment or a word to describe their response to the green walls. Written responses were analysed using thematic classification (Bryman, 2008).

Two main question formats were used. One employed the semantic differential which utilises a scale where people are asked to place their responses between two polar adjectives, or extremes such as useful to useless. The other format used a Likert scale where people were asked to agree or disagree with a series of statements (Bryman, 2008).

Questions and responses were grouped into several themes to simplify analysis:

- Urban design and function
- Aesthetic (visual) response
- Affective (emotional) response
- Nature in the city
- Connection to nature
- Time spent in nature

Responses to each of the survey themes are explored, with qualitative analysis of comments provided to round out the discussion.

Table 4.2 Urban design & function

The Fremantle green walls are ...	**Useful**				**Useless**	
	60%	**30%**	**7%**	**2%**	**2%**	
	35	*17*	*4*	*1*	*1*	*58*
	Strongly agree	***Agree***	***Disagree***	***Strongly disagree***	***Don't know***	
Green walls can help make a city more attractive and liveable.	**86%**	**14%**	**0.00%**	**1%**	**0.00%**	
	65	*10*	*0*	*1*	*0*	*76*
Green walls should be a standard part of urban design and architecture practice.	**74%**	**20%**	**5%**	**1%**	**0.0%**	
	56	*15*	*4*	*1*	*0*	*76*
Green walls could help reduce heat reflected off streets and buildings.	**63%**	**29%**	**1%**	**0.0%**	**7%**	
	48	*22*	*1*	*0*	*5*	*76*
Should the City of Fremantle make provision in their budget for the construction of green walls?	**Yes**	**No**				
	95	**5**				
	71	*4*				*75*

There is a strong positive response to all questions. The majority of respondents indicated they thought green walls were useful, and make a city more attractive and liveable, and help to reduce heat. An overwhelming majority of people (95%) responded positively to the suggestion that City of Fremantle should provide funds to construct more green walls.

Comments included:

> More need to be implemented, as they assist in removal of air pollution, which will be increasing with climate change. They also make the area look great.
>
> It's a great idea that deserves to be expanded throughout urban areas and residential developments should be encouraged to follow suit.
>
> As an early intervention they are most useful in the green deserts of the CBD to inspire us to do more as a community.
>
> More green walls will introduce the concept of reducing heat island effect into the future to deal with a warming city and a greater diversity of indigenous plants may well entice indigenous birds back into the city.

In response to the question about future investment by the City of Fremantle, most comments were positive:

> Global warming and the psychological benefits … make green walls an essential for budgets.
>
> Absolutely! Especially in spaces like this mall which is unused and sad to see in a beautiful place like Fremantle.
>
> I see this as a positive point of difference that will bring revenue to the city, along with all the benefits already discussed in this survey.
>
> Should be part of the built fabric in all future projects and all existing buildings should include green walls and roofs.

Some respondents indicated they would support more walls as long as they were bigger, and in more public places:

> But only if the size of the walls is significant enough to show benefits to people and the environment.
>
> As long as they're in a prominent position and are of a decent size. Like 10 times the current experiment.

Others queried who should pay:

> The question in my mind is [whether] this is a City of Freo expense or property owners.
>
> In general I believe the property owner or occupier who benefits from their installation should provide funding. So when I say yes, I mean yes for Council owned buildings or encouragement/incentives for owners to install.
>
> And local businesses that have the space should be encouraged to have them.

One respondent saw investment in green walls as a means to contribute to environmental and social amenity:

> I think there is merit in a contribution scheme to encourage owner installation. This could be through direct contributions, council commitment to maintenance or even providing information on installers. Also could be an interesting project by combining amenity benefits of living walls and food production for homeless/less fortunate as some kind of social scheme. I noticed the one that was outside the Council building in Kings Square installed by Sustainable Outdoors had some vegetables.

And some respondents felt planting trees would be a better initiative while another wanted to know why green walls might be better than planting trees:

> No they should find any clear space on the verge and plant a combination of native and (fast-growing) non-native species. They should also encourage people (if they don't already) to plant native plants (small bushes etc.) on the council verge.
>
> Given the tiny amount of carbon sequestration from a green wall people shouldn't bother – large, shady trees do a much better job of reducing the heat load in a city – green walls would use a huge amount of water during the summer (watered at least once a day).
>
> Spell out the basics to Joe and Mary citizen – why do it? How is it better than just planting another tree? (i.e. to those of us who know nothing about green walls except that they look pretty, address the so what question – in language that we understand.

Table 4.3 Aesthetic (visual) response to the green walls

The Fremantle green walls ...	**Enhance the area**				**Detract from the area**	
	83%	**12%**	**5%**	**0.0%**	**0.0%**	
	47	*7*	*3*	*0*	*0*	*57*
The Fremantle green walls are ...	**Beautiful**				**Ugly**	
	63%	**30%**	**4%**	**3%**	**0.0%**	
	36	*17*	*2*	*2*	*0*	*57*

Survey results indicate that most people (83%) strongly agreed that the walls enhanced the areas they were located. There was positive response regarding their beauty – most people agreed (30%) or strongly agreed (63%) that the walls were beautiful.

One respondent commented:

> City of Fremantle should construct more green walls. The location for this one (Westgate Mall) is unexpected! But it enhances the aesthetics of this dilapidated mall, and creates an area of interest.

Many other comments described the walls as attractive and a welcome alternative to blank walls. Comments included:

> It's nice to have greenery climbing the wall and brighten an otherwise dull area.
>
> Changes for bleak, blank walls
>
> Always lovely to come across … and so beautiful at present. Amazed at how healthy the wall garden is.

This last comment was received in August 2014 at the end of winter. A more recent comment regarding how the wall looked during summer was not as complimentary:

> The one I saw (opposite Coles) was so high it was only by chance that I looked up and noticed it. That was January 2015 and given the relatively long hot summer it was looking pretty shabby – plus it covered such a small

area as to not make an impact. Nice idea, but the climate is clearly not suited.

Table 4.4 Affective (emotional) response to the green walls

The Fremantle green walls are ...	**Desirable**				**Worthless**	
	80%	**10%**	**7%**	**2%**	**1%**	
	46	*6*	*4*	*1*	*1*	*58*
When I look at the walls, I feel ...	**Inspired**				**Indifferent**	
	63%	**22%**	**10%**	**0.0%**	**5%**	
	36	*13*	*6*	*0*	*3*	*58*
The Fremantle green walls are ...	**Wonderful**				**Pointless**	
	62%	**28%**	**9%**	**0.0%**	**1%**	
	36	*16*	*5*	*0*	*1*	*58*

Survey results indicate that most people felt inspiration (63%) and wonder (62%) when looking at the walls. A small proportion of respondents reported feeling indifferent (5%).

Feelings of inspiration and wonder, and observations that the walls positively affected how people felt, were reflected in several comments:

> Let's do more for Fremantle. Surprising finds like these are great for the public and inspiring for people in the field of architecture/urban design.
>
> They actually helped me to stop, pause, and reflect mindfully while on my way to an appointment. Thank you.
>
> Really can lift the energy of a dead space.
>
> Should be more of it! Love them.
>
> We need more projects like this throughout Fremantle. I stumbled across this project today as I walked through Fremantle and was very excited to see something like this popping up in an unexpected place.

Less positive comments tended to focus on the small size of the walls and their subsequent lack of impact, or lack of maintenance.

> The green walls are a great addition to the areas but they are relatively small.
>
> A small step in the right direction. Size reduces the potential impact. The glare from Westgate Mall wall, makes it unpleasant to look for long, and the Mall is very underused due to the risks from vagrant community. Cantonment is a bit lost in the shade of the building. I'd like to see WA native plantings and how they survive …
>
> It's a great concept but I'm not sure that these walls are big enough to achieve their potential benefits to both people and the environment.
>
> This trial is too small in area. I reckon it needs to be higher and taller. Good to see the species have been changed to better survive in WA's harsh climate. It was looking quite shabby. If this project is the experiment, where is a good sized green wall going to appear? Keep up the good work.
>
> The negativity of my [survey responses] is reflected in the lack of maintenance of these otherwise wonderful projects. Someone desperately needs to either apply water to the one behind Target, or something to protect the plants from Western Australia`s harsh sunlight.

Table 4.5 Nature in the city

I would like to see greater biodiversity in cities.	**78%** *59*	**21%** *16*	**0.0%** *0*	**1%** *1*	**0.0%** *0*	*76*
Green walls can help preserve nature.	**54%** *40*	**38%** *28*	**1%** *1*	**2%** *2*	**5%** *4*	*75*

Almost all respondents agreed that they wanted to see more biodiversity in cities and that green walls helped preserve nature. Several people commented on the importance of nature in the city and future sustainability:

> Contact with nature is important and it's getting increasingly harder to achieve with our population more urbanised.

> I am concerned for the future of suburbs and cities as more and more urban bushland is cleared for developments ... I am all for preservation of natural environments and for time spent in outdoor natural environments.
>
> Incorporating green walls in Fremantle is another way Fremantle is being recognized as being focused on sustainable outcomes. I think it makes the area a more appealing and welcoming place to be. Hopefully this project will set an example for the rest of Perth, so in the future the city as a whole can be a greener more sustainable city.

Even so, a small proportion of respondents disagreed (4%) or did not know (5%) whether green walls helped to preserve nature. Some comments also questioned the sustainability of the green walls:

> Still feels like a nature Band-Aid.
>
> I dunno if filling a wall with potting mix from a factory is really the most productive way to live sustainably.

Table 4.6 Connection to nature

	Strongly agree	*Agree*	*Disagree*	*Strongly disagree*	*Don't know*	
I enjoy the beauty of nature.	**83%**	**16%**	**0%**	**1%**	**0%**	
	62	*12*	*0*	*1*	*0*	*75*
Being out in nature is a great stress reducer for me.	**79%**	**20%**	**1%**	**0%**	**0%**	
	58	*15*	*1*	*0*	*0*	*74*
It makes [a] ~~no~~ difference whether I see nature on a daily basis or not.	**64%**	**24%**	**5%**	**7%**	**0%**	
	48	*18*	*4*	*5*	*0*	*75*
I need time in nature to be happy.	**55%**	**36%**	**5%**	**1%**	**3%**	
	41	*27*	*4*	*1*	*2*	*75*

It was obvious from the responses that most people enjoy the beauty of nature. Only one respondent disagreed.

It was also apparent that most respondents agreed that being out in nature assisted to reduce stress. Similarly, most respondents agreed that seeing and spending time in nature was important to how they felt during the day and their state of happiness. One respondent commented:

> Nature can provide cognitive benefits. I find it helpful to restore focus.

One respondent commented on their personal experience:

> I agree with having these surprising elements of discovery and places to visit throughout your day and year!! They mark time. I used to visit certain plants in spare blocks throughout the year as a kid … You make friends with plants!!

Table 4.7 Time spent in nature

	Strongly agree	*Agree*	*Disagree*	*Strongly disagree*	*Don't know*	
I enjoy spending time in my garden.	**53%**	**40%**	**6%**	**1%**	**0.0%**	
	39	*29*	*5*	*1*	*0*	*74*
I enjoy spending time in nature (going bushwalking or camping) just for the sake of it.	**51%**	**43%**	**5%**	**1%**	**0.0%**	
	38	*32*	*4*	*1*	*0*	*75*
I would plan my walking or cycling route to use streets with green walls.	**42%**	**45%**	**4%**	**3%**	**6%**	
	32	*34*	*3*	*2*	*5*	*76*
I seek out nature in cities wherever I can.	**41%**	**43%**	**12%**	**3%**	**1%**	
	30	*32*	*9*	*2*	*1*	*74*
I visit local parks as often as I can.	**33%**	**44%**	**16%**	**3%**	**4%**	
	25	*33*	*12*	*2*	*3*	*75*

Most people responded positively to spending time in nature, either in their gardens or enjoying outdoor activities, or seeking out nature experiences in the city. One comment about spending time in nature as a child highlighted the potential benefits received.

> I grew up when and where bush was all around the suburbs ... and swamps and back lanes. It's hard to describe what that kind of freedom gives one .. It's a very different internal works that sustains you throughout your life and is why I think of the importance of these projects for future health if human mind body and spirit.

However, this question theme generated the greatest proportion of disagreement. Not all respondents agreed that they enjoyed spending time in their garden (7% disagreed) or in nature (6% disagreed). Similarly, a small proportion disagreed they would actively spend time in nature by planning walking or cycling routes with green walls (7% disagreed and 6% did not know), seeking out nature in the city (15% disagreed and 1% did not know) or visit local parks (19% disagreed and 4% did not know).

Nature connection and response to green walls

How responses to questions about nature influenced overall responses needs to be considered. If respondents were less connected to nature, or did not enjoy spending time outdoors, would they respond as positively to the green walls? Were they more likely to be indifferent?

Recreating green walls

From several comments, it was clear that the walls inspired people to think about creating something similar in their own homes.

> An inspiring initiative. I would like to know more about them, in terms of trialling in my own garden and property, in order for more exposure for the concept in a domestic setting.

> I think the green walls are amazing – both the one outside the Fremantle library and the ones on the walls opposite the Woolstores shopping centre. I was inspired by these living visions of green and would like to recreate these at my own house if that is possible. I would love to have the know-how to recreate these at home. More please!! When I first saw them I was stopped in my tracks to look at them and see how they work, what are they made from, how are they watered, etc... They are great!

The plants are thriving and look so healthy and this is April 2015. Would you please provide on your website a list of the plants used in the Fremantle green walls. As I live in the Fremantle area I feel inspired. Could we have some more green walls in Fremantle please? There are many bleak areas in Freo full of hard surfaces without a bit of nature in sight.

Perhaps [City of Fremantle] could make some of their money back by running affordable classes in how to construct green walls for people's homes?

Provide the instructions please put up on the Freo city website.

The one word

Figure 4.8 The one word

(Source Author)

Respondents were asked for one word to describe their feelings when they viewed the green wall. These were then aggregated into a word cloud as in Figure 4.8. ‘Inspiring’, as the most frequently used word, was possibly influenced by the use of the word in the survey. Many people thought the wall too small, maybe not understanding that it was just a trial. The words were positive, reflecting the overall positive public response to the survey.

Survey conclusions

There was a strong positive response to the function and design benefits which green walls can contribute to a city. This reflected the perception that green walls can enhance the liveability of a city through both their attractiveness and social and environmental amenity. Almost all responses wanted greater biodiversity in cities and thought that green walls could contribute towards this and preserving nature.

Most respondents appreciated the beauty of the walls and the ability of the green wall to make an area more attractive. The enjoyment of the beauty of nature was strongly agreed to, receiving a slightly higher positive response than the recognition that time in nature reduced stress or increasing happiness. These factors, though, were all considered important. To most people daily contact with nature was important to their sense of wellbeing. The green walls predominantly elicited a positive emotional response with feelings of wonder and inspiration.

Although the survey sample size and statistical reliability was not sufficient for inferential statistical analysis, it did provide enough for a qualitative descriptive analysis. In this context, there is a reflection of awareness of both social and environmental benefits of green walls and nature as presented in the literature.

Figure 4.9 The north wall Site A towards the conclusion of the trial

(Source Author)

4.3.9 The Conclusion of the trial

The trial went longer than first anticipated. Problems associated with the data loggers delayed the collection of the environmental data. At the time of writing this data is with a statistician employed by the City of Fremantle to analyse the results, however the social survey data is unequivocal.

It was initially agreed between the key players and the building's owners that the walls would be installed for a year. Three years later they are still in place and thriving, bringing beauty and life to otherwise barren areas. Possibly this is why they haven't been taken down as initially planned. In this regard they are a success. Socially, as shown in the survey, they are appreciated and receive good response. Vandalism hasn't been a problem. Insects are attracted to them and the spring flowers attract the bees.

Figure 4.10 Springtime and dragonflies

(Source Author)

4.3.10 The interviews

These interviews were conducted after the global interviews in the subsequent chapter, utilising the same methodology and framework as outlined in section 2.5.6 and the introduction to Chapter 5. They are about the Fremantle demonstrations but are part of the global social movement of biophilic design.

Julian Rose 07/05/2014

Director Deep Green Landscaping

Player	Arena	Strategy	Word	Connection to nature
Julian Rose	Industry	Implementation		

Rose is the director of the landscaping company who was successful in gaining the tender for the Fremantle green walls. In the lead-up to the installation of the green walls he met with the steering committee a number of times plus we had field trips to view his other constructions.

We met for an interview where Rose outlined the history of his business and the barriers he had encountered. He had been keen to build green roofs and green walls in Perth for some time and it had been slow, but consistent progress. Rose had been frustrated by some of the attitudes and lack of understanding that he encountered, but steadily persevered, meanwhile educating himself by attending conferences and researching.

At the time of the interview his landscaping company, Deep Green, was working on the new hospital being built in Perth. The company had installed some green podiums and been involved with the building's landscaping. Rose was requested to cover a roof with blue metal, a common practice in building, but suggested putting a green roof there instead, as this roof has high visibility from surrounding buildings including future wards. From his research Rose was aware that the benefits to patient recovery could be significant. The developers, Brookfield-Multiplex were in

agreement, but the client, the Western Australian state government, was not prepared to pay the extra to have a green roof installed. Rose made the decision to pay the difference himself as he believed in “the multiple and significant benefits a green roof could make here”.

Rose had initially been approaching developers in an effort to motivate them to include green walls and roofs in their constructions but had met with resistance, primarily because of the lack of precedence and justification for the costs involved. He then decided to approach local councils as he was aware that in many other countries these initiatives had been mandated and possibly the local government approach was the way to proceed: “In Germany there is a tax on storm water runoff which green roofs can help alleviate.”

Approaching the councils had brought some success with some council funded projects. Currently Deep Green is working with Belmont and Bayswater councils. When they had approached Subiaco council they had discovered that they were already interested and investigating the possibility of incorporating biophilic features within their districts. Deep Green was commissioned to build a green wall outside the Subiaco library. This has been very successful.

Figure 4.11 Subiaco library green wall

(Source Author)

When asked about the barriers he had encountered, Rose listed them:

- There are higher initial outlay costs and little understanding of the long term benefits.
- Also Perth still lacks local precedence and knowledge about green walls and green roofs.
- Developers are unwilling to take the risk, or what they perceive as risk.
- We also have the extra constraint of water conservation in Perth.

Rose did not think any of these barriers were insurmountable. It was just time and perseverance. He thinks that a point will be reached when it "finally catches on".

In a further conversation held in late 2014 regarding Fiona Stanley Hospital, Rose revealed that no green roofs went ahead on the hospital due to the roofing supplier refusing to honour his roof warranty if a green roof was installed on top.

****

I admired Julian's tenacity and faith that the market for biophilic design elements would eventually develop through education and demonstrations showing that it could work in a climate such as Perth. The barriers he was encountering were the same ones that I was experiencing in my immersive journey. There was interest, yet a reluctance to spend the money and take the risk, especially when there was little precedence. Water issues are a very real concern in Perth and I was finding this was presenting as significant.

Table 4.8 Julian Rose

	Motivators and Drivers		
Stages of social movement	**Environmental**	**Social** (including emotional)	**Economic**
Emergence		Makes sense Multiple benefits	
Coalescence			Client interest
Any Identified Barriers	Water constraints	Lack of precedence and knowledge	Resistance to long term cost/benefit, unwilling to take risk

Brad Pettitt 21/07/2014

City of Fremantle Mayor

Player	Arena	Strategy	Word	Connection to nature
Brad Pettitt	Government	Policies and plans	Peaceful	Urban nature, young

I met with Mayor Pettitt in July 2014 to discuss not just the Greenskins project but also the motivation behind the many other greening initiatives that were taking place within Fremantle, especially since the place-making workshop with David Engwicht in 2011. As with the Greenskins project I was aware that Pettitt, with his team, had been responsible for 'driving' these.

When asked why he had been so active and committed to the increase of biophilic initiatives within the City of Fremantle Pettitt responded:

> "I do think the future of cities is one where we are going to have real greenery such as green walls and green roofs contributing in terms of aesthetics, in terms of biodiversity and in terms of cooling microclimates plus the other sustainability benefits. But why I liked the Greenskins project was it was interesting in how we do this in a hot, dry place like WA, so I am hoping that this research contributes to making this possible. It is very different here to other places such as Singapore where research has been carried out. So this was the motivation, to demonstrate that we could do it and the lessons that are learnt."

Pettitt explained how the City of Fremantle has a Green Strategic Plan and a One Planet Living Strategy with a focus on creating a liveable, sustainable city. They are committed to planting one thousand trees a year in their greening policy. "Liveable

cities are green cities." I asked him what his definition of liveable cites was and he gave me the following definition:

> "Liveability of city centres is concerned with the quality of public spaces and the built environment. Liveable cities are ones in which people want to live, visit, spend time and linger – just like a nice room of a house.
>
> More formally, the concept of liveability has been linked to a range of factors, for example, quality of life, health, sense of safety, access to services, cost of living, comfortable living standards, mobility and transport, air quality and social participation."

Pettitt explains that it is easier greening from the ground up, implementing 'the low hanging fruit' with pop ups and street pot plants. The walls are the hardest bit. He wants to work out what is viable to grow vertically and which species work or don't work. Pettitt finds people respond to the greenery, but to him this is about creating cooler, nicer, more liveable places. "People seek cooler, shadier places. People are very interested by the greenery and want it replicated on a bigger scale. It generates a lot of interest. It's happening all over the world so how can we do it in Fremantle?"

I asked him whether he thought that green roofs, green walls and other biophilic initiatives could be incorporated into policy, but Pettitt thinks we are a fair way from mandating any policy. Possibly green roofs could be mandated in larger scale developments. Pettitt suggests that where there has been policy implementation significant water management problems have driven this. I pointed out that in some places, such as Chicago, it has been a heat response.

This led to a discussion of what he perceived were barriers to implementation. "Barriers would be the cost, water use, maintenance, and that the fact that it's not yet mainstream so it's still being worked out." While his staff accept it and think that this is a good idea there is an awareness of the high cost and ongoing maintenance issues of green walls particularly.

Pettitt is waiting on the results from the Greenskins trial to ascertain whether things would progress further in this direction. These results are needed to determine whether green wall initiatives provide, as he says, the 'best bang for your bucks'. At the moment street trees and small park pop ups are more mainstream, accepted and an expected part of a liveable city.

Table 4.9 Brad Pettitt

	Motivators and Drivers		
Stages of social movement	**Environmental**	**Social** (including emotional)	**Economic**
Emergence	Greenery cools	Demonstration, liveability, aesthetics	
Coalescence	Successful trials	Social response	
Any Identified Barriers	Water use	Lack of precedence and knowledge	Upfront costs, maintenance costs

4.4 Other players and projects

Aside from media and community, inquiries were also received from industry. Two major development companies were amongst these.

4.4.1 Leighton Industries

Leighton Industries, a commercial developer, was interested in installing a green roof on a commercial office building in the centre of Perth. The motivation for this was to help achieve a Green Star rating for the building. It was explained that to achieve the rating it needed to be xerophilic and that the roof needed to be able to survive.

A meeting was arranged between Leighton Industries management, CUSP director Peter Newman, myself and an industry expert whom we had invited to attend. We presented different options which involved vertical greening as well as a green roof. Irrigation was possible through an integrated watering system that involved recycled water, and was an area in which the industry expert was proficient. There was definite interest.

Over the next few months emails were exchanged regarding the possible collaboration on the project. There was a continual emphasis on the necessity of the

green roof being successful, in that it did not have plants die, and of the cost and benefit relationship being economically viable. A proposal was submitted to Leighton Industries outlining the design ideas and the costings. Also requested was information on the economics, which was considered necessary to sell the concept to the owners of the building. The economics were included based largely on the timely publication *The economics of biophilia* (Browning et al., 2012). The ideas were well received but the economic case was perceived as identifying the economic advantages for the tenants of the building and not the owners. We were asked to prepare another document highlighting the advantages of a biophilic building for the owners.

The list included the following:

- The building would be iconic, setting the precedent and benchmark for other development in Perth.
- This would contribute towards global sustainability and climate change mitigation. It will be adopting a “wholistic, corporate approach”.
- People, both tourists and corporate, will be attracted to the building.
- Value uplift in the building will follow as clear productivity and health benefits for tenants and users will occur.
- Using best practice/best design principles will take a building from “good to great”, attracting significant prestige.
- It would ‘future proof’ the building for quality and value.
- It will attract premium tenants with quality tenant amenities.
- Premium rentals can be charged as there are good returns for tenants.

The collaborative project never proceeded. It was explained that “it was too new and unknown and the investors were not willing to take the risk where the returns had not been proven in the local environment”. The building went ahead and has none of the obvious benefits mentioned above. There is some regret from the architect.

4.4.2 Brookfield-Multiplex

In 2012, Brookfield-Multiplex, a large development company, made contact in response to an email I had sent to them requesting information on their work with constructing Fiona Stanley Hospital. They were interested in extending their knowledge and research in the area of biophilic design. Coinciding with this contact was a submission for an Australian Research Council (ARC) linkage grant in the area of biophilic design research being compiled by my institute. I saw the possibility of them coming in as an industry partner so raised this idea and it joined the agenda for an extended teleconference with Brookfield-Multiplex. Four of us met, CUSP's director, Brookfield-Multiplex's sustainability manager, Brookfield-Multiplex's managing director and myself. It was a very positive meeting and within twenty-four hours we had confirmation that they would be very keen to come in as an industry partner with the ARC grant.

The three points below describe what they were interested in pursuing in the field of biophilia and what they were prepared to offer to progress the research.

1. Capacity building and access to unique industry knowledge and experience – Research teams will be able to work with BM new business development teams as well as site teams to build a better understanding around what biophilia means in terms of design and construction as well as the benefits associated with it. In collaboration, the team will seek to identify new business opportunities that could be enriched by the integration of biophilia into design and operation. Time of senior executives in providing guidance to the research team around the issues and hurdles industry faces with the integration of biophilia.

2. Peer review of research findings – Brookfield-Multiplex and identified research teams will outline key projects which they collectively believe can add to the evidence base of biophilia. Current project opportunities include:

    a. Biophilic impact on construction sites – Fiona Stanley Hospital research around biophilic elements in construction sites. Research around exploring whether landscaping done first instead of last (as in the case where vegetation was required to be untouched due to endangered animal species on site), has an impact on the health and productivity of the construction teams working on-site during the construction and development phases of buildings.

    b. Biophilic impact on site sheds/offices – Research around opportunities

to integrate biophilic elements on our site sheds and offices and what benefits they deliver. Research teams would conduct site visits on BM site offices and head offices, identify biophilic opportunities for our site offices and will be allowed to undertake pre and post testing on our staff to assess whether any productivity or health benefits were achieved.

c. Biophilic impact on existing buildings – Brookfield Multiplex would identify projects where research teams could measure benefits of biophilic elements, such as roof gardens/agriculture/green walls/water features/increased views to nature/the integration of natural elements into space. Purpose of research would explore how these benefits compare to the cost of designing, constructing and maintaining these spaces?

d. Biophilic impact on future buildings – Brookfield Multiplex would identify new project opportunities where researchers could review design and brief in order to identify opportunities, benefits and costs for biophilic integration which would go into bid documents.

3. Use of venues for and participation in industry workshops. We are very keen to maximise the project outcomes by working side-by-side with researchers.

Brookfield-Multiplex identified their particular interest in the greening of construction sites and site offices and the potential impact this could have on the health and productivity of their construction workers. They also offered the opportunity of researching biophilic features in existing and future buildings. There appeared definite interest, willingness and commitment to biophilic design as part of Brookfield-Multiplex's sustainability ideals.

We applied for the grant and waited for the result. During this period there were continuing discussions regarding a particular case study which Brookfield-Multiplex thought we may be interested in and again a meeting was organised to discuss this.

Construction guidelines for the Fiona Stanley Hospital had included conservation of a nearby wetland and Brookfield-Multiplex saw that workers were drawn to the area for their breaks. Site managers had noticed that there was discussion and increased collaboration between the workers when they sat by the wetlands. Observation of the phenomenon had provoked thoughts and questions about the possibility that this led to better health, and greater productivity, collaboration and cohesion and less stress. The literature research showed that similar outcomes have been

observed in studies. They were keen to take this further with the ‘greening’ of site offices on two trial construction sites. Research could then be conducted with tangible results that potentially justified site office greening as a standard practice for all future construction sites. Brookfield-Multiplex’s motivation and desired outcome was to improve workers’ health and productivity, but the business case needed to be made.

Considerable time was spent designing possibilities and calling for tenders from the major landscaping companies who also constructed green walls and roofs. The project came to a halt due to the lack of previous supporting research to provide a base line from which to start. The ARC grant was also close but unsuccessful.

4.4.3 The prison project

This project is presented in greater detail than the previous two as it represents a period of deeper insight which I experienced after reading *The heart of man* by Fromm (1964). Coincidental with this reading was the introduction of the prison project and the two fitted together beautifully.

In early 2013, my director and a university colleague exchanged emails which led to a new and exciting avenue of possibilities for the application of biophilic design initiatives. The colleague was developing a sustainability program for prisons.

With Fromm’s theories of the regressive and progressive pathways of life, I thought about how prison buildings are extremely bleak and sterile, which does not encourage a biophilic love of life or a progressive outlook. Rather, the disconnect from nature and the patterns of nature, would tend to reinforce the regressive elements of the human psyche. These may already be strong amongst prisoners. The more I reflected on this, the more obvious it seemed. Our prison design does not aid prisoner rehabilitation or restoration. I replied to the email with my ideas.

My reply was met with enthusiasm and so began an ongoing journey of meetings, conferences, prison visits and research. I wrote a paper that is currently under review for publication presenting the argument for a new approach to the way we design our prisons based on Fromm’s (1964) concept of biophilia and the ensuing biophilic design. When viewing prison design from this perspective, it becomes evident that the way we currently design our prisons does not support prisoner rehabilitation.

The concept

Increasing nature and natural elements within a prison offers the potential to de-stress residents and staff, improve mental health, improve cognitive functioning and learning, reduce recidivism and increase receptivity for behavioural change and restorative justice opportunities. Biophilic design is outlined as a set of practices that have arisen from the need to green cities, especially in dense urban areas where new technology can now enable green roofs and green walls to bring nature into daily exposure. The role of nature in restorative initiatives is traced back to the early work of innovative psychoanalyst Eric Fromm (1964). Biophilic design in prisons, building on Fromm's framework of human psychological pathways, could greatly assist in creating an environment where growth towards a more positive, progressive approach with a more altruistic, life loving state of mind, could be enabled.

The necessity

Global studies of prisoner health suggest that they experience high levels of mental illness (Fazel & Baillargeon, 2011; Fazel & Danesh, 2002; Fraser, Gatherer, & Hayton, 2009; Gunn, Maden, & Swinton, 1991; Wright, Jordan, & Kane, 2014). Mental illness is well recognised as an increasing problem within the prison system, with some research suggesting that 89% of prisoners have depressive symptoms and 74 percent have stress-related symptoms, many of which are not diagnosed until incarceration (Fraser et al., 2009; Nurse, Woodcock, & Ormsby, 2003; Ogloff, 2002). A study undertaken in five Australian prisons in 2004 revealed that nearly 50% of prisoners had a mental disorder, with post-traumatic stress disorder the most common (Butler, Allnutt, Cain, Owens, & Muller, 2005).

In a 2001 study of 23,000 prisoners in 12 countries, prisoners were found to have a two to four times higher rate of major depression and psychotic illnesses and a ten times higher rate of antisocial personality disorder than the general populace (Fazel & Danesh, 2002). Suicide rates in prisons are significant, often the most common cause of death (Fazel & Baillargeon, 2011; World Health Organisation & International Association for Suicide Prevention, 2007). The decrease of general societal mental health services is considered to play a large part in this phenomenon (Birmingham, 1999; Fazel & Baillargeon, 2011; Jordan, 2011; Ogloff, 2002: Butler et al., 2005).

Prisons tend to cause, or exacerbate, mental health problems in their residents, and many reoffend on their release, to once again re-enter the prison system (Birmingham, 1999; Butler et al., 2005; Fazel & Baillargeon, 2011; Ogloff, 2002). The psychological impact of institutionalisation, especially on admission, is under-acknowledged, with little done to address the effects or potential long term damage, for inmates or their families (Fazel & Danesh, 2002; Haney, 2003).

Although mental health in prisons is still considered an under-recognised issue, there are increasing attempts to address this spiralling problem. The primary suggestions within the literature focus on staffing and policy changes, level of assessment, placement and care changes and facility and activity changes (Fraser et al., 2009; Jordan, 2011; Picken, 2012; World Health Organisation & International Association for Suicide Prevention, 2007; Wright et al., 2014). There are isolated reports of prisons which have introduced gardening, animal husbandry and community based programmes that have been successful in aiding the less severe forms of mental illness, but little on the physical form of prisons themselves. Yet there is little doubt a prisoner's physical environment plays a highly influential role in the prisoner's health and wellbeing and thus the ability to 'rehabilitate' towards progressive life choices. The potential to utilise this physical design influence to address mental health problems such as stress and depression has received little recognition. The question I was interested in exploring was: Can Fromm's perspective on biophilia be applied to the design of prisons and assist in their de-stressing?

The design

Our cities have become places where people are encouraged to consume and to commoditise, and where many of our urban spaces are constructed with design by modernistic architecture rather than design by health, wellbeing and a love of life. When the abstract, regressive human is nourished, anxiety and stress can be nurtured.

Our urban prison designs are an extension of this kind of urban and suburban design with the potential to reinforce narcissitic, mechanistic and necrophilic tendencies that may already have been established within the prison residents' psyche. Fromm suggests that prolonged imprisonment may break a person's psychic system, allowing the archaic tendencies to surge up (Fromm 1964, p. 117). Salingaros and Masden propose that "we will instinctively react in a negative

manner to a built environment that is neurologically non-nourishing or actually causes physical anxiety and distress" (Salingaros & Masden, 2008, p. 68). An individual's surroundings are highly influential on their psychological and physiological wellbeing with the potential to reinforce either the progressive or regressive pathway (Burns, 2005; Nanda, Pati, Ghamari & Bajema, 2013; Nesse & Williams, 1995).

The prison cellblock and associated buildings are built with security and function as the criteria, creating an environment that forces the disconnect from life processes and reinforces the regressive pathway of isolation and narcissism. Historically our prisons are designed to be effective in holding prisoners captive in a punishing manner, depriving them of comforts and reinforcing the fact that they have committed an offence. Prison designs tend to be bleak, sterile and barren, with incarceration within such a setting seen as the punishment (Lopez, 2014). Deprivation of freedom is extended by deprivation of sensory stimulus and connection to place. There is little opportunity to take Fromm's progressive path, to nurture love, including the biophilic love of life. Ironically, with the majority of offenders likely to have stronger regressive tendencies, they are more in need of opportunity to foster qualities from the progressive path of life, rather than strengthening of the regressive path.

The opportunity therefore exists to change the environment to nurture not the negative but the positive responses, to enhance the physiological as well as the psychological. As much as the environment can cause negative reactions, environments can also enhance mental health and wellbeing, decreasing anxiety and stress. In the right environment our innate love of life and connectedness can be nourished and sustained. We can journey on the progressive path of biophilia.

Biophilic design focusses on strengthening the progressive pathway through greater exposure to nature and natural spaces and patterns, thus encouraging connection to, and love of, life and life processes.

Principles of biophilia applied to prison design

The ability of architectural design to influence individuals' physiological and psychological states is an extension of the biophilic connection to nature and the manifestation of Fromm's theory of biophilia. Expression of biophilia through biophilic design in architecture has occurred throughout history, not always

consciously, or acknowledged, conveying a subjectiveness which testifies to its inherent quality in humans. Nature can be, and has been, mimicked by using the patterning, forms, materials, symbols and spaces which represent nature and evoke similar responses.

Emerging in the literature on biophilic design is a growing list of these patterns and spaces considered to stimulate our innate biological responses. Although many designers are unaware of their linkage to Eric Fromm's theories, the general acceptance of a psychological link to nature has its origins in Fromm's work. Thus there are design practitioners who build detailed principles of what Fromm was attempting to explain in theory. Heerwagen and Gregory (2008) outline seven attributes, whereas Kellert (2008a) suggests there are six elements and seventy design attributes to biophilia. Ryan et al. (2014) outline fourteen patterns of biophilia. Not all of these are possible or practical to be implemented within economic and security constraints of prison design, but there is scope to incorporate biophilic design features to improve prisoners' sense of wellbeing, mental health and behaviour. Utilising biophilic design to trigger biophilic responses gives support to the possibility of strengthening the innate qualities of individuals that can aid the progressive journey of life as outlined by Fromm.

Former penologist and criminologist, Lopez I Ferrer, who is now a Senior Corrections Analyst and Planner with a US firm, recently expressed her views in a popular online blog regarding prison design. She provided a list of design inclusions that would align with concepts of rehabilitation, reintegration and "reduce stress, fear and trauma; spaces that stimulate motivation for participation in positive activities that reduce idleness and negative behaviour". Included amongst these were biophilic attributes of nature, light, fresh air and a variety of spaces and views. Lopez also suggests that a more "normal" aesthetic design could help make "good neighbours" amongst the prisoners (Lopez, 2014).

There is a large list of elements that are biophilic, but the most applicable to the prison institution are the three elements of prospect and refuge, fractal patterning and direct exposure to nature. With all elements though, aesthetics is a vital consideration. Although perceptions of aesthetics and beauty may be considered more subjective, there are commonalities that evoke innate responses (Guéguen & Stefan, 2014; Kellert, 2008b; Kupfer, 2003; Yok et al., 2009; White & Gatersleben, 2011; Wilson, 2008).

Either refuge or prospect on its own can still contribute to a sense of wellbeing but Appleton suggests the two together are the most appealing. Appleton also argues that for prospect and refuge to be most meaningful and evocative, a hazard needs to be present (Appleton, 1975, p. 96). A prisoner's cell therefore needs to feel safe and preferably have a view to evoke a sense of wellbeing. Recognition of this perception was directly expressed by a prison resident (see Box 1 below). Spaces of sanctuary and refuge can also be created within the prison confines for prisoners to retreat to or which can be also utilised for meetings with families and victims of crime. A sense of safety and wellbeing would assist the potential for successful outcomes from these meetings.

> I had the opportunity to visit a local correctional facility. During this visit I spoke with a resident who described his experience of his cell to me. Initially he had a cell with a view of the surrounding forest and where he could even see the occasional kangaroo. Recently, he was moved to a cell without a view. He recognised that he felt different in the new cell and described it as "feeling less relaxed". When he had the view he would look out and feel "happier and less stressed". He thought this had quite an impact on his overall feelings of well-being in the prison.
>
> (From my journal, October, 2014)

Fractal patterning can be included in the building fabric as well as with strategically placed artwork and offers great potential for stress reduction in a prison environment. Fences and shade awnings could easily incorporate patterning that simulates the dappling of light provided by trees.

A Western Australian women's pre-release centre that I also visited has erected a patterned fence that is not only a visually pleasing aesthetic but which also tells a story. The story was told to me in the following way:

> The vine motif depicts the twists and turns that a woman's life can take. It also shows that there can be several paths along this life's journey and that no two journeys are, or need to be, the same.
>
> The twists and turns of a vine can be unfathomable as often is the case in how our own life plays out. Sometimes leaves fall from the

vine but it has the capacity to renew itself as can a resilient woman. It is up to an individual as to what path they choose as in the way a vine grows.

(From my journal, April 2014)

Figure 4.12 Biophilic prison fence

(Source Author)

The advancing technology of green roofs and green walls, coupled with creative designers, is providing innovative techniques of incorporating greater greenery and nature into our building fabric (Newman, 2014; Newman et al., 2013). While prison gardening programs are proving successful in prisoner rehabilitation (Chettle, 2014; Washington State Department of Corrections & The Evergreen College, 2014), these techniques are providing further options for incorporation of greenery into prison design. Vertical living walls can provide not only aesthetic greenery but also the possibility for food growing and building projects for the prison residents. While pot plants have been shown to increase productivity and health benefits indoors (Nieuwenhuis et al., 2014), careful incorporation of either these or green walls would be needed so as to not provide a security risk. Pot plants and green walls within staff and visitor areas could be a viable option to aid stress reduction for both staff and visitors. Green courtyards, which may include other biophilic features, could offer an immersive experience for staff, residents and visitors.

Nature in prisons – biophilic beginnings

Although not focussed on the deeper perspective of Fromm's biophilia, there are a few prisons globally which provide opportunities for residents to connect with animals, nature and the rhythms of nature. India's Tihar prison is an example where this does happen, with residents immersed in gardens and food production.

Recognition of the potential benefits of approaches such as Tihar's may be an increasing response to contemporary prison problems. Studies in other institutions such as hospitals and schools (Haluza, Schönbauer & Cervinka, 2014; Kimmelman, 2014; Matsunaga et al., 2011; Park & Mattson, 2008; Ulrich, 2002) have documented the positive impact of exposure to nature for individuals in these places. These research results can be applied to prisons and extended through corroborative studies, such as Nadkarni and Pacholke (2013). Some strategic initiatives towards rehabilitation, better mental health and increased well-being are being implemented in prisons where policy and personnel are conducive. Many of these involve nature based activities, and observation and anecdotal evidence by prison staff confirm the benefits, as illustrated in the examples below.

The United States

The Sustainability in Prisons Project has been operating in the US for the last ten years as a partnership founded by the Washington State Department of Corrections and The Evergreen State College. The project's mission is to bring science and nature into prisons. Through collaborative and educational projects the Sustainable Prisons Project's mission includes helping to reduce "the environmental, economic and human costs of prisons by inspiring and informing sustainable practices" (Washington State Department of Corrections & The Evergreen College, 2014). They now have programs in 12 correctional centres in Washington State in the US, all achieving positive results with their inmates. Their website contains inspiring stories from inmates who have learnt skills which have led to a sense of achievement and provided a path to follow upon their release. One story is of an inmate who co-authored a peer reviewed paper presented at a conference and has since gone to graduate school in molecular biology (Ulrich & Nadkarni, 2009).

A current project at Snake River Corrections Facility in Oregon is experiencing the deeper outcomes of behavioural change in line with Fromm's biophilic theory. The media interest and reports reflect a significant story. Nalini Nadkarni was a

professor at The Evergreen State College who was involved in the Sustainable Prisons Project. At this time she worked with segregated inmates in 'supermax facilities' showing them varying nature photos to research which photos residents found calming. Her idea was then to put nature imagery on the walls of solitary cells. While the administrators agreed to trial the idea, the security guards were against it, feeling the initiative was "coddling the men" (Denson, 2014; Libby, 2014). A few years later, after viewing a TED talk on her idea (Nadkarni, 2010), a Snake River corrections officer was intrigued enough to contact Nadkarni and, with prison authority approvals, a Blue Room was set up for the use of the isolated prisoners in the Intensive Management Unit of the Oregon prison. Typically, these prisoners are in bleak, barren cells and after sometime their behaviour deteriorates, with increased mental health issues, suicides and increased violence. The Blue Room screens nature movies and prisoners are given opportunities to spend time sitting in the room. So far disciplinary records and prisoner compliance are revealing positive results, enough to warrant rigorous research which Nadkarni and her team began in October, 2014. Nadkarni's research was very much in line with my thoughts regarding biophilia and prison design, so I decided to contact her via email. Her email response gave me insights into her motivation for her research:

> The idea of bringing nature, science, and conservation projects to inmates began in 2005 when I collaborated with a minimum security prison superintendent, Dan Pacholke, to engage the men in this prison with a moss-growing project, to help mitigate the negative effects of moss-collecting in old-growth forests of the pacific northwest. That proved to be very successful from the standpoint of the scientist, the inmates, and the prison administrators. I started a monthly science lecture series in that prison, which then led to a number of sustainability projects – organic garden, composting, bee-keeping, recycling behind bars, and subsequently, to collaborations with conservation groups that led to the men and women rearing endangered frogs, prairie plants, and butterflies for restoration projects around Washington State. Those practices have spread to nine other states and such programs are going on in 20 different prisons and jails.
>
> Although successful in getting nature into the hands of some of the inmates (well-behaved, minimum-security, pre-release), I realized that there are many other prisoners to whom we could not bring such

> activities, i.e., those in special housing units because of security issues. I thought that perhaps bringing images of nature to men and women in IMUs could help reduce stress, anxiety and violence, and foster a sense of calm and reflection, as it does in many other venues (hospitals, mental health wards). I tried to introduce this into a prison in Washington State several years ago, but the officers were against the idea.
>
> Last year, I got a call from an officer who had seen a talk I had given about this topic, and was inspired to ask if they could implement this practice at his prison, Snake River Correctional Institution. He formed the "Forward Thinking Committee", consisting of himself, other officers, the behavioral health staff director, and the prison superintendent. I joined their team as an advisor, and they quickly installed a projector, downloaded nature films from the web, and created a framework to examine impacts. The cellblocks are in pairs, sharing a control room with an exercise room for each side of 24 inmates. We show films in one room, but not the other.
>
> We have collected some anecdotal data from staff and inmates on the positive effects of the intervention, but we will need to wait until January to carry out our formal surveys, case studies interviews, and analysis of frequency of violent infractions. We plan to write up and disseminate our results in a peer-reviewed journal so that this can become part of the evidence-based literature.
>
> (N. Nakarni, personal communication, November 15, 2014)

I responded with enthusiasm and we have maintained an email connection.

The Australian story

A news story on the ABC website (Chettle, 2014) outlines a project occurring in a NSW prison on the east coast of Australia. The St Heliers Correctional Centre at Muswellbrook in the NSW Hunter Valley is currently producing about 70% of its food, with similar programs operating in other NSW correctional facilities set to expand. Aside from reducing the food bill for these institutions, there are positive

benefits from training and upskilling inmates. NSW Attorney-General and Justice Minister Brad Hazzard hopes that the rate of recidivism through the program will decline, a comment agreed with by inmates who have been involved (Chettle, 2014).

A similar program has occurred in a Western Australian prison near Perth, a prison that is keen to trial biophilic design initiatives to reduce stress, reduce recidivism and increase the success of restorative justice programs. At the time of writing, the prison has employed residents to build a small green wall near the facility manager's office, with plans to trial bigger ones in suitable locations. They have also built greenhouses to grow commercial lettuces with great success, both with the produce and with the residents involved in the project. I spoke with one of the prisoners involved in the greenhouse project and his story is told below:

> A resident at a Western Australian prison has the opportunity to be involved in a commercial hydroponic venture growing greenhouse lettuces. His passion at recounting his experience was delightfully infectious. He is a single Dad who has only known truck driving as an occupation. He had also previously struggled to enthuse his two children to eat vegetables. The skill learning and joy of seeing things grow had given him the enthusiasm to motivate his two girls to start growing their own lettuces and vegetables at home. Each day they compare notes and tips, with his daughters now enthusiastically eating their own home grown vegetables. The resident has also instigated a small hydroponic set up at the daughters' school so fresh salad vegetables can be provided to other children. Being able to constructively help his daughters and improve their life while imprisoned has been highly positive for this resident.
>
> (From my journal, November 2014)

The presentation

I was invited to present my ideas on biophilic design in prisons at a seminar held at Curtin University.

When presenting I outlined the concepts and ideas which are written in the sections above. The feedback from my presentation was extremely positive and took me by surprise. The attendees appeared to significantly relate to what was presented. I

was asked for a copy of the presentation. One attendee of note commented *"*That was fantastic!" When I asked why, the response was *"*You took us on a journey.*"* At the conclusion of the seminar, we went around the table with people outlining their highlight. A high proportion mentioned my presentation, including the Justice Commissioner of Corrective Services. Many of the attendees were prison administrators and my focus on reducing stress levels and improving mental health was something that they related to. Biophilic initiatives were offering this in an achievable manner.

The summation on prisons

From researching the current literature it appears that, while prison farms and gardening programs have been successfully implemented globally, the incorporation of biophilic initiatives within prison design is a new and emerging field. Fromm's theories of the regressive and progressive pathways of life and the influences that support either pathway, suggest the importance of connecting individuals with nature through biophilic design. Fostering a biophilic love of life is an essential component of steering prison inmates from further regression into a 'life of decay' to a life where altruism and a sense of belonging are the greater forces. There is opportunity and potential to improve mental health and wellbeing for prison residents which can lead to a reduction in recidivism. Assisting prisoner rehabilitation and providing an opportunity to retain or increase their level of humanity would ultimately benefit all of society.

The ability of nature and the architectural patterns of nature to trigger positive psychological and physiological forces are a valid and valuable tool. Research has provided the evidence and technology has provided the ability to not only implement biophilic initiatives, but also to monitor outcomes.

There is clearly a need for detailed demonstration projects that can establish biophilic designs in prisons and collect data on the physiological and psychological outcomes of people in highly stressed environments.

4.5 Conclusion

My immersion within the local environment was a mixed journey of openings and closings. The enthusiastic response to the concept and initiatives of biophilic design

from all sectors of society was far beyond what I may have anticipated. The media attention was significant, reflecting the broader community's interest. The number of inquiries and emails by people wanting to implement a green wall or a green roof demonstrated this. What was driving this interest? There appeared a tacit understanding that this was a good thing and intuitively I felt a hunger for more nature from some of the journey's participants. The responses contained within the Greenskins social survey indicated that this desire for nature in our cities was driven by a recognition and appreciation of the beauty of nature. Closely coupled with this was the connection with the decreasing of stress when exposed to nature and an increased feeling of wellbeing. This was also reflected in the interview with Mayor Pettitt. He included these factors in his definition of liveability.

For Brookfield-Multiplex, decreasing stress amongst workers on-site, was also a motivator for wanting to develop a biophilic design project. Stress reduction and increasing wellbeing were again the motivators for the prison project. This indicates that stress is a shared issue for our city inhabitants and that there is a perception that nature can help alleviate this.

After the excitement of the interest and possibilities, I experienced a depth of frustration that, apart from the Greenskins project, none of the other projects went ahead. The common barriers appeared to be uncertainty about costs, the lack of precedence and the unwillingness to take a risk. These were barriers also experienced and expressed by Pettitt and Rose. Leighton Industries could not sell the concept to the building owners due to a lack of trust in the cost rationale. The prison system could not find the funds after paying fines for a couple of escaped prisoners. The benefits and rationale presented in the research and which are being implemented and studied globally, are not yet providing enough momentum for local players to take the risk and be an iconic precedent. The motivating themes reflected limited recognition of social benefits as identified in the academic research of biophilic design.

Revealed Motivating Themes:

- Connection to nature
- Aesthetics/ beauty of nature
- Stress reduction
- Increased liveability
- Increased wellbeing

Revealed Barriers to Implementation:

- Cost of implementation
- Cost of maintenance
- Lack of precedents
- Reluctance to take a risk

The next chapter continues my heuristic journey of immersion in the emergence of the social movement of biophilic design. Rather than just describing my direct experience of the phenomenon, it reports on a series of interviews with those who have or who are experiencing the phenomenon for themselves. This extends the personal discoveries, insights and themes of this chapter by providing an opportunity to assess whether these personal insights and experiences are universal. Much of the next chapter was written in the phase of incubation.

CHAPTER FIVE
THE GLOBAL JOURNEY

5.1 Introduction

By reporting on research conducted in the United States and Canada, this chapter continues the second phase of heuristic inquiry and builds on the immersive local journey of the previous chapter, providing a comparative study of the experiences of global participants in the biophilic design movement. Writing this chapter in the incubation phase, I was able to examine whether my personal journey and discoveries of the previous chapter are reflective of the universal experience and whether previously identified themes, motivators, drivers and barriers are also to be found amongst other participants. The local experience showed little translation of the research into practice though considerable enthusiasm for the idea. The literature and meta-analysis revealed that there was significantly more research emerging from the two countries to be visited. This overseas journey provided an opportunity to again examine if, how and why the research was being put into practice.

The journey took me to the birthplace of biophilic design with the hope of meeting and interviewing some of the originators of the concept. Through these interviews, the aim is to investigate and identify what had motivated either an individual or a city to pursue the implementation of biophilic initiatives. The barriers will also be identified. The writing of this chapter mostly occurred in the incubation phase of heuristic inquiry. My reflections (self-dialogue) are intertwined throughout, utilising the first person for myself as well as the interviewee's first name. Identified factors from the global journey and the local journey, plus significant insights and themes which emerge, will provide the data for a deeper incubation phase and the resulting creative synthesis.

The journey began with another direct experience of the phenomenon of the social movement of biophilic design. This was the participation in a 'collective rite' in the form of attending a conference involving biophilic design and biophilic urbanism: the Biophilic Cities conference at the University of Virginia in October 2013. The significance of this conference was twofold. It was the inaugural global conference of biophilic cities, where the concept was launched and discussed, and it potentially

was the emergence of an off-shoot biophilic design social movement. This chapter begins with a discussion of my experience in attending this conference and any significant learning that came from this.

After the conference in Virginia, the next two and a half months were spent travelling to ten cities in the United States (US) and Canada and interviewing twenty- six participants. The interviews were organised via email, some with short notice as their names were provided by a previous interview in that city or the one before. The interviewees were provided with an information sheet explaining the topic and research with a guide to possible questions plus a consent form. The conversation would focus on their story of biophilic design: what their strategies were and in what arenas, the history of how things had evolved and what their thoughts were in regard to biophilic design. To gain an understanding of their connection to nature I asked whether they had grown up in nature or not. This potentially could give an insight into my personal question of why people respond differently to nature. The answers would be recorded as to whether they had established a connection with nature while young or as an adult and whether this was with rural, wilderness or urban nature. I also asked for one word to describe their feelings when they were immersed in nature.

The interviews were open-ended in line with heuristic inquiry, being allowed to flow with their natural form and time. They frequently felt like passionate conversations between two people with a shared interest. The interviews were recorded via audio recording, note taking and film. A journal of self-dialogue was maintained throughout the journey, containing inner reflections and insights, and a selection is interwoven throughout the interview stories. The individual interviewee's experiences were constructed into stories with a matrix at the end of each interview summarising the revealed motivators and barriers, separated into the appropriate social movement phase as introduced in section 2.6.6. Following heuristic inquiry methodology, this chapter contains a selection of the stories which exemplify the overall interviews.

Also included in the chapter are two stories of two places I visited which demonstrate biophilic design and contribute to the research by illustrating the design principles in action. The remaining interviews are documented in Appendix B.

5.2 Defining the parameters

The literature research had revealed that many design elements that are categorised under biophilic design by the biophilic design movement, may not be put under that label by their originators and may be implemented for environmental reasons, not because of the biophilia human-nature connection. Biophilic design is expansive, encompassing many elements, so it was necessary to set clear parameters on what was being investigated. The focus narrowed to biophilic architecture with building integrated vegetation such as green roofs and green walls, plus any new or innovative urban design initiative such as rain gardens and the daylighting of streams. This worked extremely well and provided the necessary boundaries in guiding the journey. In some interviews the boundary was appropriately blurred between biophilic design and biophilic urbanism due to the intertwining of their stories.

This was a journey of surrender, trust and intuition requiring an open and receptive mind. Interestingly, a mind open to possibilities, creativity and new ways of thinking was to be a theme that was repeated throughout my conversations.

The interviewees included in this chapter:

Tim Beatley – Virginia. *Beatley attended the Rhode Island conference and is a pioneer in the movement and the Biophilic Cities movement.*

Teresa Heinz Professor of Sustainable Communities

School of Architecture

University of Virginia

Kelliann Whitley – Washington DC *Whitley represents a citizen who thought it was just 'common sense'.*

Senior Property Manager

Blake Real Estate

Stephen Kellert – Virginia and New York. *Kellert is a founding pioneer having co-edited The Biophilia Hypothesis with Wilson and initiated the Rhode Island conference. He is a co-editor of Biophilic Design.*

Tweedy Ordway Professor Emeritus

Yale University

School Forestry & Environmental Studies

Mary W. Rowe – New York. *Rowe had a fascinating understanding of urban living and introduced me further to the concept of self-organising communities.*

Managing Director and Head

Global Initiative for Urban Liveability and Resilience

The Municipal Art Society of New York

Bill Browning – New York. *Browning has been a significant contributing player in the biophilic design movement from its emergence and attended the Rhode Island conference.*

Director

Terrapin Bright Green

Jay Womack – Chicago. *Womack is a landscape architect who, through his own insights, is contributing to biophilic design through implementation and education.*

WRD Environmental

Sustainable Results

Michael Berkshire – Chicago. *Berkshire has been instrumental in biophilic design initiatives in Chicago through policy.*

Sustainable Development Division; City of Chicago

Judith Heerwagen – Seattle. *Heerwagen has been an early researcher in biophilic design. She attended the Rhode Island conference and is a co-editor of the book Biophilic Design and continues to contribute through education and publications.*

HPGB Program Expert

Office of Federal High-Performance

Green Buildings

US General Services Administration

Birgit Siber – Toronto*. Siber demonstrates collaboration between industry and academia and was instrumental in the innovation of bio-filter green walls.*

Principal

Diamond Schmitt Architects

Mike Houck – Portland. *Houck, through a personal epiphany, is a local champion focused on nature in cities.*

Director

Urban Greenspaces Institute

Tom Liptan – Portland. *Liptan, called the 'godfather' of green roofs has championed green roofs since his own research trial.*

Ecoroof Program Manager at City of Portland

Portland, Oregon Area

Environmental Services

5.3 Background

One of the latter chapters in the book *Biophilic Design: The Theory, Science, and Practice of Bringing Buildings to Life* (Kellert et al., 2008) introduced the concept of biophilic urbanism and biophilic cities through the author Tim Beatley, the Teresa Heinz Professor of Sustainable Communities in the Department of Urban and Environmental Planning, School of Architecture at the University of Virginia. Beatley examined the inclusion of biophilia on different urban scales such as streets, neighbourhoods and communities, concluding with the vision of biophilic cities. Although labelled ambitious by Kellert in his introduction in *Biophilic Design* (Kellert et al., 2008), Beatley has pursued this vision. A Biophilic Cities website has been developed and currently there are fourteen cities listed as being 'biophilic partner cities'. These are cities which are active in implementing biophilic initiatives. Beatley organised an inaugural Biophilic Cities conference in Virginia, US, with invitations to the global partner cities. I was invited to present a paper at the conference, a serendipitous opportunity which I seized. This provided the opportunity to experience and document a collective rite that exhibited the indicators of an emerging social movement.

Travelling to the US from Australia is a journey requiring significant funds and time. To maximise the potential of this travel it was considered worthwhile to spend some time immersed in research while there. This was consistent with the methodology of heuristic inquiry; I was being open to an opportunity, following my intuition in allowing the direction to unfold and to further immerse in active experience. Although it presented its own challenges, I recognised the importance of not planning the journey too rigidly.

The Biophilic Cities conference in Virginia was the perfect launch pad for the pursuit of people who were in their own way leaders in a new social movement. As well as many global participants, there were participants from around the US and Canada. Attending the conference demonstrated their interest and potential involvement with biophilic initiatives in their city or in their employment. The US is the birthplace of the concepts of biophilia and biophilic design so there was a rich palette of people to talk with about where to journey and who to meet in the US and Canada who were very helpful in providing contacts. Many of these participants, players in the biophilic design social movement, were pioneers of the movement and had knowledge of innovations and innovators in other North American cities. They provided connections to other pioneers in biophilic design. It did seem like a connected

movement of players with a common interest. Thus, potentially, the revealed motivators in the interviews should mostly be the emergent drivers: the collected stories, the pioneering stories. Based on the information from conference participants, I had to decide what cities to visit and how long for, as travel and accommodation needed to be booked. The detailed structure was left to unfold.

5.4 Biophilic cities conference: a collective rite

5.4.1 Background

In the preface to his book *Biophilic Cities* (Beatley, 2011), Beatley explained that the *Biophilic Design* book served to convince him *"*of the need for a stand-alone book about biophilic cities*"* (Beatley, 2011, p. xi). In 2009, Beatley had already been involved in filming a documentary titled *The Nature of Cities,* portraying people around the world who are involved in projects focussed on retaining our connection to nature within urban environments. In Beatley's online blurb promoting the movie, he suggests *"*It is our goal to raise the consciousness and understanding of this movement*…"* (*Biophilic Cities*, 2014). His book *Biophilic Cities* (2011) sought to expand upon the film and detail North American, European and Australian biophilic examples and stories. It explored the history of biophilia and included illustrations of biophilia that currently exist in cities. Beatley outlined the beginnings of defining a biophilic city with examples of current strategies and designs which progress biophilic initiatives in cities and concluded with future directions and what is needed in both research and practice. Beatley maintained a sense of questioning and curiosity throughout the book, recognising that it was only an introduction to characterising what a biophilic city is, what it looks and feels like. In his conclusion he expressed how curiosity about the natural world by a city's residents may be essential and an indicator of the city's biophilic success. But the success needs to occur on all scales, from rooftop to region, and this entails a *"*significant popular shift in the way we view cities*"* (Beatley, 2011, p. 151).

Beatley worked hard to progress his vision of expanding the movement and understanding of biophilic cities. A biophilic cities website was developed in 2012, incorporating a blog, resources, webinar links, news and a list of partner cities who have pledged to progress their biophilic qualities (http://biophiliccities.org/). The

website, whilst offering ideas about what comprises a biophilic city, also opened up the discussion on what one may look like. The characteristics of a biophilic city were not defined, yet it was considered that the defining qualities are essential for without these there is the possibility of biophilic initiatives being green washed and shorthanded with tokenistic implementation measures (Beatley, 2011, p.156; Cramer & Browning, 2008, p. 344).

To assist in defining a biophilic city, Beatley and his team at the University of Virginia were inspired to host a conference of delegates from the cities who had already become biophilic city partners. The cities shared the goals of stimulating urban biophilic initiatives and further defining of the expectations of a biophilic city. Also invited to the conference were key academics in the field such as Stephen Kellert and Jennifer Wolch, plus biophilic researchers and practitioners.

I was invited to attend as a representative of the partner city of Perth, Western Australia.

5.4.2 The 2013 Biophilic Cities conference

The buzz and excitement of this inaugural Biophilic Cities conference was contagious. Attendees had come from all across the globe to spend three days discovering and sharing thoughts, ideas, experiences and passions around biophilia in cities. Apart from coming from different countries, the attendees also came from different arenas. There were representatives from government, academia, civil society and the private sector, which included architects and green infrastructure consultants. Primarily, the attendees were from academia or government.

I presented a synopsis of Perth and of my trial green wall project with preliminary results of the social survey attached to the trial. The survey attracted much interest, especially the fact that, prior to analysis, initial responses showed people ranked the beauty of nature over the potential of nature to de-stress them. Kellert, in his keynote address was to mention this survey result. It was surprising to discover that similar surveys were not known and some delegates were interested to replicate the Fremantle Greenskins survey in their countries. Beatley had also invited me to assist some UVA (University of Virginia) architecture students to build a small green wall and present another short talk about the process. The construction process provided an unexpected opportunity to experience the biophilic design principle of organised complexity:

> The students had received instructions to plant the wall so as to 'look natural'. When I viewed their placement of plants, it looked contrived. So I themed the plants in their species and colours and placed them in clusters, running diagonally or patterned somehow. Interestingly, it then looked natural and was an immersive lesson for both myself and the students in the organised complexity of nature.
>
> (From my journal, October 2013)

Stephen Kellert and Jennifer Wolch from Berkeley were the keynote speakers, with Wolch as the first speaker. Her opening statement suggested that biophilic design is *"*a movement so powerful that it has exploded across the world*"* (Wolch, personal communication, October 19, 2013). This was exciting, as here was immediate confirmation that biophilic design was being perceived as an emerging movement. Wolch was unable to stay for the conference and so there was only a brief chance to talk with her. In asking what she considered was motivating this movement, she suggested that it was "climate change*"* which could have meant the widespread concern for cities in a very uncertain and much hotter future as well as the multiple issues associated with burning fossil fuels.

All the Biophilic Cities network partners from around the world presented an overview of biophilic initiatives occurring in their cities. The conference then concluded with another keynote speaker, this time Stephen Kellert:

> After outlining the history of biophilic design, he discussed the barriers to its implementation, introducing thought provoking concepts. He considers that humans have an experiential response to nature, reflective of our innate connection. These physical responses do not have to be relevant in our human evolution, but they are, and this is biophilia, evidenced also in non-human primates. Biophilia is a simple concept but it reveals itself in many ways, it describes our humanity. Kellert argues that biophilia is a weak biological tendency whose adaptive development depends on learning; it can be mal-adapted. Biophilia within people needs to be fostered, it needs social reinforcement.
>
> (From my journal; Kellert, 2013)

This discussion highlighted my previous thoughts on whether the people driving the biophilic movement have had an upbringing in nature or significant exposure to nature at some time. Kellert raised another intriguing point in that we tend to underestimate the aesthetic value of nature, yet aesthetics, with fractal geometry and the organised complexity of nature, is a central issue of biophilia.

This was the first discussion of what would be a recurring theme in many of my forthcoming conversations in the US and Canada.

> Kellert mentioned the amount of increasing research revealing the benefits for including biophilic elements within urban design and the connectedness and sense of place that develops for people when nature is included in city design. Kellert posits that without this sense of place and emotional attachment, a building or city is not sustainable, even if it may be a Gold Certified LEED building. Through his experiences, he has recognised that a higher level of exposure to nature develops a deeper sense of care within people. Kellert suggested that sustainable biophilic urbanism and the growth of biophilic cities depends on a new consciousness towards nature rather than a new checklist. He concluded with the thought that *"*biophilia is a moral imperative*".*
>
> (From my journal; Kellert 2013)

The final day of the conference focussed on identifying what was needed to progress the ideas and concepts expressed throughout, plus how to develop the biophilic cities network. Participants gathered in groups to collectively brainstorm, some of the outcomes presented in Figure 5.1.

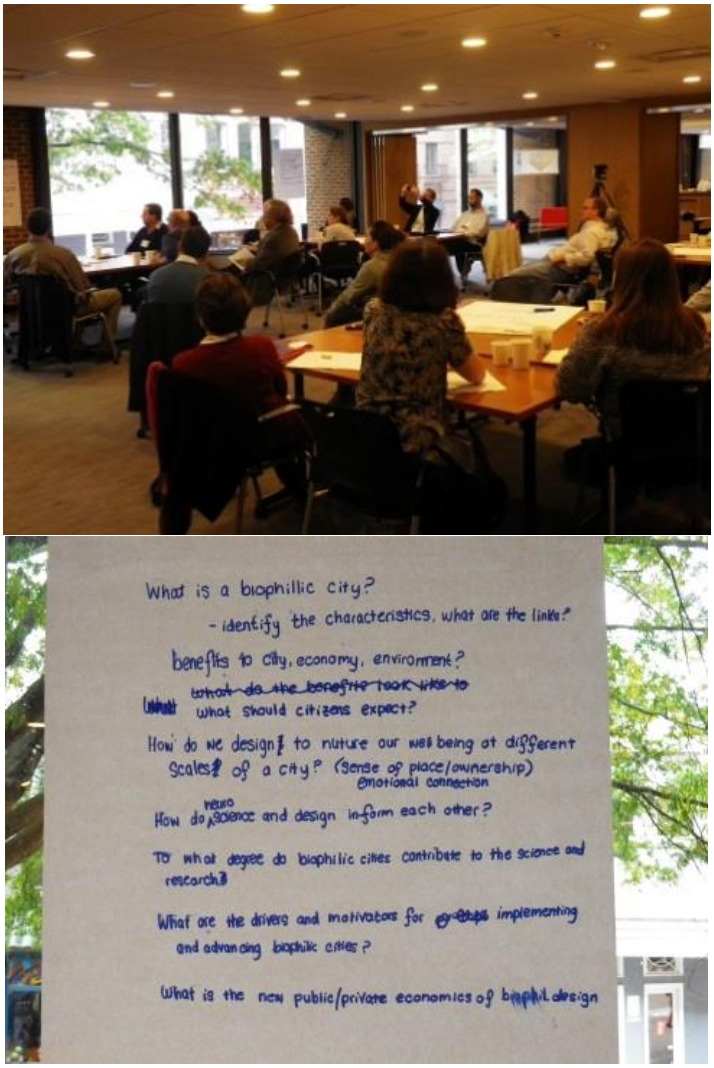


Figure 5.1 The biophilic city discussion

(Source Author)

We were first invited to identify the research questions, that is, what did we want to explore in this session and what do we want to focus on achieving? Large sheets of paper rapidly filled. For example:

- What is a biophilic city?
- What are the evidence based arguments for the health benefits of biophilic urbanism?
- How do you measure a biophilic attribute in an individual or city context?
- How do you maintain initiatives or implement stewardship?

The lists were comprehensive and reflected the diversity of interests and knowledge. The barriers to biophilic design initiatives were then discussed with common themes such as:

- Lack of knowledge
- Fear of change and innovation
- Lack of leadership
- Lack of political will
- Short sighted thinking
- Financial mechanisms do not reflect the benefits, especially in health, of biophilic initiatives.

These were barriers encountered by this global group in their fields such as depicted in Figure 5.2. It would be interesting to note if they also presented in the forthcoming journey in the US and Canada.

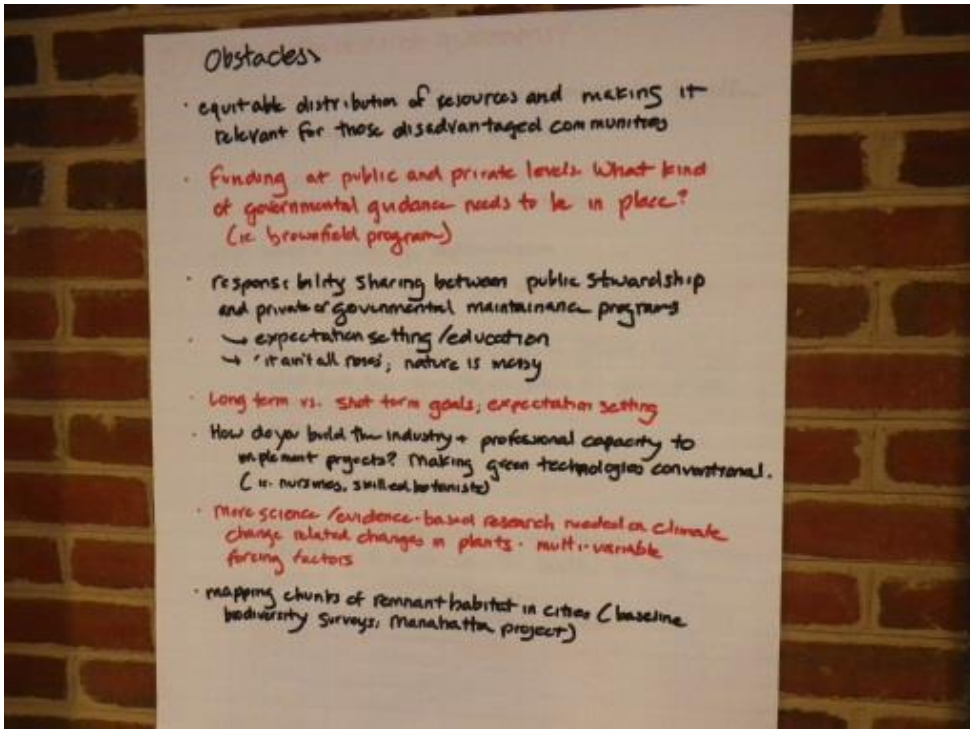


Figure 5.2 The obstacles as identified in the discussion

(Source Author)

To conclude, the groups outlined goals that were perceived as helpful to the progression of biophilic urbanism. These included:

- Cultivate a biophilic consciousness
- Cultivate a practice of awareness
- Showcase best practices
- Advocacy and adoption
- Networking
- Strategies for communicating the urgency to leaders and communicating the multiple benefits on offer with biophilic initiatives in urbanism.

Would these also emerge from the interviews in the immersive journey?

Throughout the conference there appeared a shared understanding, an intuitive knowing that did not need to be spoken. There was a common language, a shared goal, a shared vision and an understated but apparent connection to nature. The appreciation of the beauty of nature encountered on field trips was expressed. Deep conversations were held and a sense of family developed even though participants were from different backgrounds and different countries. There was unity under the collective identity of biophilic design sharing a collective rite of a conference.

Washington DC

The conference was participatory and immersive, with field trips and workshops. One of the field trips was a visit to the Anacostia Watershed project in Washington DC. Conference delegates canoed the river listening to the stories of the work of the Anacostia Watershed Society, a non-profit organisation working to conserve and protect the land and water of the Anacostia River system in the District of Columbia and the State of Maryland. Their efforts to clean up the polluted Anacostia River have resulted in unanticipated social benefits with the uniting of the diverse social sectors of the west and east banks. Social projects conducted by the Anacostia Watershed Society have helped raise the sense of belonging to the river and the city for the lower socio-economic east bank population. Riverside revitalisation initiatives reflect biophilic design and have included a small green roof. An arrangement was made with Michael Lucy, senior consultant with the Anacostia

Watershed Society, to meet for an interview when I returned to Washington DC after the conference. The first stepping stone from Virginia was in place.

5.5 The Interviews

I stayed behind after the Biophilic City conference delegates had departed to consolidate my plans and prepare for the journey ahead. It was also to spend some time with Tim Beatley. He was my first interview and, I think, a very apt one as it was his visit to my university and conversations with him that initially introduced me to the concept of biophilia and ignited a passion.

Tim Beatley – Virginia-29/10/2013

Teresa Heinz Professor of Sustainable Communities
School of Architecture
University of Virginia

Player	Arena	Strategy	Word	Connection to Nature
Tim Beatley	Academia	Publications, collective rites	Calm	Urban nature, young

After the conference Beatley and I were able to have an extended conversation about biophilic design and its progression since biophilia was first popularised by Wilson. Beatley's previous career focus has been in green urbanism with the contemporary language framed by technical and metabolic values. Biophilic design was different for him as "biophilia brings thinking in about how these things affect humans. A low ecological footprint energy efficient building may not be nourishing or even necessarily pleasant to be in."

Beatley and I discussed the concept of biophilia being a weak biological tendency that Kellert had introduced in the conference. We both agreed that greater exposure to nature does nurture a connection. Beatley suggested the tendency "is weak in the

sense that like a muscle, it needs to be exercised*"*. This led to a discussion on whether people who are passionate about nature have also spent a lot of time in nature. Beatley pointed out that many of the great contributors in the environmental field such as Rachel Carson *"*have had some real important childhood upbringing that involved significant contact with nature. So there is certainly something there. Your exposure at an early age predisposes you to understanding the value and importance of natural contact*."*

As an urbanist and an urban planner Beatley thinks the challenge for him is to look at the whole cumulative elements of nature in a city, the green networks, the bird sounds and the wildlife. *"*It is these cumulative effects of all of nature that triggers biophysical and emotional responses to something*."* Biophilia provides a different framework; it introduces our emotional and biological needs. As Beatley suggests, *"*it's a different approach to just protecting nature as another urban 'infrastructure', just fixing another engineering problem*".*

Beatley thinks how we connect people to what is around them through social and organisational structures is the challenge. *"*We need to be able to build on this natural, social capital of connecting people to the nature around them. There is a lot of nature in cities that is not very visible, or very small or not understood. How do we get visible that nature and get kids interested*?"* Much of the environmental policy, Beatley thinks, *"*has been driven by the belief that market systems fail in the recognition of the need for nature in our cities*".* The perceived need for benefit/cost analysis, eco-system analysis or economic analysis is a *"*slippery slope*"* that will influence conventional thinking. There is a need for this but Beatley resists the idea *"*that economics becomes the driving metric. If this is the sole criteria then you live and die by it. If a green roof does not deliver the expected temperature reduction and energy savings then the policy can go away*."*

I ask Beatley if he thinks there is a social movement happening in biophilic urban design. He replies *"*there is a new movement in the way people are talking about nature in our cities, and who is talking. The dialogue now involves people from city planning, architecture, urban design, public governance and public health. There has been a rediscovery of health as a driver, brought on by the obesity crisis along with stress and mental health issues*."* There are *"*new pushes, new dialogues, new discussions*".* Parallel to this, Beatley explains, has been Richard Louv's book *Last Child in the Wild* and *"*the recognition of the profound disconnect that has happened in my lifetime for children from nature and the outdoors. This is new; the disappearance of the 'free range child'*".* Louv's book, in Beatley's experience, has

ignited something and touched a chord. At the same time the food movement has grown, food security has become an issue, so there is a *"*renewed appreciation of the importance of being able to grow food*".*

Beatley has an awareness of certain things converging. *"*It can be health or community or connection to nature. This is what is new. Some of these are old values, old ways of common sense that have been dropped and are being revisited with a new appreciation and vigour. Biophilia touches them all."

Beatley described how in Birmingham they are looking at a whole variety of issues such as stress, heat, drought, climate change, poverty that contribute to climate stress and layering all these things. They are then *"*imagining how the whole natural system of that city could act as a way of addressing this urban stress and tackling all these issues".

We went back to discussing the movement we had both recognised was occurring. Beatley had been at the Rhode Island conference so I asked him about his experience and thoughts and how biophilic design emerged. *"*A lot of people had been working in this area and calling it different things. Architects doing organic stuff with natural materials didn't call themselves biophilic designers but Steve got them together and we started using that word. These were different professions doing different work and gradually moving in the direction of the language of biophilic design. So it's probably only been about a decade that biophilic design has been used. But I haven't heard of Biophilic Cities used before."

The discussion moved to Chicago and the implementation of the Chicago City Hall green roof by Mayor Daley. We talked about whether research would find initiatives were being introduced top down or bottom up. Beatley thought it is a blend of both: *"*There is a lot of bubbling up from the bottom and there is a lot of urban greening stuff ending up as a subsidy from top down*."* We concluded that there are a lot of good stories to be collected and recounted that would capture a sense of what is happening and why in the biophilic design area in the US.

Beatley described the house where he grew up: *"*I had an ideal house and neighbourhood, essentially grew up in a single house (until I went off to college) that my father built on 6 acres of land, but within a city. It was the best of both worlds*."*

Figure 5.3 Beatley's house his father built

(Image courtesy Tim Beatley)

****

The interview with Tim was the perfect beginning. It was a great overview of biophilic urbanism. Tim was able to express his thoughts on what he understood was happening, particularly in the US. He agreed there was 'something' different going on in the way urban issues were being talked about and addressed. These issues were bringing together people from varying disciplines and biophilic design was providing a framework, as it had at the Rhode Island conference.

Table 5.1 Tim Beatley

	Motivators and Drivers		
Stages of social movement	**Environmental**	**Social** (including emotional)	**Economic**
Emergence	Framework for uniting disciplines, climate stress issues	Framework for uniting disciplines, human connection and needs	Framework for uniting disciplines
Coalescence		Health, food security	
Any Identified Barriers		Weak biological tendency	Economics as the driving metric

Kelliann Whitley – Washington DC-05/11/2013

Senior Property Manager

Blake Real Estate

Player	Arena	Strategy	Word	Connection to nature
Kelliann Whitley	Civic	Implementation	Peaceful	Urban nature, young

Lucy, the previous interviewee chronologically (see Appendix B.2.1), had provided names and locations of some of the green roofs in Washington DC which were possible to visit and, in viewing one of them, I unexpectedly met a remarkable woman. She worked for a real estate company located in a commercial office building. The woman, Kelliann Whitley, had read about the green roof rebate program and "saw the sense in it". Whitley thought a green roof would be good on the commercial office building where she worked in downtown Washington DC. Her preliminary efforts to have one installed initially met a lot of resistance. First Whitley had to convince the owners of the building. It took her a year of pushing through obstacles and continual research. "The owners of the building were afraid of leaks and voiding the warranty of the roof membrane so I rang all around the world, even Mayor Daley's office in Chicago to find out how to do this." This resulted in the roof getting a new membrane. Whitley was then able to secure funding to enable six young teens from abusive backgrounds to be trained to plant the roof with sedums. A condition of this funding was that the roof be open to the public for 2 years as it was considered a demonstration project. In 2015, it has been open for 10 years and Whitley still conducts tours, having shown roughly 6,000 people around the roof top. She says "the owners of the building now 'brag' about their green roof".

Whitley has observed a steady increase in caterpillars, dragonflies, bees and birds on the roof top. "It attracts and supports wildlife on K Street." She considers that "since it first opened its success has encouraged developers and government agencies to take the risk on installing a green roof. Now the process is much easier".

Whitley's passion is tangible. Through her journey of the installation of the green roof she feels she has "rediscovered herself and found a love of the environment that I can't get enough of". On Whitley's roof tours she advises young adults to study green roofs as she views it as the future of the planet. She, herself, is now certified in green roof maintenance.

> "Ten years later and I am still really in love with the roof. When I leave the office, I sit by the roof and look and feel in a different world. Like I am in heaven. Habitat and beauty on top of an ugly building, once you learn about it, it is addictive. People want to see a living thing on top of a building. And all it does for the environment is positive. Mentally and physically it is healthy, peaceful and unique. Really it is a no-brainer."

Figure 5.4 Kelliann Whitley and her green roof

(Source Author)

****

Meeting Kelliann was such an unexpected pleasure and I was to find that I think of her often. Conservative in her political thinking (as we discussed this) she wasn't like the other people I was meeting in the movement. I enjoyed this. Also her driving passion and persistence in making the green roof happen was very inspiring. Kelliann demonstrated qualities through which a person can quietly become a local

champion. Her expression of the feeling she felt when on the roof and how important the connection to nature she had discovered was, validated further what biophilia and biophilic design represented to me.

Table 5.2 Kelliann Whitley

	Motivators and Drivers		
Stages of social movement	**Environmental**	**Social** (including emotional)	**Economic**
Emergence		Makes sense	
Coalescence	Increased biodiversity, successful precedence	Positive image, connection to nature	
Any Identified Barriers	Perceived risks, fear of roof leaks, membrane warranty	Lack of precedence	

Stephen Kellert-11/11/2013

Tweedy Ordway Professor Emeritus
Yale University
School Forestry & Environmental Studies

Player	Arena	Strategy	Word	Connection to Nature
Stephen Kellert	Academia	Research & publications	Connectedness	Wilderness, youth

Having met me at the Virginia conference, Kellert agreed to an interview and this was conducted by phone while I was in New York. In 1992 Kellert alongside E.O.

Wilson brought people together to explore the concept of biophilia following the interest in Wilson's book, *Biophilia*. It was from this gathering that the biophilia hypothesis developed and the subsequent publication of *The Biophilia Hypothesis* (Kellert &Wilson, 1993*). "*The basic premise was that humans have an innate, genetically hardwired connection to nature that is responsible for psychological and physiological responses to nature and the values and patterns of nature. Aesthetics is one of these values*."*

Kellert discussed what he considers as our inherent tendency and need to learn. *"*There are obstacles to learning and one is our modern design and aesthetics. It disconnects us from the natural world. This is why biophilia is needed as a design concept."

The development of biophilic design occurred at the 2008 Rhode Island conference which was spearheaded by himself, Bill Browning and Judith Heerwagen. "The conference brought together different people and professions whose work touched on the biophilia concept*."* It was from this conference that biophilic design evolved into a published book.

In Kellert's lecture at the Biophilic Cities conference and in this interview he stressed the importance of aesthetics as inherent in biophilic design. *"*Beauty has a sound evolutionary adaptive function. It may be distorted in design, or considered a luxury rather than a necessity, but is a basic concept of biophilic design. We need to connect people to nature for them to be happy and whole. Incorporating a superficial nature feature in a building does not constitute biophilic design. It needs to connect people with nature."

Kellert considers there is not a prime motivator to designing biophilically: *"*The multiple benefits that can ensue from biophilic building provide a list of potential motivators and drivers, each of them important. Small spaces designed in the right manner can provide places of beauty and wonder and provide children with an opportunity to experience this."

Kellert became interested in wildlife and nature as a college teenager, immersing himself as much as he could in nature. He considers that this connection can be awakened or triggered at any stage of life. *"*Nature is a part of humanity's feelings, to cut off from the natural world is to cut off from part of humanity*."*

Figure 5.5 The author and Kellert at the Biophilic Cities conference

(Source Author)

****

Although I had to abandon the initial plan to visit Kellert personally, the phone call was still a privilege as, in pioneering hierarchy, Kellert follows Wilson who interpreted Fromm. The conversation reiterated many of his keynote concepts, especially the importance of aesthetics. I was establishing a new appreciation of aesthetics and the role of beauty in our design.

Table 5.3 Stephen Kellert

	Motivators and Drivers		
Stages of social movement	**Environmental**	**Social** (including emotional)	**Economic**
Emergence		Connect to nature, aesthetics, multiple benefits	
Coalescence		Ripple effect	
Any Identified Barriers			

Bill Browning – New York-13/11/2013

Director

Terrapin Bright Green

Player	Arena	Strategy	Word	Connection to nature
Bill Browning	Industry	Research & Implementation	Whole	Urban, young

Browning, formerly from Rocky Mountain Institute, is a founding partner of Terrapin Bright Green, a company that best describes itself:

> Terrapin was created out of the Partners' shared sense of urgency to transition to a sustainable development model that could only be achieved by working with developers, communities and companies around the world. Since 2007, this concern has become an imperative to not only create a sustainable world but one that is aligned with natural processes and supports human health and well-being at all levels. Through our collaborative charrette process, we identify the science-based goals and aspirations of a community, develop an implementation plan, and then provide guidelines and other tools to support the team's success.
>
> (Terrapin Bright Green, 2014)

I had met both Browning and his colleague, Ryan, at the Biophilic Cities conference and discovered that Browning had attended the Rhode Island conference from which emerged the book *'Biophilic Design'.* He contributed to the book and has continued, through his work, to progress the concept of biophilic design. Browning studied in the fields of environmental design and real estate development. Since then he has been active on an impressive number of councils, boards and committees, advocating for sustainable design solutions and developing strategies for business, government and civil society.

According to his website bio, “In 1998 Bill was named one of five people ‘Making a Difference’ by Buildings magazine. In 2001 he was selected as an honorary member of the American Institute of Architects, and in 2004 he was honoured with the U.S. Green Building Council’s Leadership Award” (Terrapin Bright Green, 2014).

I was intrigued as to how he had come to be part of the Rhode Island meeting and a contributor to *Biophilic Design*. Browning was happy to share the story with me and it was to provide another insight into the progression of the biophilic design social movement.

Browning had founded Green Development Services at the Rocky Mountain Institute, an entrepreneurial, non-profit ‘think and do tank’ consulting on many notable projects. While at the institute he had researched worker productivity in green buildings, becoming interested in what conditions improved worker productivity. Browning had the opportunity to be involved with the design of a large building for the Herman Miller Company. To improve worker productivity, Browning focussed on daylighting and providing views of the landscape for the workers. With research funding available, he saw an opportunity to measure any gains in worker productivity. A research hypothesis was created for the project and it was this hypothesis that was linked to biophilia. Three other researchers formed a team, one of whom was Judith Heerwagen. According to Browning, Heerwagen was responsible for a lot of the early biophilia research, particularly the savannah hypothesis.

The project utilised an existing worker population, with known productivity, who were being moved from the old factory to the newly designed building which had a focus on daylight and extensive views of rolling prairie, grasses and water features. Initial productivity results were ‘messy’, but it was when the worker shifts were separated out in the results that the power of biophilia was seen. With the night time shift, there was no gain in productivity, while the daytime shift, who enjoyed the benefit of seeing outside, had significant gains. The swing shift had mixed results that were found to be seasonal. In summer, productivity was increased.

Browning’s research was followed by a series of similar research projects, two of which were influential to him. The California Energy Commission employed a researcher to study the effects of daylighting offices, retail outlets and schools. The results were perceived as very controversial showing highly significant positive numbers, to the extent that the Commission asked for a rerun. The results came back the same, but even stronger. The researcher realised though, that something

else was at play in the results other than daylight, and conducted a sub-experiment which extended the research to also focus on a Gold LEED building. The building already had large windows and plenty of daylight but the workers could only look out the windows if they turned. At the cost of $1000 per desk, the desks were angled so workers could see out the window to the trees' movement from their peripheral vision. Productivity increased 5-6% to a $2,999 per station per year return. The only variable had been the position of the desk.

Browning considered these two pieces of research the strongest on biophilia and workplace design. Coupled with Ulrich's earlier 1980's research on increased healing rates in hospitals with patients' exposure to views of nature, Browning was motivated to start a data base at the Rocky Mountain Institute on research supporting biophilia. A co-worker left the institute to study with Stephen Kellert at Yale, sharing the Rocky Mountain Institute data base, which led to the beginning of a conversation between Kellert and Browning on their shared desire to progress the emerging research into design. Ultimately this progressed to the Rhode Island conference and Browning's involvement with this and the subsequent book *Biophilic Design* (Kellert et al., 2008). "The book is really the first shot across the bow about biophilic design." Later, in looking at the design categories that were compiled in the book, Browning, along with a colleague, realised that these categories were unwieldy for designers. "They stepped back and saw that there were three clear design categories under which fourteen patterns sat."

The story continues when a client of Terrapin Bright Green and their partners, architects Cook-Fox, were constructing very high end residential living. The clients were looking at living spaces that were about human health and biophilic design and asked Browning to look at the science of biophilic design. This led to Browning writing *The Economics of Biophilia.* A team at Google got inspired by this report and asked for clear design patterns so Browning shared the fourteen patterns of biophilia with them. Google uploaded these into their design criteria for Google projects worldwide. These are specific to Google. Browning, with colleague Catie Ryan, decided to develop a white paper that examines these patterns and the science behind them. They gave me a sneak peek at what was coming.

I commented on how much these patterns and the concept of biophilic design resonated with me and Browning then recounted a story about applying for funding for the Rhode Island conference. He explained:

> "We had a whole bunch of foundations turn us down and the response literally was 'So you want us to fund research into the intuitively obvious?' 'Yes,' replied Browning, 'that is exactly what we want you to do.' So it took years to raise the funds. This is one of the reasons we did *The Economics of Biophilia* because we would talk to clients about it and the response we would get was 'that's very nice'. What we were trying to get them to understand was, yes that is very nice and there are huge economic implications to this."

He considers that the economic savings with hospitals is one of the major examples of the potential benefits of biophilic design applied.

Browning has had conversations with neuroscientists regarding human response to nature and the patterns of nature. He says that positive responses can be seen by looking at brain activity but that neuroscientists don't know why this occurs. One leader in health care and evidence based design Browning has spoken to considers that clinical certainty is not needed for something that is known and that it certainly does not have negative impacts.

> "The two strongest desires we have come across from office clients is the impact on stress relief and cognitive functioning. We are looking at reducing stress through biophilic design regardless whether the stress comes from the built environment or the job itself. We are also looking at improving cognitive functioning and general well-being. For us, in many cases, the whole point of getting into biophilic design was just asking this question of: ok how can we design spaces that really support people's well-being? Biophilic design is one way to really help that."

We discussed the questions of how much exposure to nature is needed to have an effect and how long would the effect last? Browning says that studies are revealing relatively short periods of only five minutes will have an effect but we both agreed that this must vary with people and their attention. He talked about how visual connection with nature is important but the impact can vary with the depth of the view, and whether there is movement that would gain a person's attention, especially in the peripheral vision. Again this comes back to the evolutionary survival response of needing an acute peripheral vision to see possible dangers coming from the side. Browning talked about the pleasure side of viewing nature,

citing Biederman's (2006) research which revealed that viewing certain patterns of nature fired our opioid receptors.

Browning thinks that while city parks are important, the focus needs to be on giving everybody access to a bit of nature every day and this can also occur in the little spaces. This is another of Browning's motivators: "Ok let's take it down to the scale of a commercial interior, let's take it down to the scale of the home, let's take it down to the scale of the house on the street."

Browning installed a green roof outside his office space in New York seven years before and "it was exotic but our neighbours started looking at it and now you walk out on our green roof and look around and you see green roofs all around. All over North America people are discovering their roofscapes and that they don't have to be asphalt and rock and mechanical."

We discussed research that had emerged regarding biophilic design and its influence on reducing rates of violence in both housing estates and prisons. Browning knew of some research carried out in a Portland hospital where pictures of nature and a window to the garden in one emergency waiting room had reduced both violence and stress. Browning's colleague had heard a story where they are putting pictures of trees on the security bins at a Chicago airport to reduce the stress of the whole security system:

> "You need place based solutions, sometimes the intervention might not be something alive. Fractal patterns are extremely effective and perforated shade screens that mimic natural light patterns. These shade screens can also protect plants that are on the inside."

Browning had read some research on the relationship between colours and creativity. Green was found to be the colour which led to the highest creativity. He mentioned research on fractal patterns and that the ratio people most positively responded to is the ratio associated with plants and the skyline of plants. We continued discussing the designs of biophilic initiatives and which were most effective. This led into a brief conversation about beauty and the importance of aesthetics in nature and in biophilic design.

I asked Browning what he saw as the future of biophilic urbanism. "Now more people live in cities than rurally for the first time in the history of the species and within a couple of decades it will be seventy percent. So, for me, that makes this

really, really important. The ability to get people out in nature is going to get harder. So it's how to get nature to everybody, not just the rich."

Browning grew up living in different locations around the world but mostly small villages where he spent a lot of time playing in nature. He recognises that this has changed for many children in the generation since.

Figure 5.6 Bill Browning on his green roof with the bee hive in New York

(Source Author)

****

Bill is a ground breaking researcher, fascinatingly knowledgeable with a passionate and inquiring mind. The conversation I had with Bill at their New York offices was one of the highlight meetings of my US journey. The learning I experienced in a few hours was exceptional, illustrating the knowledge and commitment that Browning has in this area. He introduced new concepts and deepened my thinking on others. When he mentioned the intuitive knowing he experiences and has witnessed with others, it resonated with me, and was the first time I had heard someone articulate this. I have heard so many people say that biophilic design makes sense that surely this reflects something felt at a deeper, intuitive level. This and other concepts and ideas that were mulling around in my head were brought to light and aired in this conversation.

Bill supports all his conversation with stories of research he has read or been involved with. He has researched through his own interest and in response to gaps in the literature or client need. Bill's creative thinking has been a significant part of the emergence of biophilic design but he also supports this by driving implementation through his company.

After the interview he took me out onto the green roof outside his office. It had been built as a trial and show piece and to provide the office workers with a green amenity, in line with Bill's design approach. They had noticed the number of bees attracted to the roof so had also installed a beehive. Bill pointed out the number of green roofs that the neighbouring buildings now also had installed. It was wonderful to see in the heart of Manhattan Island.

Table 5.4 Bill Browning

	Motivators and Drivers		
Stages of social movement	**Environmental**	**Social** (including emotional)	**Economic**
Emergence		Makes sense, intuitive knowing, supporting research, access to nature for all	
Coalescence		Reduce stress, improved cognitive functioning, increased productivity	Client interest
Any Identified Barriers			

Mary Rowe - New York-15/11/2013

Managing Director and Head

Global Initiative for Urban Liveability and Resilience

The Municipal Art Society of New York

Player	Arena	Strategy	Word	Connection to Nature
Mary Rowe	Civic	Activist	Majesty	Rural, adult

I had contacted Mary Rowe about a possible interview after reading a blog she had posted titled ‘Urbanophilia and the End of Misanthropy: Cities Are Nature’ (2013). Her article had prompted some deep reflection, presenting an interesting perspective.

She argues for self-organisation, supporting Jane Jacobs’ theories that cities are dynamic, living things. They are created by the people who live in them in a way to sustain and nurture them and this is called liveability. Rowe suggests that perhaps sometimes policy can get in the way of people’s innovation and resourcefulness. Good policies, though, should support these natural processes. But this made me think about the mechanistic, sterile hard-edged cities removed from nature which humans have constructed and why these have occurred? Have the city inhabitants been removed from nature themselves to such an extent that this has led to this approach to city design? Or has it been driven by economics? Is biophilic design being embraced so rapidly as part of self-organising and an innate desire to not only reconnect with nature but to save our cities from the crises that some are facing? Rowe suggests that small innovations come from productively adapting to challenges and this not only increases liveability but also increases resilience.

Rowe began our conversation by telling me about a New York resident who has mapped the vacant lots of New York and seen that they perform an ecological function in providing biological corridors. This introduced her thoughts about self-organisation and technology, a topic she is obviously passionate about. *“*Digital devices have enabled whole new approaches and there is a meshing going on between the sharing economy and people developing ‘apps’ and looking at digital ways to manifest those kind of connections. So that, in my view, strengthens the organic nature of the city because connection is becoming highly digitised as well as being spatial. It is a merging of worlds.”

We talked about the ‘bottom-up’ solutions with Rowe expressing how this is where she sees the solutions coming, not from high scale technological innovations that she reads about in resilience theory literature. *“*We can’t wait for these large scale investments, we need them, but the only way to get compliance in those and while we are waiting for them, is that we need to mobilise people on the ground to do smart things and be really resourceful*.”* Rowe calls these ‘hyper-local’ approaches which are about building social capital. Digital technologies are making this possible. *“*The ubiquity of technology is going to quite naturally enhance the speed at which cities become much more economical as far as energy consumption and in engaging people’s ingenuity and actually seeing the city differently. This is the good

thing about biophilia, it's a way of looking and a way of identifying assets in the city and finding ways to preserve and cultivate them.*"*

Again the conversation returned to what Rowe saw as the value of technology in uniting cities and biophilic design. *"*Technology is enabling us to see more. I don't think it is taking us away from nature, I think it is connecting us with it.*"* I mentioned that in my experience I perceived social technology as disconnecting people from their surroundings. Rowe agrees, so she clarified the type of use of technology she was talking about.

We discussed the creation of the many community gardens in New York. *"*They are occurring for all of it, for food, connection to nature, community, all of it.*"* Rowe told me about the growing number and different uses of these garden spaces. I asked her what she thought was driving the increase and she related a program she had seen on the Sharing Economy which suggested it was driven by scarcity and need. Rowe considers it is more than that, though. She talked about the spatial constraint of Manhattan being an island so she wonders if there is a *"*heightened recognition that there is an interdependency. We may be doing different things but we want to work in the same physical space. So there is a kind of meshing. So we want to garden together.*"* Both of us were intrigued by the understanding that scarcity, need, technology and interdependency were facilitating a change in the way we occupy our cities. *"*There is something all happening at once; there is kind of a confluence.*"* Somewhere biophilic design fits in here as well.

Rowe considers that one shift that has taken place is the recognition that the answers are urban. *"*The answers are to be found in the city.*"* We talked about the ideas of beauty in the city and organised complexity. *"*Landscape and topography can not only be beautiful, but also highly functional. People can want both.*"* Enabling policies can promote the function as well as the community, but where do they meet? *"*Bottom-up and top-down tends to meet around technology, around data. Data needs to be made available to the community so they can analyse it and put it to good use. It's about building urban literacy. Policies need to be transparent for community."

Rowe gave examples of solutions and innovations that have occurred where local communities have been given the information to enable their contribution. *"*These are hybrid solutions. It's merging creativity and expertise into social capital.*"* Rowe sees this as all about the culture of the city and is active in networking with global

cities. She advocates for urban innovation to be cultured locally, adaptive and supported by public policy and investment.

****

The conversation with Mary was fast paced and presented ideas from a different angle to what I had experienced. Her ideas around technology challenged my 'Luddite' thinking but in the premise of allowing and supporting social innovation through policy and information we were aligned. We both had faith in the 'wisdom of the masses'. There was a stir of excitement around her ideas and I was grasping to see where the interface was with my biophilic thinking. Mary had mentioned creativity as a component of social capital, and it is here that I think biophilia sits in our conversation: connecting people with nature fosters creativity.

Table 5.5 Mary Rowe

	Motivators and Drivers		
Stages of social movement	**Environmental**	**Social** (including emotional)	**Economic**
Emergence		Scarcity & need, recognition of interdependency	
Coalescence		Supporting policies, digital technology, social capital, innovation, food connection to nature, community.	
Any Identified Barriers			

The New York High Line

Early in my research, I had discovered biophilic projects that appeared to be particularly significant with reverberating impact, sometimes globally. The New York High Line was one of these projects, with a fascinating story of its creation. Although I could not arrange to meet with the co-founders of the High Line, I walked it three

times and talked with staff and other visitors. I also purchased the High Line field guide which details the history and creative stages of the walkway. This is a synopsis of the guide.

> The High Line was built in the early 1930's as a means of improving both congestion and safety on Manhattan's West Side. It elevated the railway freight line ensuring the continuity of being able to bring meat, milk and baking supplies into the city. It was nicknamed the "Lifeline of New York". Forty years later, freight rail began to decline and the last train used the line in 1980. The High Line then sat unused until gaining attention in the 1990's when property developers expressed interest in its demolition. By this time the High Line was a self-seeded landscape, with seeds brought by birds and blown from the near-by Hudson River.
>
> At a community hearing regarding the future of the High Line, local residents, Robert Hammond and Joshua David, discovered that there was nobody attending who was advocating for the retaining of the structure, so they quickly founded *'Friends of the High Line'* with the aim of preserving it. Able to rally other supporters, the next twelve years Hammond and David worked with New York's Mayor and the New York City Council to successfully preserve the High Line.
>
> The first section opened in 2009, with the second in 2011 and a third section in 2014. It is nearly two and a half kilometres long, with plantings reflecting the self-seeded landscape that grew when the trains stopped running. More than 300 varieties of perennials, shrubs, trees and wildflowers attract bees, butterflies, birds and other insects. In 2012, the High Line welcomed more than 4.4 million visitors.
>
> (Friends of the High Line, 2013)

Figure 5.7 The New York High Line

(Source Author)

I had the opportunity to walk the High Line in both autumn and early winter. Although numbers were less in the winter there was still a steady stream of walkers and activities. In conversations with fellow visitors, their appreciation of the High Line was apparent, especially with New Yorkers. One visitor did mention that surrounding rents had gone up for tenants, signalling to me evidence of people's willingness to pay for views of nature and/or proximity. Gentrification of the area had upset some long term residents who could no longer afford the rent.

Figure 5.8 Autumn on the High Line

(Source Author)

The staff loved working there and all who I spoke to were very happy with their job. The number of visitors was definitely growing.

Figure 5.9 High Line staff member

(Source Author)

This was a project that may not have come to fruition if two local champions had not attended a community meeting and also received community support for the idea.

Paley Park – New York

Browning had advised me to visit a small pocket park in New York located on 53rd Street in Manhattan. I visited two days after our conversation. As soon as I entered I was struck by the immediate transition from bustling streets to a place of peace, similar to stepping into a church. I was also struck by the biophilic features, many of which Browning had mentioned. The park has a waterfall, green ivy covered walls and a 'savannah effect' canopy of honey locust trees. The sight of the water was enhanced by the white noise of the water which blocked the street noises. Looking at the people quietly sitting there, it seemed apparent that most felt that same sense of peace and refuge. I was able to talk with the resident caretaker about people's responses and uses of the park, and my instincts were confirmed. The caretaker mentioned how many people "felt it was a place of refuge, where they could escape the city and sit peacefully. People come for lunch. It is an oasis from work where people relax and clear their mind so are in a better frame of mind when they return back to work. The sound draws people in. They also come for romance." He said meetings and interviews were also held here. "It feels safe."

Figure 5.10 Paley Park New York

(Source Author)

New York is a unique city. I had only two face to face interviews but both gave me a taste of what people relate to when they talk about the city: the strong sense of community that is present in the city. It is in this civic, community arena that initiatives are occurring such as the High Line and people choosing to green their own roof. It appears that in New York there is a high value on access to or views of nature for the wealthier, whereas scarcity and need for food drives the less wealthy to create community gardens, connecting with nature in this manner.

Jay Womack – Chicago-26/11/2013

Director, Landscape and Ecological Design
WRD Environmental, Inc.
The Chicago Center for Green Technology

Player	Arena	Strategy	Word	Connection to nature
Jay Womack	Industry	Implementation & Teaching	Inspired	Rural, young

Jay Womack is a director of the company WRD Environmental with ecological landscape design as his area. WRD Environmental is an ecological consulting firm that creates and fosters environmentally responsible urban landscapes. They design, install, manage and consult on projects and programs that conserve natural resources, promote sustainability, cultivate biodiversity and restore nature's balance.

Womack is also an Adjunct Professor at the Illinois Institute of Technology where he teaches in Landscape Architecture.

I asked him if he knew the word biophilia and was wonderfully surprised at his response. Not only was he aware of biophilic design but he taught it as a unit in his landscape architecture courses, espousing E.O. Wilson as one of the great thinkers of recent years who he is inspired by. Aldo Leopold's *Sand County Almanac* also had a big impact on Womack's thinking. It was through these readings and self-education that Womack has developed a deep understanding of biophilic design, "These concepts resonated with me." He had translated these understandings into course outlines for the landscape architecture students, as well as sustainable designs for clients.

His description of what he sought to convey to his students best describes his perceptions which have motivated him to advocate for biophilic urbanism:

> "When I start teaching the students I tell them right off the bat that I am going to take you on a ride that you are not going to believe, this is not going to be a course about landscape architecture, this is a course about ecology, ecological thinking, sustainable design and

> philosophy. By the time the course is over, they get it. Then I take them and show them projects I have worked on personally and how design is married with ecology, with storm water management, with creative structure. You can't just teach that out of a text book, you have to go see it, you have to smell it, you have to touch it, you have to feel it. You have to feel it in your heart; you have to feel it with your fingertips. I believe that a lot of our responsibility is to the earth and to the people and sometimes that does take a person who is more in touch with their heart, than with a pencil."

Strong in Womack's ethic is the message relayed by Aldo Leopold: "That a good landscape steward is not only someone who heals the earth but who also teaches others about how to heal and who shares that message. This is a huge part of what I stand for."

Womack considers that most landscape designers would not have heard of biophilic design; that landscape architecture does not teach ecology, it teaches design. "When the line from design into ecology is crossed, there is a whole different take on landscape architecture." He considers that for teaching professors to go back and think about a whole new design process can be a little daunting. Womack, though, through the nature of his being and personal interests has found landscape architectural design works best "if it goes beyond design and includes ecology".

While Womack considers Wilson defined biophilia admirably, he thinks people have "different interpretations" so has to consider what a client would understand. He finds that "regenerative design" is a term that people can relate to. For Womack sustainability is about using less of something but he argues that now we need to raise the bar and go above this to designs that give back. "We cannot continue to keep using small sustainable amounts, we have to utilise regenerative designs that begin to put something back." This has led Womack to landscape design utilising native landscape concepts and plants, rather than ornamental, as he has found they contribute to the landscape. "They rebuild the soil and biodiversity, they help to absorb water and sequester carbon dioxide."

Doing this as a landscape designer had a challenging beginning. Womack had struggled with people's perception of natives "as weedy, and indeed, if not treated correctly they can be like this. Typically people wanted neat, clear, crisp organised gardens." One major client took a chance on Womack's ideas and allowed him to plant natives in a previously very large turfed area. "After about six months

employees were going out into the area, eating lunch out there and coming to work happy. This is biophilic design." The project was viewed as a successful example.

He considers that "you need to get people excited about change, help them to approach it differently, before you can expect them to change". In Chicago, Womack thinks biophilic design is "borne out by architects because so much of biophilic design can be developed in a building's skin or an envelope or an interior. Whereas with landscape architecture it is a little bit more difficult as we are still being thought of as the step child of architecture." He does recognise that slowly there is an evolution of landscape architecture to be more important in developments. Developers are beginning to understand that "landscape architecture can assist in on-site water management".

Womack recounts the story of Mayor Daley's visit to Germany and how on his return, inspired by the German examples, he was determined to construct a green roof in Chicago. "This was in response to urban heat, but also for storm water management. Green roofs are now starting to be known a lot for air borne particles, air borne pollution that the plants will absorb, pick up and retain. I think the longevity is starting to become the life cycle analysis. They are being seen as a life cycle cost that is beneficial to a long term owner."

From the initial green roof that Mayor Daley instigated, Womack has witnessed the growth and momentum of the 'green' (as in nature and biophilic) movement. He considers that there "is now peer group pressure to be green and to care for the environment, that part of the motivation is not to be left behind. Clients now expect green. Great green projects have been getting acclaim, doors have opened for green projects and there are financial incentives."

Green and biophilic infrastructure has now proved to be successful in Chicago, not just Germany and Europe. "We have had to prove that things aren't just done in Europe. That they are happening here in the US and they work for the long haul. This is being recognised that these aren't bad ideas, they work. So it's now ok to write ordinances to enforce green initiatives."

Womack had a rural upbringing and has always loved to be outside. He says he "has always had the environment in his heart" and volunteers as a land steward.

****

The depth of Jay's connection and love of nature was apparent and I really enjoyed talking with him. He is a deep thinker and observer of nature and I admired how he

had translated his understandings into a framework that he could communicate with others. Indeed he felt very motivated to teach and share his insights at the same time being very aware of the challenges in potentially changing people's approach. When he recounted how he had needed to change people's perceptions from seeing natives as weedy, I thought how again aesthetics had risen as an issue. Yet here it was an issue where people thought a certain look was beautiful and another not. Jay had successfully challenged this and provided a landscape where people not only found beauty but also connection.

Table 5.6 Jay Womack

	Motivators and Drivers		
Stages of social movement	**Environmental**	**Social** (including emotional)	**Economic**
Emergence		Stewardship of nature	
Coalescence	Water management, rebuild soil, carbon sequestration, urban heat, air born pollution	Connecting people, increasing happiness, peer group image and recognition, successful projects	Beneficial over life cycle, financial incentives, successful projects
Any Identified Barriers		Different interpretations of biophilia, people perceptions'	

In my conversation with Womack he mentioned the visionary former Chicago mayor, Mayor Daley. Daley had a plan for a green belt through Chicago that was slowly taking shape, but is renowned for his implementation of a green roof on Chicago City Hall. It was after seeing green roofs on a visit to Germany that he was

inspired to bring them to Chicago primarily as a way of mitigating urban heat island effect prompted by a severe heat wave in which 700 lives were lost.

Although Mayor Daley had left office, I was fortunate to have an interview with the man who worked closely with him on the project, Michael Berkshire. Berkshire works in the Sustainable Development division for the City of Chicago. I had read a transcript of a presentation he had given about green roof policy following on from the construction of the Chicago City Hall green roof. So I felt I had a bit of background.

Michael Berkshire – Chicago-26/11/2013

Sustainable Development Division
City of Chicago

Player	Arena	Strategy	Word	Connection to nature
Michael Berkshire	Government	Policy	Calm	Rural, young

Berkshire continued the story of the Chicago City Hall's green roof, corroborating the fact that it was "in response to a heat wave we had and the associated brown out. I think over 700 people died. So with the Federal EPA, we were looking at ways to lower urban temperatures by green roofs. In a densely developed city it is one of the few ways that you can do this." This was supported by Mayor Daley's trip to Germany where he learnt extensively about green roofs. "We needed to see if it would work in our climate and our political environment." In 2000 the green roof was installed on Chicago City Hall. "It was a huge success. It's been very well received and very well covered by the media. I am just amazed at the people that visit here and know about it. It has become our icon for our sustainability movement."

Figure 5.11 Michael Berkshire and Chicago City Hall green roof (in winter so more brown)

(Source Author)

In the early 2000s the City was negotiating with private developers to incorporate green roofs as much as possible. Mayor Daley became "frustrated with the lack of progress", so employed Berkshire to write a policy to formalise the initiative. Since June 2004 they have had the sustainable development policy which means that if someone is receiving any type of assistance from the City, whether zoning or financial, all are required to contain sustainable elements in their project. The Mayor "was adamant that if we were going to provide them with something then they needed to provide us with something". The requirement began with green roofs and has expanded to include LEED certification.

Chicago City wanted to investigate the success of their policy initiatives so in August 2010 employed satellite imagery which showed that Chicago had 359 green roofs totalling five and half million square feet. They also wanted to investigate why those green roofs were built:

> "Were they built because of the policy? Were they built because it was voluntary? Was it because of the storm water ordinance? Or was it because of our green permitting program? What we found out was that 82% of those roofs were due to the sustainable development policy. So that has been our main driver. We are assuming that many of our LEED buildings are because of the

> policies as well. We have found that regulation has been more effective than incentive. The stick rather than the carrot."

Berkshire concludes this may be due to the fact that they were early adopters of green roof technology. He remembers that in 2004, when they were holding focus groups to discuss green roofs, "no one knew what a green roof was and there were a lot of misconceptions. It was seen as risky to the development community." This is why Berkshire thinks regulation worked better than incentive.

They use TIF (Tax Incremental Financing) financing a lot. The central loop in downtown Chicago was covered by this and here Chicago City offered existing buildings a fifty percent match for installation costs for a green roof. This incentive only had one taker.

Another existing incentive is the green permitting program. If a building qualifies as a green building then the building permit may be reviewed and approved in thirty days or less. A green roof helps qualify towards a green building. Another successful ordinance that has been in play since 2008 is their storm water ordinance. Every project over a certain size has to submit a storm water plan that proves that they are either keeping a half inch of rain on site or they are increasing the permeability of the site by fifteen percent. Again a green roof helps achieve this. There is also a density bonus which means that a developer may build a bigger building if they put a green roof on it.

Berkshire mentioned another 'tool' called the 'Open Space' requirement for new residential units. They either have to provide new open space or they have to pay an open space impact fee. If they build a green roof that is accessible to residents, they get credit on that fee. He explains the success of this program towards green roof installation as developers see that they get credit plus they see the green roof as a nice amenity for their residents.

I asked him what response there was to all these policies from developers and he recounts early times:

> "One developer when he came in was literally spitting mad. Literally spitting at me. Probably 3 to 4 years after the policy was implemented one of the most well respected zoning attorneys saw me one day and said. "You know before every time I saw you my blood pressure rose because I knew you would be asking for all this stuff that my clients wouldn't want to do. Now I am always very

> excited to present to you, as now, it's become a way of doing business in Chicago."

Berkshire explains that this has extended beyond developers to customers who inquire about what green features a building incorporates. "It is no longer 'what the hell is a green roof', it is 'does your building have a green roof?' or 'Are you going to be LEED certified?' Sustainable, green policies are a way of doing business in Chicago". Berkshire considers that once you get people asking for these things, then the development community starts paying attention.

I asked Berkshire why he thought people were asking for these things and he responded with an anecdotal story he thought demonstrated people's attitude and illustrated their desire for "something beyond the label of green".

The Magnificent Mile Story

At 900 North Michigan Avenue, prime real estate in Chicago on the Magnificent Mile, there is a mixed use building with both commercial and residential. A few years ago they wanted to convert some office space to residential. The policy required the developers to provide open space or pay the open space fee. The developers decided to build a green roof garden that was accessible to all residents as a way of providing open space rather than pay the fee. They did this on the setback car park roof that was on the opposite side to Lake Michigan. The building is surrounded by other high rises and the developers received so much positive feedback that they voluntarily vegetated another larger carpark roof nearby. The developers then discovered that the spaces, particularly the office spaces, were renting faster on the green roof view side than the lake view side. Ultimately, they vegetated the setback roof on the lake side as well so that 100% of the roof top is vegetated. This had started with the developers taking advantage of an incentive to provide open space rather than pay a fee, then receiving positive feedback followed by economic benefits.

Where there is research and data for economic benefits in installing a green roof, Berkshire will use them. He cites the faster healing rates in hospitals as one he has explained to new health care facility developers. There is recognition that this is helpful in supporting the policies and incentives. Interestingly, he thinks "there should be more stories like the Magnificent Mile as he finds the economic argument harder to make because payback time can be slow".

Millennium Park was an unattractive open parking lot and train station where commuter lines ended. A roof was built over this and a 25 acre park has been established on the roof top. Berkshire cites from memory a study that measured financial benefit from tourism and the huge amount of real estate development, especially residential, that has occurred surrounding the park. He thinks “the gain was 3-5 billion dollars of economic benefit. Also the Plaza around the bean sculpture is now where everybody goes.”

Figure 5.12 Millenium Park

(Source Author)

Every summer there is a tour open to any one called Great Places, Great Spaces. On the tour people are able to get access to spaces that are normally not accessible. One of these spaces is Chicago City Hall’s green roof and the tour is always fully booked.

Berkshire considers that to be globally competitive, the city has to be liveable and that frequently liveability is being equated with sustainability. He finds visitors are often surprised at how beautiful Chicago is, how green it is, with all the trees and all the planted median strips. Berkshire says they are currently revisiting their 1990s goals for the amount of open space they wanted to achieve in Chicago. With the increased density they are no longer trying to retain the goal of 2 acres open space per 1,000 residents in all areas of the city so the new framework they are looking at is providing connectors between existing open spaces. These would be pedestrian and bike friendly, incorporating storm water management as well. Berkshire thinks “people will choose a path that has more flowers or trees. I don’t think they are consciously doing it, it’s just something that I think most people are drawn to. People just get an enjoyment that they are not even thinking about. They just

innately, or ‘biophilically’ choose it. Though in summer it may offer more shade so just be more pleasant.”

Berkshire then moved to talking about the Chicago City Hall green roof and what it meant to him:

> “For me, to be able to go on the roof top… it is quiet, or quieter, and it changes with every season and I love going up there in different seasons to find out what’s blooming. I come from a rural background but consider myself a very urban person and love cities. But there is still this calming effect.”

Even in cities he acknowledges that he needs access to some form of nature as he enjoys the calming effect nature has. This progressed the conversation to the nature versus nurture debate and whether, once people have experienced significant nature, they feel the necessity of continuing access and exposure. For Berkshire, air quality is important and so he chooses to live by the lake. He explained that he had noticed cultural differences in people’s need for nature:

> “In some particular cultural enclaves the residents tended to pave front and back yards and not have gardens. Some neighbourhoods, particularly one Hispanic area, has little open space and at a public meeting for the residents which I had attended, the recognition was there of the health issue, particularly for children, of the lack of outdoor areas.”

Berkshire noted that Mayor Daley was born on Arbour Day with a strong connection with trees and during his time in office he had seventy-five miles of median strips planted with over half a million trees. One of the things Berkshire admired was Daley’s commitment to “not ever asking the private sector to do something that the public sector was not willing to do”. Daley needed to ensure that green roofs were viable in Chicago so not only was the roof of City Hall vegetated but a dozen other public building roofs were also. Different green roof technologies were used as part of the trials. Berkshire thinks this was a very ‘smart move’ and he often took concerned developers to the City Hall roof top to show them it worked.

It is obvious that Chicago’s biophilic initiatives are very policy driven. Berkshire mentioned how Portland, on the west coast, has been driven by grass roots and incentives and is only now looking at policy. He recognises that they have been very successful though without policy and have more square footage of green roofs than

Chicago. Chicago has more green roofs by number. Berkshire also perceives Chicago as being different because of Mayor Daley. “In regard to implementing green roofs, Daley said ‘I want this to happen, so figure out how to do it’. In comparison to Toronto, Chicago did very little research; they just ‘did it’.”

****

When I arrived for my interview with Michael at Chicago City Hall, the first thing we did was visit the green roof. This was quite an emotional moment for me. I had heard so much about this roof and it was hard to believe I was actually there, standing on it. It was snowy and did indeed look like an ill-kempt weed lot. My own judgement of aesthetics caught me by surprise. It was the beginning of winter so of course the plants looked dead.

Michael was a pleasure to listen to with his clear narrations of the history of policy in Chicago, the challenges and the successes. His recounting of the attitude he faced in first implementing green roof policy led me to admire his fortitude and conviction. He was a champion, or was he a hero? If champions face adversity do they then become heroes?

It was wonderful to hear of all the ideas and policy initiatives that Chicago had implemented; the tool kit as Michael called it. But what made it more special was to hear how well it was going, how accepted and now expected these biophilic initiatives had become. The Michigan Mile story stuck in my head. So much in this interview demonstrated the research I had been reading. It was inspiring and encouraging and it appeared due to a few good leaders stepping into the social movement and giving it a good push.

Table 5.7 Michael Berkshire

	Motivators and Drivers		
Stages of social movement	**Environmental**	**Social** (including emotional)	**Economic**
Emergence	Urban heat reduction, storm water management	Urban heat related deaths	Associated cost of heat crisis
Coalescence	Successful trials	Policy - regulations Acceptance and desire, innate enjoyment of nature	Policy- incentives Community desire, decreased health costs, increased tourism, real estate development
Any Identified Barriers		Slowness of adoption, perceived risks by developers, initial anger	Slow payback time

Birgit Siber – Toronto-22/11/2013

Principal

Diamond Schmitt Architects

Player	Arena	Strategy	Word	Connection to nature
Birgit Siber	Industry	Implementation	Connected	Rural, young

Siber is a Toronto based architect who was pioneering in indoor green walls. She has “always had a passion for plants and how they might be able to be integrated into buildings so I had one ear open for what is happening”. The University of Guelph in Toronto were doing research on how plants can cleanse air in connection with programs for the International Space Agency. “What was interesting to me was that they were studying this for space travel in extreme environments and yet it was applicable to us in our day to day lives because people spend so much time indoors and away from plants. In Toronto it is a staggering 90-95% of their time away from plants.”

There was a project in Toronto to merge Humber College and Guelph University. The venture was to be housed in a purpose built large scale building on the college’s campus. Siber was invited to consult on the design. The thought was to bring something of Guelph to the college site. Siber went to visit the scientists researching the living walls at Guelph. The walls they were trialling were small and unimpressive. The scientists advised her to not even try to integrate this into her building. Contrarily, when Siber produced a visual rendering of a possible living wall, she found that the steering team for the project, even the most conservative, “were intrigued, even compelled by the idea”. Siber and her team of architects were stunned by the resonance and universal appeal they encountered. She thinks the “notion of having plants brought indoors on a large scale resonates. I think there is something fundamental and primal about being attracted to them.”

Siber and her team took an idea and expanded it, suggesting a living wall thirty feet wide and fifty feet high. She refused to make it smaller or to do a trial but wanted to “go for it”. Although at this stage Siber knew the steering team had not given approval but only agreed to consider it, she was determined to stay ahead in any questions or issues they presented to her. This made the path smooth for consideration to transition to approval. Also, as the amalgamation of the university and college was new, it needed advertising, and the render of the potential living wall Siber had completed was used in the promotional materials. “The university was receiving many enquiries and interest as to where this wall was, which further invigorated the argument in support for building it. It received approval and $400,000 to construct it.” Siber appreciates the risk they took, but she also appreciates “that I was in the right place at the right time. I just had to hold the image and things seemed to flow. It had an energy of its own.”

The wall was installed in 2004 and has enjoyed a fantastic response. “Students gravitate to it, sitting around to work and talk.” Siber’s architectural company has

found many of their clients are interested in the concept of the living walls, often visiting the one at the college. She observes:

> "The clients will find ways to finance a wall, even when they were having to cut costs in every other way. They were very reluctant to give up the notion of this living wall as it not only provides a beautiful feature but actually cleans their air, provides some evaporative cooling. Actually in the large atriums it provides some acoustic attenuation and you have the white noise of the trickling water."

Figure 5.13 The Guelph Humber indoor biofilter green wall

(Image courtesy Nedlaw Living Walls)

Siber was keen to explain the unique function of this living wall, and the others she has since built. The wall removes volatile organic compounds from the air utilising the technology undertaken by the scientists working on the space agency program at the University of Guelph. One of the scientists received a fellowship to commercialise his research and enable him to construct living 'biofilter' walls. The scientist, Dr Alan Darlington, spent time on the living wall construction and how the wall could support the plants hydroponically in a vertical plane with air moving

through the plant root system. In a two layered system, he was able to place the plants with their roots in a position so that the air could be pushed through them and the water into a cavity behind and up into the mechanical system for circulation throughout the building. There is no toxic waste as the volatile organic compounds are removed through the plants' biological processes. The hydroponic aspect facilitates the biofilter process far more than potted plants.

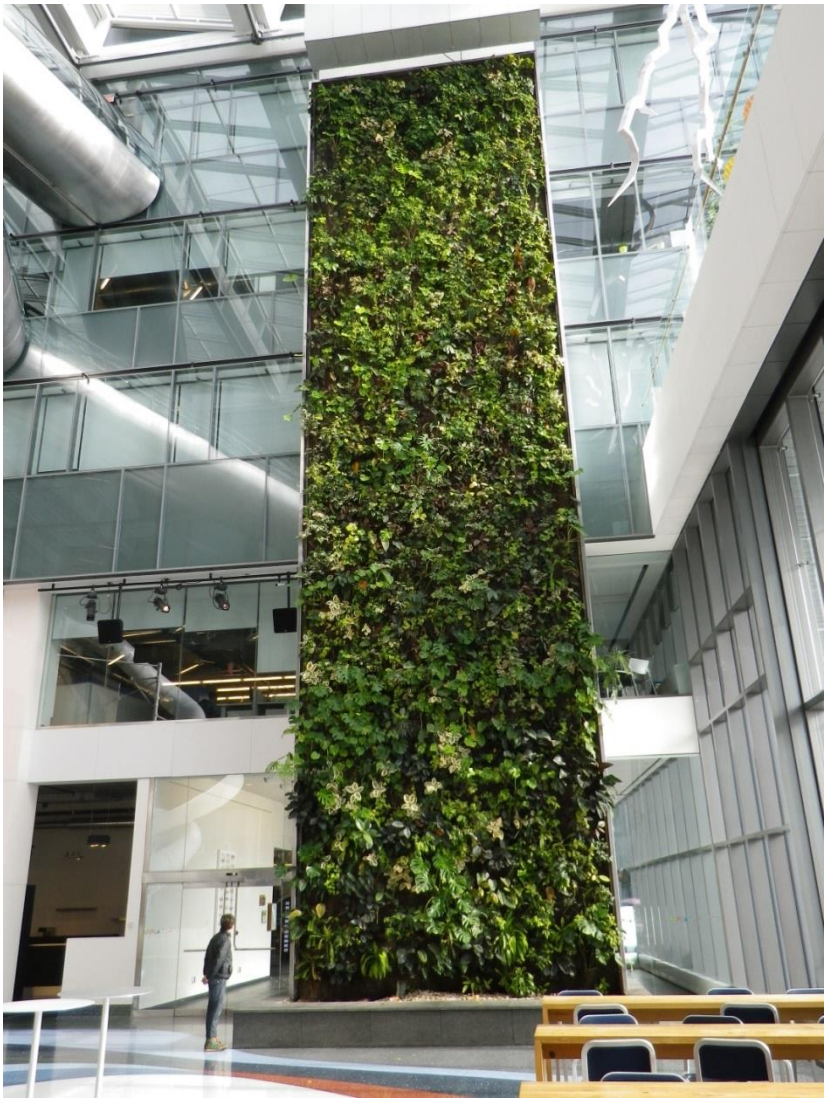


Figure 5.14 Corus Quay indoor biofilter green wall

(Source Author)

She feels the walls work on so many levels, and is *"*fascinated by how many benefits this integrated approach to plants in a building can actually achieve*".* Since

its installation another fourteen biofilter living walls have been constructed in North America. The prime motivator for her clients varies but Siber clarifies:

> "I definitely think having a large scale feature that says we are 'green' is up there; that we are definitely doing the right thing and trying to provide and endorse green technology. I think it is a good poster child as it were for green initiatives. There are so many sustainable features in a building that we don't see. The clients also want to be part of a very interesting way of bringing plants into a building that delivers many benefits. The ability to deliver better air quality enhances the ability of people to focus, be more productive and it probably encourages less absenteeism."

There is a huge problem in North America with indoor air quality and sick building syndrome and the indoor living walls help rectify that. The field studies of a lot of the larger indoor walls are indicating that eighty-five percent of volatile organic compounds are removed from the air so it is of the same quality as outdoor air.

Beyond the beauty and aesthetics of the living walls, Siber thinks "there is something more than beauty going on. I think it is just tied right to our cores, that we need that connection to plants. We have created such an artifice around ourselves that it is becoming more difficult to be in those kind of settings." She wonders if not being around nature so much enables people to recognise how much they need it.

Siber grew up in a cottage in the mountains where she lived outdoors except to eat and sleep.

****

In Birgit I had met another leader who saw an opportunity and made it happen. She also was very connected to nature and had a love of plants. Birgit's living wall stories presented a depth of personal understanding of a primal resonance with nature which she witnessed with her clients and which I had also witnessed in my interviews. It was this that seemed to drive the compulsion both by the committee and the public to accept the first trial living wall at Guelph-Humber University. It was also interesting to hear of an initiative different to green roofs and the idea of indoor biofilter living walls fascinated me. It brought in another worthy benefit to the growing list.

Table 5.8 Birgit Siber

	Motivators and Drivers		
Stages of social movement	**Environmental**	**Social** (including emotional)	**Economic**
Emergence	Indoor living, air quality	Passion for plants, indoor disconnect from plants	
Coalescence	Multiple benefits	Resonates with people, aesthetics	Green image, multiple benefits, productivity, less absenteeism
Any Identified Barriers			

Judith Heerwagen – Seattle-06/12/2013

HPGB Program Expert

Office of Federal High-Performance

Green Buildings

US General Services Administration

Affiliate Assistant Professor

University of Washington

College of Built Environments

Department of Architecture

Player	Arena	Strategy	Word	Connection to nature
Judith Heerwagen	Academia & Government	Research & publications	Calming	Wilderness, young

Heerwagen and I began the conversation agreeing that much was happening in the biophilic design movement. She mentioned that *Biophilic Design* has increasing sales. This book, she feels, was an impetus for a lot of the current interest in biophilic design, but it didn't happen right away. "It's been a gradual thing that as more people become interested in it, it sparks a little bit of competition to know more and do more, use it. I think that is part of it." I explained that my research so far had uncovered definite themes in what is motivating this interest and Heerwagen responded:

> "The thing that is really interesting is how inter-disciplinary this is. It is cutting across design professions and academics' interest. You have landscape architects, psychologists, architects, urban designers. This is one of the more interesting aspects of this. It is not led by a particular profession and it is not clear who the key spokespeople are. They come from different backgrounds and are looking at it in very different ways. There are so many ways to interpret what biophilia means and how to do it. I think this makes it a very rich design palette. There is no standard that says this is how you should do it."

Heerwagen says there are people who are saying how biophilia should be a credit with the LEED rating system. She argues "How do you know if something is biophilic, you have to have some way of saying that you need to do this or that, and I find that very hard to do. I have been asked in the past to look at what a biophilia credit would include but I don't think you can use it in an abstract way; you can use it in a literal way. There are so many different ways to interpret what it is and how to do it. It is not just a green roof or not just a garden." Heerwagen said it is about design of the space and utilising things like the sense of prospect and refuge: long distance views from a sense of protection. "They don't need to be green nature spaces." Prospect and refuge were exemplified in the concrete building we were meeting in and Heerwagen pointed this out, also commenting that some people would not think of it as biophilia. She does think the most powerful elements are the natural ones: the greenery as well as sensory fluctuations. "If there was a vase of flowers on our table it would make this meeting feel very different. And there is research on flowers that, believe it or not, cause you to make a smile that engages your eyes and you know it is a true smile because of the muscles it engages in your face." Heerwagen explains that people don't express this same smile when they are given an orange. She considers there is something about flowers that is deeply

important to us and that they make us happy. Heerwagen explains that this has a very good biological reason due to our evolutionary past where flowers were a sign of resources in our future; they produce nuts and fruits that we can eat. We discussed the aspects of aesthetics then, why do we find flowers pretty, or particular views? Heerwagen explains:

> "Things are inherently beautiful themselves and they are beautiful to us because they present things that are useful to us. We like views of a golf course. It gives us a long distance view. And if we look at this from an evolutionary psychology perspective, that really is telling us about time and space. We can see things that are coming over the horizon. We can see a storm coming, or a dangerous animal. We can see in advance and plan for it, so there is a real evolutionary advantage to be able to see and not be seen, to feel protected. These are the sort of views you find on calendars."

Where people find things beautiful, Heerwagen always looks for the reason. She suggests that people find things beautiful because they are useful, and beauty attracts us to things. So innately we are attracted to useful things that may aid survival. We discussed Paley Park in New York which I had found beautiful, agreeing it is a special place and that it offers the sense of refuge and enclosure and protection. Heerwagen says that she thinks these features are particularly powerful there.

I mentioned my interest in improving mental health through biophilic design in prisons and Heerwagen had read some research which had revealed that prisoners with a view had better health. The researcher was influenced by Ulrich's studies of hospital healing rates and wondered if this could also occur in a prison.

I brought up my perception so far of there being multidisciplinary drivers for biophilic design, and of them not necessarily being 'biophilic' per se but often as a response to a city's crisis. Heerwagen responded:

> "It is not driven by biophilia but I think people say that if we need to do this, can we do it in a way that is not ugly? That actually adds something nice to the city. Using a swale rather than a concrete surface. Any time you can gain multiple benefits with one approach, I think you have really gained a lot. Biophilia can be used to enhance the attractiveness of features that otherwise would be very ugly. Roofs are very ugly. When you are in a building a lot of times you

look out at a roof and the HVAC system. Using a green roof for rainwater purposes as well as enhancing the appearance and beauty of a place; I think there is the sense that if you can do it for one reason, why not do it for more and design it in a way that has multiple benefits. In terms of the drivers, I think for buildings anyway, a lot driving this are actually the design firms. They have not been very interested in this for a long time and I think they are beginning to see it as a competitive advantage. There are a couple of very large firms in the US who are beginning to say: How can we do this? How can we integrate biophilia into our approaches? How can we do this in a strategic way? How can we really think about our designs through this lens? Everyone knows them and I think once they begin to do this…".

Heerwagen then explains what happened with LEED and the sustainability movement was that cities began to require LEED certification for their buildings, not all but enough, and architecture firms began to realise they were at a competitive disadvantage if they didn't know LEED requirements. So they started getting their people trained and then the LEED system took off very dramatically once that happened.

"And I really think that's going to happen with biophilic design. I think there are several big firms that are beginning to do this. They design buildings that get a lot of attention. Once buildings get a lot of attention then clients are going to want to have their folks design them. And if you can get them to integrate this with sustainability, most of the big firms now really take this seriously, then you get the double benefits. I hate to say it but a lot of the LEED buildings are not very attractive for the people. I am focussed on the people. Sustainability is a human benefit, biophilia is a human benefit. A lot of the LEED buildings are just focussed on technology and energy and water savings. A current topic of discussion is whether sustainability is creating buildings that are so technological and kind of grey in terms of people; that we have gone too far in the technology without paying attention to the human component and biophilia is a way then to begin to address the human factors. I think it is a natural component of sustainability that has not been adequately recognised. It is not just about technology."

Heerwagen has done evaluations of several very high level LEED buildings, certified as Gold or Platinum, and some, she comments, have had about the worst ratings for comfort and satisfaction she has ever seen in buildings from a human perspective. One was described by an occupant as looking like a beautiful corpse. It didn't have any sense of life or something that softened the edges of technology. Figuring out how to integrate, and how to do the biophilia is the key. Indoor plants may be problematic, so how do we do the biophilia really well? How do we capture the essence of biophilia? She thinks Bill Browning has some good ideas for this. We can use fractal patterns, light and colour, design in abstracted ways. This should be looked at, not as an afterthought but as an integral part of the design from the beginning. "We are going to do sustainability, but we are going to do biophilic sustainability. I think you get a very different approach and a very different attitude if you start right from the start. Not use it to beautify your building but use it as an integral part of your strategy."

Heerwagen thinks there are lots of approaches and the palette is virtually unlimited in terms of using some of the already standard features such as colour, pattern, texture and light. The idea is to use it all in a more biophilic way that is derived from natural images and imagery. What impact does nature have on us and how do we integrate those positive benefits into a building? She sees that an understanding of biology is needed as well as an understanding of design. "Biologists don't understand building design and designers don't have the biological background. It's really hard to make the connection. So there are not many examples at the building level, it is more at the product level. Larger scale is harder." Traditionally, landscape architecture has been about making the building look good after construction, but now it is positioning the plants so it looks good from inside the building. Landscape architects need to come in right at the beginning.

Heerwagen can understand that sometimes there is a 'push back' from people who have been implementing biophilic initiatives such as green roofs purely for function for some time. Now it comes under a 'new-fangled term'. There are others asking "Why should we invest in this? What are the economic advantages?" This is always an issue too. Heerwagen questions if decision makers who invest are paying attention to the economics. These are the ones needing to be influenced. Heerwagen wonders if Browning's paper *The Economics of Biophilia* was put in front of decision makers whether they would believe it. Developing a believable case with good examples and stories would help. Even sustainability is still a hard sell in some areas because people think it may cost more, which it doesn't have to.

This is why she thinks biophilia may get a push back in areas. It is just another new idea the design world is trying to sell. It needs to be integrated into policy and people in different areas need to talk. The benefits cross over into different fields and recognition and integration of this needs to happen.

Heerwagen thinks to some extent there is a problem with the term biophilia. “It sounds like a fad. It is a much more serious topic than it seems to be with this word.” She considers E.O. Wilson’s book was wonderful, though, as the intention was to really look at how connected we are to the natural world.

The benefits of our connection with nature can be explored across age groups, especially with children. The benefits children get from connection with the natural world as opposed to a sterile, urban environment have been looked at. This can be explored further through the life cycle from young right through to the elderly. She thinks that there should be a greater focus on the benefits to people. These benefits are so powerful and can be followed through the life cycle. Heerwagen really wishes we could call this something other than biophilic design; it really is this intrinsic connection to nature that is so powerful. There are so many ways to touch on this. “The human benefit recognition is what is really needed to pull it together in a way that everybody will understand.” At this point policy makers need to decide that we just have to do this. It hasn’t been integrated. The benefits may be different for everybody.

We discussed how people are willing to pay more for views of green. Heerwagen intriguingly suggests that this really is illogical. Why pay more for exactly the same apartment with a view when you can pay less?

> “In New York they also pay for views of the sky. If people wanted to maximise their utility they would find a way of doing this the least expensive way as possible. And we know they don’t do this. They are buying pleasure. They are buying prestige and things that have nothing to do with the basic utility and functionality of the apartment. A lot of the biophilia is about the hedonic value of space. It is illogical, if we were maximising our cost benefit ratio we would never do this. Which shows the real power of biophilia, quite frankly. We will pay more and there is good economic evidence, so we can see there is value other than money.”

I recounted the Chicago Michigan Mile story of people paying more for views of a green roof over lake views and it is these stories that Heerwagen says need to get

out there. “There was economic value to the building owners but hedonic value to the tenants.” Heerwagen talked about the huge development that the company Amazon is doing in Seattle. Land is so valuable that Amazon is occupying all they can with buildings and losing the opportunity to put in any green amenities or even more street trees, anything that enhances the naturalness of the space.

Heerwagen mentioned a story of when she had been giving a presentation on biophilic design to a big design company. She had been presenting the accumulating evidence and one woman asked “Why do we need to study this? We already know this?” Heerwagen responded “You are absolutely right but there are a lot of people who don’t believe it until you do provide the evidence.” The woman replied “But we know this intuitively! We know these things are good for us, we are attracted to these things, so why are we spending all this money on research when we should be spending it on doing it?” Heerwagen thought this was a good point. This is the gap, between researchers wanting to prove it and designers just wanting to do it. “So the question is why do we need the evidence? But you always have designers who are trying to prove to their clients that this is worth doing and the only way they are going to do that is to show that it has economic or linked economic benefits. So the design world is in need of the evidence at the same time they are just wanting to do it. If they had their way a lot of them would be doing it much more but they have to convince their clients.”

Some investors respond with a “let’s just do it” and others say “this is nuts”. But Heerwagen doesn’t think this should be seen as something different. It shouldn’t be that we want to do this biophilic thing; it should be that this is the way we design. It is as if biophilic design is talked about as an add-on rather than an integral part of what is just done. She thinks people do understand that having a pleasing place is better than having a place that turns people off, or they don’t want to come to or stay in. Heerwagen thinks most clients would recognise this and that biophilia should not even be mentioned. “They don’t need to say ‘we want to do biophilic design’, we want to do great design. And biophilia should be part of the pallet of what great design is.” Somehow biophilia has been seen as an add-on and it should never be seen this way. Heerwagen recounted a story to illustrate this point:

> “A Federal building was being constructed on the site of a river that had been modified by Army engineers to become a canal. The designers wanted to connect the building to the original landscape, so they looked at what the river used to be and used this as their theme. This became their mission. They would have liked to have

had an interior stream through the building, but compromised with running a stony river bed throughout with patterns of a winding river on the glass. They have put some trees in there. The concept was never questioned, no one said it would cost too much. The building has won design awards.

The same design firm has also done some work with a children's hospital taking a similar approach. They have used themes of nature and animals. It was not sold as anything different. Hospitals are stressful places so it was about answering what can we do? How can we create a place that is interesting and pleasant and makes you want to be here? This is a firm that is taking this stuff really seriously and again it becomes part of how they design. Not an add-on, not a biophilic add-on."

Modern architecture closes off buildings, making them sterile with the emphasis on function rather than people. The building is a technological feat, not a habitat. I described the many building designs I had seen in my world travels, in the less developed countries. These were designed for function and to be practical but I had found them very beautiful as well. Heerwagen suggests that this was because they were very connected to the natural environment, conveying a sense of being in nature rather than apart from nature. Cities do not convey this same sense, but interiors could very much be designed in a different way.

Our discussion then diverged to why some people are more attracted to nature than others, or seem to need it more. Heerwagen also thinks it is to do with where you grow up. She spent all her youth outdoors, most of the day was outside. "Being inside was torture for me. This is part of the problem with young people now. They don't get the opportunity to be challenged by being outside. I would think people with an interest in biophilia would have had this connection with nature. I think there is an interest from young designers in this topic. Things like the farmers markets can connect them." We discussed Seattle and Portland and their easier connection to nature than places like New York.

Again our flowing conversation took a digression as I mentioned some recurring themes from previous interviews, such as the links between creativity, the open mind, connectivity, social innovation, self-organising systems, all helping build social

capital. Heerwagen jumped on this asking how do we connect this to biophilia? She thinks it is an intriguing idea that makes a whole lot of sense. “Can we design biophilia in a way that actually enhances social connectivity? Most of it is thought of at an individual experiential level. Can biophilia be used to enhance the social aspects of space? If we had the biophilic Rhode Island conference in the middle of New York, would it have been the same? Even though we didn’t go outside a lot I intuitively think that it would have been very different in how people interacted and the ideas that they got. I haven’t got any proof of this but being surrounded by forest rather than inside a hotel must have made a difference. There is evidence for the fact that if you are in a positive mood you are more likely to be creative. Creative discussion is a really important part of something like that.”

Heerwagen thought it would be interesting to research the difference between two groups given the same task, one group put in nature and the other a windowless building. Heerwagen laughs: “But then why do we have to prove this when we already intuitively know it!” I mentioned that a recurring theme had been the need to tap into this intuitive knowing, to put aside assumptions and approach things with an open mind. Immersion in nature can aid this. Another strongly recurring theme in the interviews has been aesthetics. Heerwagen agrees.

Her word was ‘calming’ but she also finds she de-stresses, she doesn’t think when she is in nature. “I just enjoy the sights and sounds and I am not ruminating about anything, I am just experiencing it. There is a calmness and a sense of emptying the mind. There is a sense of relief. It is physiological as well as psychological.”

Figure 5.15 Judith Heerwagen

(Source Author)

****

My conversation with Judith was exceptional. Her depth and knowledge of biophilia and the issues involved was profound and illuminating, especially since she had been part of the core group at Rhode Island and an editor of the resulting book. Our discussion flowed freely, sometimes jumping themes as we explored the concepts together. I thought I would be fortunate to have an hour with her, yet we sat together for two hours. Talking with Judith at this stage in my journey I also realised the amount I had learnt and the amount I was able to share, so it was not always one sided. She was interested in what I had learnt and was quick to pick up on concepts and discuss them further. It was very rewarding. I felt we were able to discuss biophilia and biophilic design at a depth I hadn't encountered before.

Judith was very aware that the term biophilia was not necessarily the driver for biophilic design, that it was frequently happening in response to a trigger or crisis. It was interesting that she struggled with the term biophilic design, concerned it may isolate the concept to being a 'fad'. I tend to agree, yet I also think that some umbrella term is needed for what is happening, something that can unite and integrate the various disciplines.

Again the multiple benefits emerged as a major motivator in implementation. It was refreshing to focus on Judith's main interest, which was the human factor. Aesthetics and the evolutionary connection to beauty were discussed with Judith, providing further insights. This concept intrigues me and is something I would like to explore further. The fact that a building may be 'green' in an environmental sense such as a LEED certified building, yet lack beauty and be unsustainable on the human aspect, demonstrated the importance of the aesthetics to me.

The theme of immersion in nature aiding creativity which flows to a more open mind (drop all assumptions), social innovation and connectivity which in turn builds social capital is a deeper aspect that has repeatedly emerged in some of my conversations with social thinkers. I find this very interesting and sense that there is a common thread of awareness of this, while at the same time a grappling to articulate it clearly. The intuitive knowing of biophilic concepts first raised by Bill Browning in New York was repeated throughout the conversation and I think this awareness is a connection between myself and those I am conversing with. There is a common tacit understanding and language.

Table 5.9 Judith Heerwagen

	Motivators and Drivers		
Stages of social movement	**Environmental**	**Social** (including emotional)	**Economic**
Emergence	Multiple benefits & integration	Inherent responses to nature, aesthetics, multiple benefits & integration	
Coalescence	Integration of biophilia and technology	Rippling effect, interdisciplinary, rich design pallet, addressing human factors, integration of technology and sustainability	Iconic, competitive design firms
Any Identified Barriers	Push back against term, lack of integration, seen as an add on	The term biophilia, lack of integration, seen as an add on	What are the advantages?, lack of integration, seen as an add on

I was interested to understand how the biophilia hypothesis book had progressed to the next popular publication, *Biophilic Design*: *The Theory, Science, and Practice of Bringing Buildings to Life*. In the available research and publications this was the missing link, the untold story. Kellert and Heerwagen in the preface and acknowledgements in the book do state that the book resulted from a three day meeting, but not why and how this meeting occurred. I was keen to discover the explanation of what brought this group together to discuss biophilia. Judith attended the conference and was kind enough to discuss her experience and thoughts during our interview, providing a more complete perspective. I had also discussed this story with Kellert, Beatley and Browning in their interviews, yet the recounting by

Judith provided the most comprehensive account. This is the story as told to me below.

The Rhode Island Conference

Stephen Kellert spearheaded the invitations, inviting previous contributors and those working specifically in the 'field'. He then researched to find other people he didn't know but who he had heard were doing interesting work in relevant areas that would be worth integrating. The consequence was a very diverse group which included real estate investors, designers, psychologists and academics, each of whom had been working in their own constituency. This rich variety of participants offered a range of thinking as everybody had been "doing it off in their own little world". As Heerwagen expressed it, "There was an amazing variety of disciplines, approaches and perspectives which sometimes struggled to understand each other." She especially noted the division between the attendees on the design side who were driven by intuition to include nature in their designs, and those on the research side who were driven by evidence. Sometimes this led to a struggle to understand the different perspectives. This dichotomy, as Heerwagen suggests, is a common one throughout our society. Researchers are saying "Show me! We need to prove this, how do we study the impacts?" While designers are saying that it is a value in and of itself, we don't have to show this.

"Why do we need the evidence?" she asks, for what can be intuitively obvious to many. Designers need the evidence to convince their clients, to prove to them it is a worthwhile investment. Heerwagen feels designers would incorporate biophilic initiatives a lot more if their clients agreed. The conference provided an opportunity to explore the differing perspectives, the differing scales at which the participants worked and to find the common ground where biophilia is no longer an add-on in design but part of the standard palette.

The variety of approaches Heerwagen thought was the most valuable aspect. It brought a richness and depth of scale, which may not have been recognised or articulated at the time. Participants worked at community neighbourhood scales through to big developments and found that biophilia could be applied at all levels. There were a lot of approaches and nothing saying that you had to do it this way. "The range of scale possible had not struck us before. There were so many ways to do this." There were also a range of terms utilized; not everyone related to the term biophilia, and 'design with nature' was a common one. But the shared focus was how all the ideas presented could be put into designs that were more pleasing,

happier and healthier, and beyond just 'the green stuff' on all levels of scale. "How do we move these ideas forward into design?"

The conference took place in a beautiful setting on Rhode Island and, as Heerwagen related, got very loud at times with a great level of enthusiasm, intense discussion, engagement and interest. Attendees made an effort to meet with different disciplines. Heerwagen wondered whether, if the conference had taken place in an urban conference centre, the same level of engagement would have occurred. She thinks the immersion in nature offered by the building's location made it the momentous event it was and aided the creativity of the discussion.

The ideas could have stopped with the conference but a subsequent book was critical to disseminating the outcomes and maintaining the momentum. Heerwagen thinks without the book it wouldn't have been as successful and the ideas may have just stayed there. Participants were invited to contribute a chapter. The editors, of which Heerwagen was one, made no attempt to create a central flow or theme within the chapters, which to Heerwagen was valuable. The different voices, different messages and different approaches made the message of the book accessible to a wide audience. The central message, as Heerwagen expressed it, was that nature has much to offer in many different ways.

This recounting of the conference further confirmed the evolution of biophilic design as a social movement. The group who gathered at Rhode Island were diverse but with a common interest in nature in cities.

Tom Liptan – Portland-10/12/2013

Ecoroof Program Manager at City of Portland
Portland, Oregon Area
Environmental Services

Player	Arena	Strategy	Word	Connection to nature
Tom Liptan	Government	Innovation, implementation and policy	Wonder	Urban nature, young

I had been hearing about Portland and was told I must visit during my journey since they were doing a lot of green initiatives there. Arriving in Portland I immediately sensed a similarity with my home town of Fremantle. Our accommodation was with a family in a beautiful neighbourhood close to the city. It had painted roundabouts and they had a chicken coup with a green roof in the back yard! I was to have my first meeting in a nearby café which I could walk to.

I had heard about Tom Liptan from a few people. He was renowned as a pioneer, innovator and leader in the area of green infrastructure and biophilic urbanism. Although retired now he was willing to meet with me and show me around Portland.

Liptan took me for a drive to show me a particular apartment building development which he was involved in and which illustrated good biophilic initiatives. There were storm water issues at the site and an underground stream water pipe that needed replacement. This would be expensive for the developer and Liptan had discussed options with him. The outcome was the decision to 'daylight' the stream, bringing it to the surface and making a feature of it. There was also a triangular intersection of roads outside the apartment block and the stream continued under these. Previously, a development had created the third side of the triangle as a perceived 'improvement' but Liptan pointed out that it had actually had been a detriment to the area plus it was unnecessary. Part of the apartment development project then had been to remove the road and create rain gardens and a stream bed to manage the water instead.

Figure 5.16 Tom Liptan with the reclaimed road and the daylighted stream

(Source Author)

I asked him why the developer had chosen to daylight the stream instead of replacing the pipe. Was it due to economics or aesthetics? Liptan replied that it was both. He then suggested that “it was the three ‘Es’. Economics, Esthetics and Environment”. The developer liked the idea that he was going to bring to life a stream that had been buried for over 75 years. This added to the economic benefits. The developer also spent extra money to daylight the creek through its full course and make it a feature. This was at the cost of extra apartments but made a better project. The outcome was “higher rents and longer term tenants”.

I had heard that Liptan was responsible for the first green roof in Portland so asked him about that. He confirmed that intensive green roofs had been installed but this was the first retrofit of an extensive green roof. This was his garage. “I was probably the first person in North America to monitor the rain and the run-off, or lack of run-off, from what we called eco-roofs. This was in 1996. It worked! It was growing and then we had a big rainstorm and I was out there with measuring cups and found it worked very well.” At the time Liptan was working in storm water management in government and had heard about green roofs and thought: “It just makes sense. If you have soil and vegetation on the roof it is going to absorb a certain amount of rain and help with storm water management. If it does then wouldn’t that be great for the City of Portland to use as a method to help storm water run-off getting into our combined sewer system.” I asked him where he had heard about green roofs. This had been from a London based man from the London Ecology Unit who spoke at a Portland conference on the benefits of including small natural areas in urban London to educate children. In the informal conversation outside the presentation he had told Liptan about the concept of green roofs and that this was something his organisation was looking into. The presenter said that some big projects had happened in Germany and Switzerland. Liptan was intrigued by the idea and thought “Wow, that sounds like it makes a lot of sense. He also mentioned something about water management so I thought this was something I needed to find out more about.” A couple of years later a book came out from this London group and he bought a copy. He was still thinking about this when his wife bought some detergent that, on its label, said it came from a factory in Belgium with a grass roof. Liptan called the number on the label and they sent him an 8 track video of the opening of their green roof. He then decided there really was something to this and he needed to find more information. His boss agreed and Liptan was assigned to this research. He started collecting little bits and pieces of information from Germany. This was happening in the mid 1990s.

The question arose though: “So they do it in Germany, so what. How do we know it works in Portland? That was what everybody asks. So I need to trial this. I need to find out. I have my old garage out there.” In January 1996 he constructed the green roof on his garage. After the success of his trial, his employer, the government Bureau of Environmental Services, decided to do another test as a full-fledged project. The City Commissioner was on board and there was some publicity around the project. They discovered a developer constructing a new building who was interested in providing the roof top and it was funded by the Bureau. It was called the Hamilton Apartment Building and completed in 1999. Monitoring equipment took three years to install and information began to be collected in 2002. They monitored rainfall, run-off and speed of run-off. They discovered run-off was 90% slower than from a conventional roof. This translated to volume control and peak flow control. Water quality was also looked at and Liptan explained the complexity of examining water quality. Water is filtered by the roof but also may pick up nutrients. So where the water ends up is important; into the ground is good, into a water body is not so good. But generally the water was fine. Temperature was also considered as warmer water can impact on their cold water fish.

The trial was considered to be successful and provided a viable option for storm water management in Portland. “It was regulatory to manage storm water and a green roof provided a choice on how to do it.”

Liptan thinks that a roof of a certain size should be a green ‘eco-roof’ and at the moment knows there are people working towards putting this into policy. “It just seems like how long do we have to wait? Toronto has passed an ordinance. We would be the first city in the United States. No one in the US requires it, it is all based on incentives.” We discussed Chicago and Liptan explained that it is not in their code, it is under conditional use. From my Chicago conversation I recalled that it was in their Sustainable Development Policy which developers had to adhere to if receiving financial or zoning assistance. So Liptan was correct. Currently, Portland has incentives. Green roofs were first used to provide a choice in managing storm water for developers. The concept was then put in as a density bonus, which gave two incentives for developers to use green roofs. A financial bonus was brought in, five dollars a square foot for a green roof, but this only lasted about four years until a change of Mayor.

Liptan had also thought about the question of why Portland has a ‘green’ reputation with some greening strategies, such as green roofs, being initiated here. He considers it is people like him “who think something is good and pursue it and get it

going. His motivation was considering whether it would do the job he was working on." Liptan is a landscape architect not an engineer but he was working on storm water issues usually addressed by engineers. "When you start adding different perspectives to a question, you start getting different approaches." His training varies from an engineer's and he approaches utilisation of space in a different manner. Liptan was the only landscape architect in government working on storm water issues. "So for me it was why don't we manage it with the landscape? Why do we have to put it in pipes and stuff? Engineers don't touch the landscape, it's not their job so I said "Why don't we touch it together?"

The conversation turned to the idea of the drivers of biophilic design coming from risk-taking champions. Liptan commented:

> "It seems like that is a phenomenon of human species and perhaps there are more people in that category in Portland than other places as it relates to the idea of the environment. I don't consider myself a champion. I just consider myself as a guy who saw something and then brought it forward. But maybe a champion is someone who if they get ridiculed and you get pushed around and you keep talking then you are definitely striving towards something that others are trying to put down. People used to laugh at me. They would think I was just a whacko guy when I talked about eco-roofs. This one guy said to me recently; 'You know, Tom, I used to think you were a nut but now I see you were probably right.'"

Liptan thinks it is the responsibility of people in government not just to do what the job says, but to work for the citizens of the community. "It's hard because your job is about doing the ABC, you need to do your job. So I was questioned as to why I was doing this green roof thing, but if you see something that can make your community better then I think you need to bring it out. If people at the high level have this attitude then it makes it easier for people like me at the lower level."

I told Liptan the story of the real estate woman in Washington DC who had determinedly produced a green roof on her building. He supported this, suggesting that it doesn't have to be someone working with the city, that anyone can do this. Liptan says there are Portland stories of private individuals seeing examples of biophilic design, thinking that it makes sense and they just 'get it done'.

We discussed the multiple benefits of biophilic design and how it crosses into many disciplines and attracts different people. I mentioned that many of the people I had

spoken with at some point would say “it just makes sense”. Liptan responded instantly with some thoughts:

> “You know, what strikes me about part of what causes the regression of good ideas and good practices that cities have is actually the lack of understanding of what the ramifications of something new will be. People can sell a product that does the job, but if you are not informed enough about when there is an alternative to the product, you will often buy the product. Like the extra road outside that someone decided needed to go there when it didn’t. And people use their money to promote their product. Economics and consumerism, we don’t want to get rid of it and we don’t want to overly control it because we know that doesn’t work. So people need to get good advice or do their homework. Buyer be aware! And learn when you don’t need to be buying something.”

Liptan sees this thinking as impacting on the way we design our cities. He spoke about when he first heard Tim Beatley lecture in Portland on Biophilic Cities. Liptan wondered which city in the US or in the world is the model for a biophilic city. Beatley showed bits and pieces from cities but not a whole city. I mentioned Singapore, which led to a discussion on Singapore’s system of governance which imposes a lot of these initiatives. Liptan wondered if this “strict green control of the environment” would be the only way that humans will actually do biophilic initiatives. Liptan was very reflective in grappling with this topic as he considers people do not like being told what to do or not to do. He thinks we need something other than regulations; understandings of what standards are important to have and which are not.

We discussed the ‘ripple effect’, where people see the proof, the “show me the money” as Liptan calls it, and how this can work in implementing initiatives. Liptan pondered further:

> “I wonder if we, us human beings, need to make so many mistakes before we get to so many successes. Is it just a natural process for us that we make mistakes and then try and correct them, generation after generation? My limited sense from meeting young people is that many of the younger generation are asking questions differently to the way the older generation asked questions. I think this is somehow related to religion. Whatever it is, how does this play in to

so many things we do as a human being? Spirituality is a very fundamental part of our thinking, and our beliefs affect our thinking. People look to their beliefs for the answers to things they can't answer. It seems to me young people are looking differently and this is encouraging to me. They are not automatically accepting of some of the things we do. There is something positive about the younger generation that is encouraging to me about the future of the earth."

****

Tom was a reflective and deep thinker and that led to a fascinating conversation. Again I felt I had encountered a special wisdom with an altruistic approach to life. I wondered if this contributes to his creative openness and innovation. The converging events that led to his garage green roof trial had translated into such a serendipitous journey, even involving a detergent packet! How long it would have taken Portland to get a green roof if Tom had not seen that packet?

Tom is a risk taking champion, a local hero, in my view. He stood up through ridicule for something that made sense to him and that did the job he was assigned to do. The fact that he was a landscape architect in a traditional engineering area introduced a different perspective. Perhaps if we did this more often with problems then we may find more innovative solutions.

As he showed me around Portland we talked in more depth, with philosophical conversations about life and about our cities. Tom considers that initially we had to modify the environment to provide our needs, like shelter. We just forgot when to stop and the economics of sterile, right-angled designs took over. We both agree it is time, and necessary, for humans to reclaim our connection with nature.

Table 5.10 Tom Liptan

	Motivators and Drivers		
Stages of social movement	**Environmental**	**Social** (including emotional)	**Economic**
Emergence	Storm water management, has the required outcome	Aesthetics, makes sense, different perspectives uniting	
Coalescence	Successful monitored trial outcomes	Rippling effect, interdisciplinary, rich design pallet, addressing human factors, policy incentives,	Higher rents, long term tenants
Any Identified Barriers	Unknown success factor	Ridiculed and put down, lack of understanding, lack of seeing different perspectives, lack of informed decisions	Easy fixes with purchasing products

Mike Houck - Portland-11/12/2013

Director

Urban Greenspaces Institute

Player	Arena	Strategy	Word	Connection to nature
Mike Houck	Civic	Activist		Rural and urban nature, young

By the time I met with Houck I had heard much about him in my other interviews. He was spoken about as a strong community activist who had played a major role in the development of Portland.

Houck has always been interested in birds and nature conservation. He had been involved in protests about filling in wetlands near the Portland River. Some years later as he was driving into the city from a bird watching expedition he had "an epiphany":

> "I found myself getting uptight about coming back to the city. I think primarily because cities have been demonised and I kind of bought into that stupid view of cities. So I actually had a conversation with myself and challenged myself about the good things I like about cities like going to the theatre etc., etc. Shortly after that a friend handed me proceedings called 'Wildlife in the Urbanising Environment'. The authors were doing research on the importance of green spaces in urban environments. I read that and it triggered in me a desire to start focussing more effort on nature conversation in the city. This made perfect sense."

Houck was approached by Oregon Department of Fish and Wildlife who he said were not very interested in urban wildlife as they didn't think there was much. They offered Houck a small grant to take on wildlife in the metropolitan region and, as Houck didn't have a job at the time, he said of course. He took the title Urban Naturalist. One of the goals of the urban growth boundary legislation is for an urban wildlife inventory and this is what Houck did. He did this pro-bono. This led him to being very engaged with protection of fish and wildlife habitat in the city. It had a rocky start as the local planners told him there was no place for wildlife in the city and the idea of the urban growth boundary was to protect wildlife outside of the city. "This has been a protracted battle for the last 33 years. But in the last 5-7 years there has been a corner turned and local planners have acknowledged that it would be nice to protect some nature in the city both for the ecological value and to provide access to nature for the people who live in the city."

Houck felt this wasn't getting much traction so developed some tools, applied for grants and researched overseas. He received a significant grant to develop a refuge system for urban wildlife. This Houck considers significant as it was a shift in strategy from planning to a non-regulatory approach. Metro is Oregon's regional

government with jurisdiction over the cities and counties. By law every city and county has to amend their local plans to conform with the regional plan. This is unique in the country. Houck hoped they (himself and Tom Liptan) could implement change through convincing Metro to do it differently and become the owner of natural areas. Houck first convinced county commissioners to divest themselves of all their property and give it to Metro. Houck then convinced the Metro council to adopt a region wide master plan for parks, trails and natural areas. In 1995, citizens even voted to tax themselves to provide money to Metro to buy more natural areas. Metro has acquired 16,000 acres of natural areas to put into public ownership for protection and appropriate public access. Simultaneous to this, several symposia were held called Country in the City which brought experts to Portland. Storm water management experts attended one of these so Houck explains that this was another agency who joined in the growing collaborative partnership. “Now we have Fish and Wildlife agencies, Park agencies, the Regional Planning agency and now we have storm water. So we are building the partners all of whom make a significant contribution to the whole, to the system.”

Houck then talked about the NGO Coalition for a Liveable Future group he had helped to initiate. One of the objectives was to create regional policies and regulations to better protect urban wildlife and habitat. These were presented to Metro and adopted. He summed up saying how they had gone from regulatory to non-regulatory acquisition and back to regulatory. I commented that he had managed to get around any blocks and he agreed, saying that “we had to be very creative and willing to switch strategies as we went along”. Houck and his peers have published books on wildlife in the city and tried to build political will and public awareness. “We run field trips and still hold conferences and symposiums to share research with others.”

Another group Houck has been a prime driver in forming is the The Intertwine, a coalition of public, civic, private and non-profit organisations who are dedicated to building a world class system of parks, trails and natural areas. The Portland Regional Conservation Strategy is a product of The Intertwine Alliance.

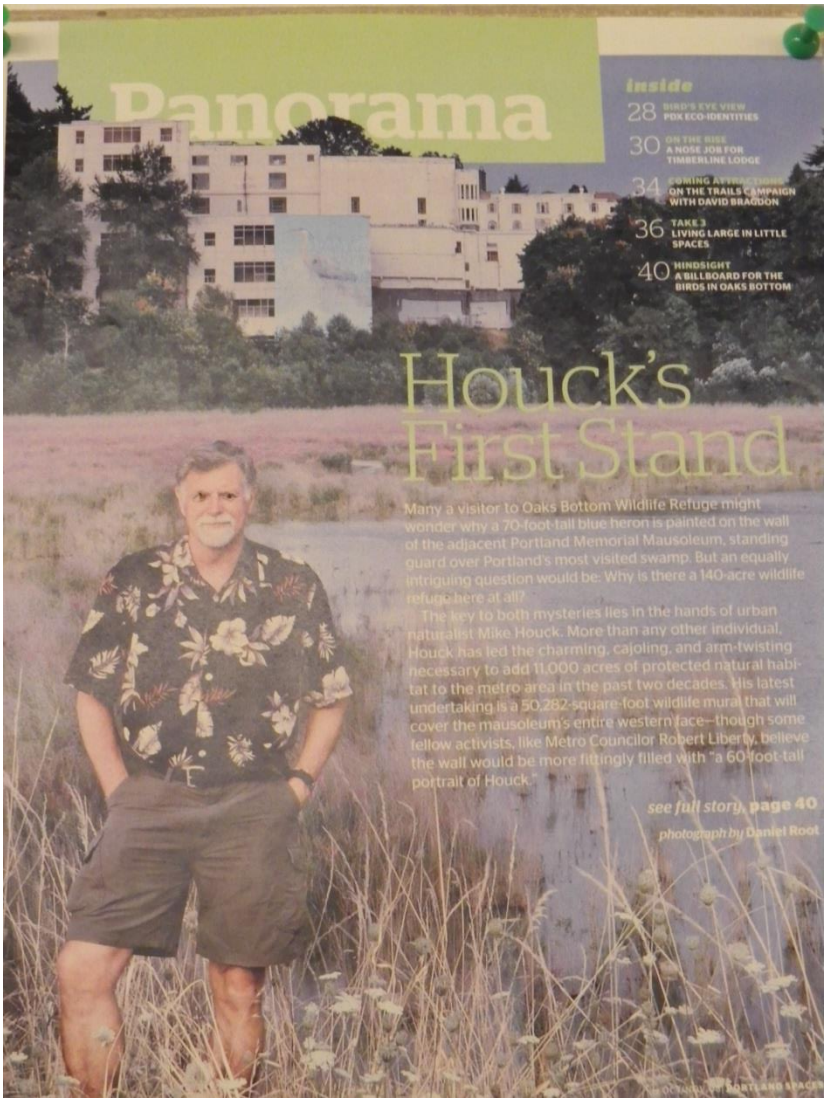


Figure 5.17 Houck - a local champion

(Source Author)

We went back to the earlier concept that had intrigued me, the fact that tax payers had voted to tax themselves to pay for land acquisition. Houck then stated that even more astounding was the fact that last year (2012) they had voted to tax themselves to pay Metro to manage this acquired land. Houck made another very interesting point that some of the "resistance to the biophilic initiatives came from the same people who are acclaimed for making Portland such a green city. Because what they focus on is light rail, land use planning and to hell with nature. Portland has a great reputation, but quite honestly the green stuff started just recently, it's been a fight. The power structure viewed nature as outside of the city."

Houck does see that over time there has been a shift in the community attitude as he would never have had the support he received in the later years. He thinks that

people have started to care about what happened in their back yard and have become engaged. “There are now too many people to count. Yet I think even when I first started out people did care deeply about the wildlife in their back yards. We were just a vehicle for them to express their interest.”

I mentioned the ‘green’ reputation that Portland has. We both thought that this would tend to attract people seeking this and so make this aspect stronger. Houck pointed out that green does not always mean biophilic and caring for nature: “When I first started this government agencies were not supportive but over the years we have developed a good working relationship where I can beat up on them on Wednesday but on Friday we are having a beer. There is now a level of trust.” He is concerned about this ‘cohort’ retiring and the new relationships he may have to develop.

The connection between human health and nature is recent but it is very explicitly part of what we are doing now: “There is more of a focus on this human-nature connection. I still take people out into nature and last weekend a flock of snow geese flew over. People are interested in the critters but I think they were more moved by just the beauty of them flying overhead.”

Houck only became interested in nature as a graduate student. A backpacking trip into nature turned his life one eighty degrees. “Maybe I am like a religious convert, I am more zealous because I am a recent convert. I will acknowledge that I have had a huge impact in Portland, but what has been really most rewarding is the relationships that have evolved from the time there were three of us working together to now, when there are more people than I can count.”

****

Mike is a true local champion. His concisely told story, which started with his personal epiphany and then related the initiatives and milestones he had achieved, was inspiring and illuminating. He accepted the core biophilic principle that nature needs to be part of the city and not just outside it. Mike was an early adopter of this, arriving there through his own inner reflections. Sometimes it seemed like Mike had had the right things come along at the right time, but mostly it appeared his passion and strength of convictions had led him to find ways to make it happen. He also mentioned the relationships he formed along the way that had supported him.

Mike’s story is a wonderful illustration of where bottom-up can meet top-down. It clearly demonstrated how informed individuals can make it happen and can influence policy, similar to the thoughts of Mary Rowe in New York. But a big part

was the cleverness of seeing the agencies that had an interest, of bringing them together and creating a synergistic collaborative outcome.

Table 5.11 Mike Houck

	Motivators and Drivers		
Stages of social movement	**Environmental**	**Social** (including emotional)	**Economic**
Emergence		Protecting nature in the city, makes sense	
Coalescence	Protection of wildlife	Collaborative strategies, information sharing, conferences, public access to nature, social health benefits	Tax funds from public
Any Identified Barriers		Political barriers	

Portland is unique. It has a reputation for being green, for being community oriented and active and for being very liveable. I felt like I had interviewed three local champions. These interviews really illustrated the meeting between community activism and government agencies where bottom-up meets top-down through an interface of information, collaboration and persistence. There was creativity and innovation plus serendipitous events that all collided and were supported by three main players who together changed policy and the direction of Portland. The encouragement and protection of urban habitat may have come later through someone else, or may never have happened. These early adopters and innovative thinkers, whether in civil society or government, seemed to play a significant part in the emergence and coalescence of biophilic initiatives early in the biophilic design social movement journey.

5.6 Conclusion

The journey through the US and Canada was extremely rewarding. People were forthcoming and generous with their time and with their knowledge. Planning for the journey was very successful, resulting in meeting significant players in biophilic design who had made substantial contributions to the social movement.

In many cities the literature was being translated into practice. There was a focus on green roofs as the major biophilic design element, mostly implemented for their environmental benefits. The expressed social benefits reflected the research literature. Many of the interviewees were aware of the multiple benefits of biophilic design, or had discovered them after implementing a design feature. Similar to the local journey, interviewees shared an appreciation of and connection to nature, sometimes expressed as an emotion or love of nature. For many, the initiatives they were implementing were common sense in creating more liveable cities and in increasing the human-nature connection.

The writing of the interviews in the incubation phase of heuristic inquiry identified many motivators and drivers in both the emergent and coalescent stages of the social movement. These were compiled into each interviewee's matrix which were then amalgamated, creating huge lists of overlapping social, environmental and economic motivators and drivers in each social movement stage. Other themes that recurred throughout the writing of the journey were noted.

SECTION THREE

THE CREATIVE SYNTHESIS

CHAPTER SIX
THE CREATIVE SYNTHESIS

6.1 Introduction

The previous chapter presented exemplary individual stories, qualities, motivators and drivers of the social movement for biophilic design, based on the North American interviews. Combined with the local journey, a substantial amount of data had been accumulated. Following the framework of heuristic inquiry, there was then a period of incubation which involved the writing of the immersive journey plus a time of setting aside the data through periods of retreat and detachment. This process allowed the inner workings of tacit dimension and intuition to help clarify and extend understanding in line with heuristic inquiry methodology. Common qualities, perceptions and motivators revealed within the interviews were illuminated and clustered into themes and components allowing a full examination in the explication phase. This period of review resulted in a 'composite and comprehensive' depiction of core themes and components as suggested by the heuristic inquiry approach.

This chapter unites the revealed themes and the inner thoughts of illumination from the immersive phase and the incubation phase of the previous two chapters to answer the question of what are the contributing motivators and drivers to the rapid expansion of the biophilic design social movement. These are presented in the relevant social movement stages of emergence, coalescence and mainstreaming. Further to this, the influencing components of mainstreaming include a discussion of the barriers as expressed by the interviewees plus discussion of other significant themes that emerged as the basis for mainstreaming. The explicated themes will be utilised in determining a framework of principles and practices that would progress the social movement of biophilic design from an emergent stage to a coalescent stage and into an accepted, mainstreamed stage.

The motivating themes result from the revealed patterns of commonality from the immersion and detachment in writing and reviewing the immersive journey, the interviews and the compilation of the individual interviewees' matrices. They are presented in a mind map as a composite depiction and their significance discussed. Reflection on the research notes, the journal and the interviews uncovered shared

thoughts and observations on the dynamics, the flows and the interplays of biophilic design initiatives. These are also discussed. The chapter concludes with a discussion of motivating themes which contribute to a framework for mainstreaming the social movement of biophilic design, derived from the immersive journey, the interviews, the incubation period and the composite depiction.

6.2 The composite depiction of the motivating themes

The compiled matrices from the local and global interviews contained comments which expressed the motivators as experienced by the interviewee and interpreted by the researcher. These comments were themed and are visually expressed in the mind map, Figure 6.1. Three representative comments were chosen for each theme and are depicted on the smaller branches which lead to the themes comprising the emergent and the coalescent stages of the social movement. The lighter lines depict the links between the emergent theme and the coalescent theme, that is, where there was a flow on from one stage to another as revealed in the interviews.

The stages of the biophilic design social movement can now be brought together into a ‘composite depiction’ component of the creative synthesis.

6.3 Prime motivating themes in the emergent stage

Kellert, in his interview, considers there is not a prime motivator to designing biophilically: “The multiple benefits that can ensue from biophilic building provide a list of potential motivators, each of them important” (Kellert, personal communication, 2013).

The prime motivator themes revealed in the emergent stage are the core drivers that trigger the initial stirrings, the themes that unite or lead the decision making towards biophilic design. It may be what initially motivates an individual on a course of action before the awareness of a greater social movement.

6.3.1 Connection to nature

Beginning with the biophilia hypothesis group, the desire to increase the human connection to nature in cities has been evident as a prime emergent motivator. This

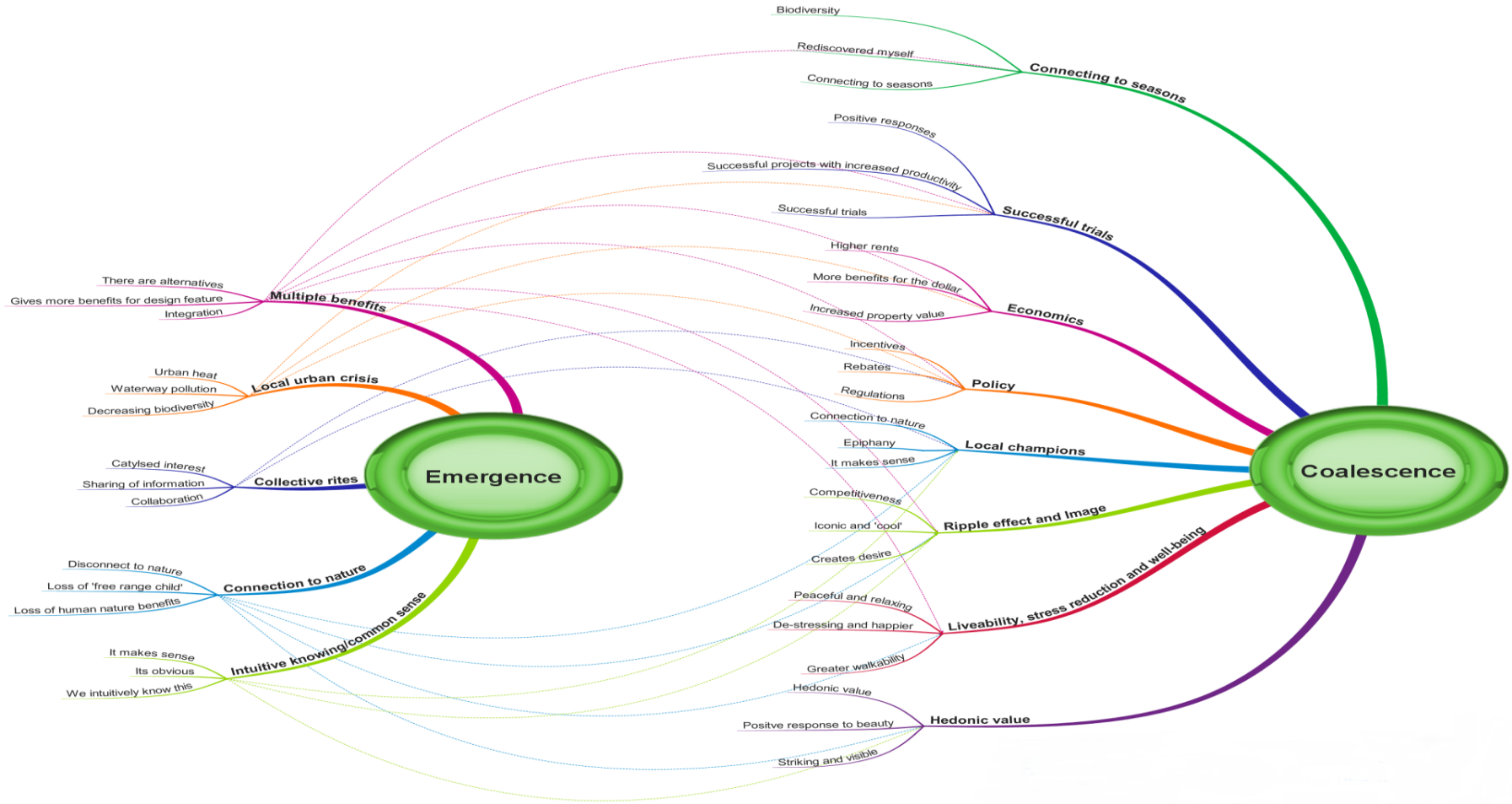


Figure 6.1 Composite depiction of the motivating themes in the biophilic design social movement

(Source Author)

tends to be coupled with a recognition of the profound disconnect to nature that is currently the dominant design paradigm of cities. Beatley, particularly, recognises that this lack of opportunity to connect with nature is a recent phenomenon which is impacting on the health and wellbeing of urban children, contributing to the obesity crisis. Browning acknowledged that in just one generation children do not have the same opportunity he had to play outside in nature. The 'free range' child is disappearing and possibly, alongside this, great environmentalists whose childhood involved significant contact with nature.

For Van Lliet, connecting people with nature has been the main motivator in her designs. All the interviewed academics recognise the benefits gained from the human-nature connection so their baseline motivator is to increase this biophilic connection. Kellert continually reiterated the necessity of reconnecting urban inhabitants with nature, with statements such as "Nature is a part of humanity's feelings, to cut off from the natural world is to cut off from part of humanity" (Kellert, personal communication, 2013).

In Washington DC and San Francisco desire to increase people's connection to nature was also driven by the hope of increasing local inhabitants' connection to place and thus their stewardship of the area and the flora and fauna. Womack considered that to progress biophilic design in landscape architecture would require an educational shift from design to design with ecology involving a heart connection to nature and increased stewards.

All interviewees were asked for one word to describe their feelings when they were immersed in nature. This provoked some reflective thinking for some while others knew immediately how they felt. Peace was the most mentioned word. The words are depicted in a word cloud in Figure 6.2 below.

Implied within this is the idea that people recognise that they do feel different in nature. No one challenged my question; no one said that they feel the same as they would in purely artificial urban density or anywhere. Peace could be said to be the antonym of stress, a common ill of contemporary urban lives. The implication is there that nature does offer what the literature suggests: a time to de-stress, to feel calm and connected and wonder at the beauty of it all.

Figure 6.2 Word cloud of collected words

(Source Author)

6.3.2 Intuitive knowing/common sense

A large number of the interviewees expressed the view that biophilic design was 'intuitively obvious', 'common sense' or it 'made sense'. This was particularly apparent when the interviewee had investigated design options that fulfilled their criteria and became aware of a biophilic option. The view that it was common sense was strengthened if there was awareness of the multiple benefits on offer with a biophilic approach. When Whitley first read about green roofs, it just made sense to her. Interviewees in the government arena who had investigated options to address the issue they were tackling also agreed that the appropriate biophilic design element was common sense.

Other interviewees framed this differently, on a deeper level. This understanding appeared to be what motivated them more on an emotional level than intellectual. They mentioned that it was intuitively obvious or there was an intuitive knowing. Browning and Heerwagen both related that they had also encountered this expression with people wondering why the research evidence was needed for what is intuitively obvious. Thus there is obviously an inner resonance for some people with the concept of biophilic design. Is this intuitive understanding a reflection of humans' innate connection with nature and does this intuitive knowing only come with a developed connection with nature? What common sense means to a person

is framed by that person's world view, alongside the development of intuitive knowing.

6.3.3 Local urban crisis

A crisis triggers a response. The need to address a local crisis has been a major motivator especially in the government arena. Many of the North American cities have water pollution crises created by the CSS water management system, or from large amounts of storm water run-off from impervious urban surfaces. With the US Federal government mandating the necessity of dealing with this issue, as well as concern from communities, many biophilic initiatives such as green roofs and rain gardens have emerged as a result.

Urban heat featured as the other main local crisis which has driven a biophilic design response. This initially occurred in Chicago in response to heat related deaths, but also featured in other cities, such as San Francisco, which have awareness of heat issues even if there have not been deaths.

Less drastic crises, but still significant, are decreasing biodiversity, climate change and sea level rise. San Francisco, a city with less rainfall than the other visited cities, is primarily focussed on these concerns. Poor air quality, especially indoors, has prompted technological innovations in Toronto. For Portland (and similarly Seattle) it is management of water pollution and river degradation which was threatening their salmon industry, combined with increasing density due to their urban growth boundary. There was recognition by many of the interviewees that biophilic design can contribute to doing density better and retaining a place for nature within the built environment. In the ten US cities visited, biophilic initiatives in response to an environmental crisis were a strong and predominant motivator which also enabled the necessary supporting framework such as research and policy to be enacted with some speed.

6.3.4 Multiple benefits

Amongst the interviewees, there was recognition that there were alternatives to biophilic initiatives in achieving similar outcomes particularly in response to an urban crisis. Awareness of the multiple benefits that can come with biophilic design had frequently been a deciding factor in pursuing the appropriate biophilic design

element. Of note though, is that the awareness is siloed within the sustainability arena where the interviewee and the prime motivator sit. For example, when implementing green roofs for storm water management there was awareness of the multiple benefits of potential energy consumption reduction, reduction in urban heat and increased biodiversity but little discussion on the possible social benefits. Likewise, if an interviewee's area and interest was in the social benefits of biophilic design, there was a tendency to focus on the multiple social benefits. Heerwagen expressed the clearest understanding of both the social and environmental benefits, even though her prime interest is in the social.

6.3.5 The collective rites of conferences

The emergence of biophilic design involved two conferences, or meetings, where biophilia was discussed first and, second, the biophilia hypothesis was discussed. Without these the social movement of biophilic design may not have erupted. These collective rites of bringing like thinkers together are essential both in driving the movement and in motivating the people who attend them.

Out of the ten cities visited, five had hosted a conference called CitiesAlive which is orchestrated by Toronto based NGO, and Green Roofs for Healthy Cities in Chicago, Portland, Vancouver, Washington DC and San Francisco. This conference featured in the conversation with Lucy in Washington DC. The conference was held in response to growing interest in green roofs from different departments and individuals. It provided a forum where these groups could come together with a similar agenda. Lucy explained how the conference catalysed the interest in green roofs in Washington DC and helped towards the implementation of a green roof rebate.

Chicago has hosted the conference twice, in 2003 and in 2012. In 2013, San Francisco was the host due to the efforts of Joslin. Both Joslin and Edmondson spoke highly of the outcomes from the conference and the 'jumpstart' that it provided for San Francisco by being a forum for groups and departments to come together and begin a dialogue: a collective rite. This had also led to the formation of a local branch of SWISSNEX, which had toured Switzerland: another collective rite bringing a group together with a shared desire to learn about green roofs. Joslin saw the CitiesAlive conference as educating the San Francisco community on the benefits of green roofs as well as galvanising a high level of participation between primary agencies. He also commented that the conference had spurred the

development of 'local champions'. Both the CitiesAlive conference and the SWISSNEX tour had significantly lifted the level of understanding of green roofs and biophilic design in San Francisco. The sharing of information through a collective rite has enabled a city and its inhabitants to have the confidence to proceed in the implementation of green roofs in their city.

Conferences and collective rites provide the opportunity and space for the arenas of civic society, government, industry and academia to come together. This is an important space as from these collaborative meetings, direct action and implementation of biophilic design may occur.

The discussed prime motivating themes are depicted in Figure 6.3 below.

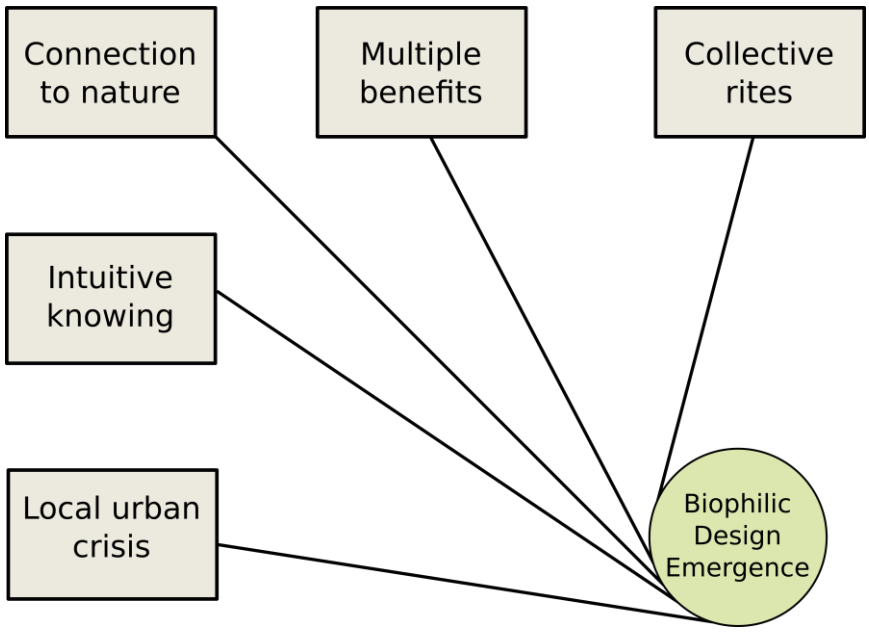


Figure 6.3 Prime motivating themes in the emergent stage

(Source Author)

6.4 Prime motivating themes in the coalescent stage

6.4.1 Local champions

Throughout the interviews, the realisation grew stronger that many of the interviewees were leaders and heroes in their field. They trialled new techniques, sometimes at home, and were innovative in their ideas. At times they had to stand strong against resistance from industry, government or even community. Some of these heroes were wise elders who, with the experience and wisdom of their years, had a deep understanding of the benefits that nature and biophilia could bring into people's lives. They had experienced it and witnessed it. They were great leaders who had sometimes extended beyond their boundaries with the knowledge and beliefs that were a lifetime's accumulation.

Most of the interviewees could be classed as local champions. The influence, and necessity, of local champions was dramatised repeatedly in the interviews and people's stories. Many of the cities owed their biophilic initiatives to the passion and belief of one or more local inhabitants. Burlin, in Portland, considered that if it wasn't for the local champions initiatives wouldn't have happened in Portland. Innovation and leadership are both needed and are linked. Portland has a justifiable reputation for community leaders who have worked at the grass roots level for what they believe is an improvement in quality of life for all. Liptan, Houek and Sallinger, who I was unable to meet, have a far reaching reputation for their innovative leadership. Liptan and Houek both had an established connection to nature, perhaps contributing to a receptivity and intuitive awareness of possibilities. Liptan acted on the prompt of a detergent packet to spur him to trial a green roof on his garage, which led to the first trial and monitoring of a green roof in North America in 1996 – perhaps showing that motivators can come from many surprising sources and will be triggered because of an innate need for the green link.

Houek was motivated by an epiphany resulting from both his love for nature and how much he enjoys aspects of cities. He realised there was potential to combine the two and this understanding drives him to innovate, lead and campaign for what he believes. This understanding that nature and cities can integrate and co-exist is an exemplary example of the shift in thinking that has occurred with the biophilic design movement. For some of these champions, this new approach can attract negativity from other community members. Liptan related how he was laughed at

and considered a 'whacko'. Berkshire in Chicago was challenged by angry developers. Perhaps having to face this adversity and still persisting turns champions into heroes. Mayor Daley in Chicago is held in high regard for his green roof response to the urban heat crisis and other initiatives. He was a visionary who made things happen, but he was also in a position of power to be able to do this.

The local champions I interviewed mostly had to persist and make things happen for themselves. Sharp, in Vancouver, also had trialled a green roof on his garage, and his collaboration with Conelly and Oberlander extended this research to larger extensive green roofs and later to living walls. Siber, also in Vancouver, persisted through challenges to receive support to build the first interior green wall bio-filter. A real estate agent in Washington DC, Whitley, persevered through obstacles for a year before her green roof went ahead. Browning from New York had faced dismissive arguments and comments on his ideas.

Each city I visited seemed to have its champions, those who had the vision and strength to pursue their belief. This ranged through the arenas of academia, civic life, industry and government.

6.4.2 Successful trials

The progression of implementation of biophilic initiatives would not have happened if the early trials were not successful. This was repeated throughout the cities. The good outcomes from Liptan and Sharp's garage green roof trials enabled them to take the results and the implementation further. The success of the green roof trial on Chicago City Hall gave a precedent and ability to ask the same of the developers. Browning proceeded with biophilic design, motivated by a successful outcome in worker productivity. Womack, in Chicago, was inspired by worker response to his innovative landscaping. Chicago has had success with many of their policies, but not all, which enables them to recognise and build on what works.

The high level of successful research in Toronto has made the city a leader in green roof innovations. While most of the measured outcomes have been in the environmental area, successful social and economic outcomes are also major drivers for biophilic design, and sometimes unexpected ones such as the social success of Whitley's green roof in Washington DC and the Chicago City Hall green roof. Both these have provided a place of connection to nature for employees in the building and encouraged the conducting of tours for the interested public. Both

Chicago and Portland had stories of developers who had experienced unexpected economic benefits through installing a green roof and attracting higher rents and keen tenants.

6.4.3 Multiple benefits

Multiple benefits are both an emergent driver and a coalescent driver. The difference is that as a coalescent driver it is more about the discovered benefits after installation. Many of the related stories, particularly around green roof implementation, were about how they were initially constructed for environmental outcomes. Other benefits, the social, economic and unplanned environmental, were 'discovered' after the installation. Both Browning and Whitley commented on the amount of biodiversity that they had observed on their roof. In response to this Browning installed a bee hive.

Whitley's passion and enjoyment of her green roof in Washington DC demonstrates this; the sense of rediscovering herself, of the peace she finds sitting on her roof top after work, has inspired her to keep learning about green roofs. Berkshire also commented on how much the roof meant to him and his enjoyment of going out on it, of being able to connect with the seasons. While Oberlander had designed her hospital garden roof for patients to view through the window, the benefits to staff were the bonus.

Observation and experience of the biophilic design initiative, as related by the interviewees, consistently revealed further benefits beyond the initial targeted benefit. This translates to a greater understanding of all the environmental and social benefits that are associated with biophilic design elements. A significant number of interviewees commented on the exposure of the multiple benefits inspiring them further.

6.4.4 Policy

The success of trials, particularly with green roofs, was a vital stepping stone towards enabling the introduction of policy in some cities. In Chicago the trial occurred within the government arena. Trials in Toronto and Portland involved research by local champions who took their successful outcomes to a receptive member of government which led to policy initiatives.

Chicago had a successful green roof on City Hall. This was not enough to progress the adoption of green roof initiatives by developers which is why Berkshire was employed to create policies to progress green roofs in Chicago. After initial resistance, developers discovered they enjoyed positive responses and further benefits from clientele. Research revealed that 82% of green roofs in Chicago were installed because of policy. Berkshire's experience convinced him that regulations worked best: the stick rather than the carrot.

All the cities I visited, apart from San Francisco, had some green roof policy in place. The policy initiatives ranged from incentives and rebates to regulations. Lucy in Washington DC thought the rebate had been very successful in increasing the number of green roofs.

6.4.5 Ripple effect and image

A consistent observation from interviewees was the experience of the ripple effect. This is where observation of a feature leads to the observer wanting one also and acting on this desire. Lucy had witnessed it in Washington DC, especially amongst the embassies who want to look 'cool' for their country. Browning pointed out the number of green roofs which had sprung up around his building since the installation of his green roof.

Demand for biophilic initiatives can be driven by the consumer base who, by witnessing examples, request similar from developers. Heerwagen, in Seattle, discussed this. If a building gets a lot of attention, which many well-designed biophilic buildings do, then others who see this tend to want to build in a similar style. It can ripple through the design and construction industry if it is seen to give a competitive advantage by this increased demand. Liptan suggested that the proof, the observed economic success, also contributes to the rippling of initiatives. Some companies and developers enjoy the status of leading the field in something new: of being unique and iconic and 'cool'.

Throughout the interviews and my personal immersion the response to biophilic design initiatives has been predominantly, if not completely, positive. People enjoy what they see and, as the research literature concludes, react positively, both physiologically and psychologically in a biophilic response to nature.

6.4.6 Aesthetics

People respond to beauty. There is proposition in the research that human responses to aesthetics are prompted by evolutionary survival instincts and are a component of innate biophilic tendencies. Val Lliet and Heerwagen both commented on this. Van Lliet suggested that beauty is not subjective but part of human evolutionary design. Heerwagen pointed out that there are always alternatives to biophilic design that are less attractive. People choose the biophilic approach as it contributes to the aesthetics of an area, so it brings another benefit beyond the function. Building design based solely on function and technology to meet sustainability standards may not be attractive for people. Kellert, Browning and Heerwagen all question whether a purely functional building is sustainable. “If something is not beautiful, it is probably not efficient in a wholistic sense”; Van Lliet attributes this quote to E.O. Wilson (Van Lliet, personal communication, 2013). The aesthetics of biophilic design addresses the human factor of sustainable design.

People are willing to pay for views of nature, which demonstrates that there is a hedonic value attributed to an aesthetically pleasing building. As Heerwagen expressed it, people “are buying pleasure” (Heerwagen, personal communication, 2013). The Michigan Mile story from Chicago illustrates how the aesthetic, hedonic value of biophilia contributes towards increasing desire and demand for more.

One outcome of the social survey attached to the trial green walls in Fremantle was an indication of the appreciation people have for the beauty of nature. With questions regarding people’s connection to nature, beauty received the most positive response.

Landscape architecture is a well-established profession and practice, typically brought in at the end of a building project to ‘beautify’ the landscape. Oberlander and Womack, both landscape architects, expressed awareness that there had been a change in the role and appreciation of their profession. Landscape architects are being employed earlier than before in developments, and in a more wholistic manner. Developers are becoming more interested in creating a stronger link between the building and its environs. Womack’s focus on utilising biophilic principles and ecological processes had successfully challenged established perceptions of beauty, bringing connection with nature and increased happiness to nearby employees. Heerwagen also commented on the shift in landscaping approaches, how landscapers are brought in earlier with the aim of increasing the

building and landscape connection plus the nature views for the building's occupants.

6.4.7 Economics

Increasing research and experience is continuing to strengthen the economic case for biophilic design. Owners and developers of buildings which incorporate biophilic design elements are discovering economic rewards through higher rents and increased property value. Retail sales increase and hospitals enjoy the economic benefits of higher bed turnover and less stress in waiting rooms. Most interviewees had stories of demonstrations of sometimes unexpected economic benefits which had inspired further biophilic design projects. Again the Michigan Mile story highlighted this, as did the Portland stories of increased rents and social amenity through daylighting streams or adding green roofs. The development of the High Line in New York has gentrified the area. An increasing recognition of the multiple benefits that result from biophilic design is emerging: there is good return for the money spent. There is a continuing need to document these stories, to consolidate the economic case. Browning et al.'s paper The Economics of Biophilia (2012) was an excellent beginning though obviously much more is needed in the economics of biophilic design.

6.4.8 Liveability, stress reduction and well-being

Some of the interviewees such as Whitley and Berkshire had personally discovered how access to a green roof was relaxing and peaceful and contributed to their well-being. For Beatley improved health was a major driver in addressing stress, mental health and the obesity crisis. Other interviewees related stories of observed behaviour and anecdotes which demonstrated people's responses and appreciation of increased access to nature in the urban environment, such as Oberlander's encounter with the tax collector who de-stressed in her roof top garden. Sharp's green wall and other initiatives at Vancouver airport had positive responses. Oberlander's hospital garden was well utilised by staff who said how essential the garden was in aiding them to de-stress and relax.

Pettitt's major driver for implementing biophilic measures in Fremantle was to increase liveability, a term that was also frequently used by others when talking

about health, wellbeing and quality of life. The many qualities of biophilic design contribute to increased wellbeing and liveable cities. Engaging people with nature through gardens or shaded streets increases the walkability of a city and the health of its inhabitants. Stress reduction and happier, healthier people were a frequently mentioned outcomes which inspired further design initiatives.

The eight prime motivating themes in the coalescent social movement stage of biophilic design are illustrated in Figure 6.4 below.

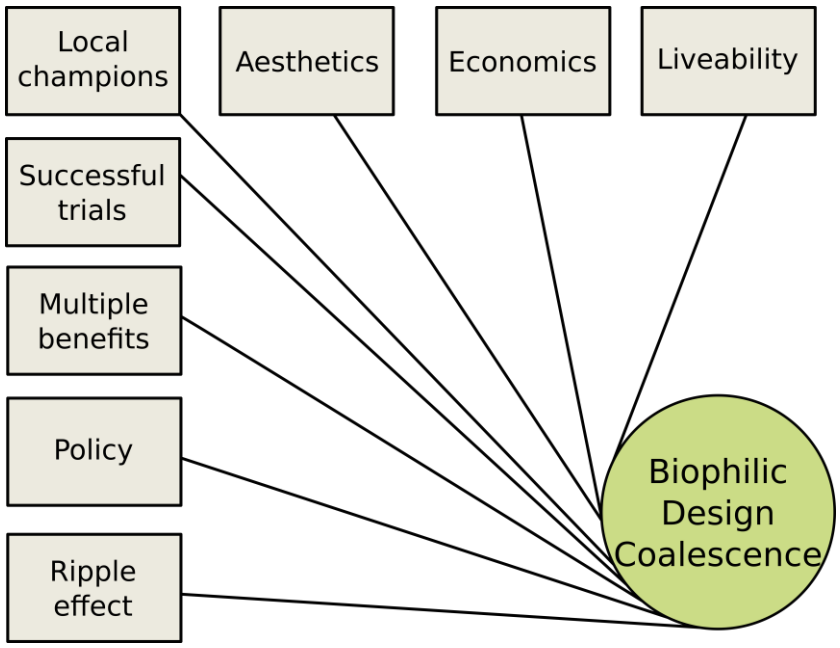


Figure 6.4 Prime motivating themes in the coalescent stage

(Source Author)

In the next phase of the creative synthesis the components of mainstreaming the biophilic design social movement can be formulated, derived from the immersive journey, the interviews, the incubation period and the composite depiction set out above. These are influencing factors in biophilic design mainstreaming.

6.5 Taking it to the mainstream: component themes

6.5.1 The barriers

The local journey and the global interviews revealed a list of barriers to biophilic design application. The most repeated barrier was the higher initial costs that were perceived to be associated with design initiatives and whether these costs would be a good investment. Concern about the ongoing maintenance costs presented as a barrier in the local journey. Green biophilic infrastructure was perceived to have a slow payback period that was off-putting to investors. There was frustration with not being able to quantify the multiple benefits sufficiently to make the business case for investors. This was often due to a lack of understanding of the 'bigger picture' of biophilic design that included social, economic and environmental benefits so informed decisions could be made. Benefits were siloed alongside divisions between the involved stakeholders and departments. These divisions were hindering full appreciation of the potential of biophilic design.

Lack of understanding had led to some local champions encountering anger and ridicule from the broader community. Interviewees had also encountered anger, fear and nervousness from developers in utilising new technologies with unknown success factors and possible risks, such as roof leaks. Frequently there was lack of a precedent which could be shown as a model and alleviate the fear and risk of the unknown. This was a major barrier in the local journey. People's varying perceptions of beauty and different interpretations of biophilia also presented as a barrier when biophilic initiatives were rebuked due to narrow or traditional views of how nature should look in a city. The perceived high water use associated with green roofs and green walls emerged as a barrier in drier climates. This was particularly evident in the local journey.

The revealed barriers to biophilic design initiatives from the immersive journey reflect the barriers that were discussed at the Biophilic Cities conference, indicating their global relevance. The Biophilic Cities barriers were:

- Lack of knowledge
- Fear of change and innovation
- Lack of leadership
- Lack of political will

- Short sighted thinking
- Financial mechanisms do not reflect the benefits, especially in health, of biophilic initiatives.

6.5.2 The silos

While the collective rites of conferences, meetings and tours are enabling arenas to come together, it is still limited. The journey of immersion reinforced what the literature had already revealed: a lack of integration. There is little research literature which recognises the multiple benefits of biophilic design. Where biophilic design principles are being investigated the focus is predominantly on either the environmental benefits or the social benefits, with little reference to the economic or the multiple benefits. This is significant, as a true, wholistic understanding of all that biophilic design offers is not being promoted, or able to be understood without greater integration of the social, environmental and economic benefits. Frequently, when a design element is installed for the environmental benefits, the social benefits are discovered later; or increased biodiversity may be unexpectedly observed after a feature has been installed solely for the social amenity.

Throughout the immersive journey there was a sense of a separation between those who were utilising biophilic design to address a local environmental crisis and those who were driven by a desire to increase opportunities for urban dwellers to connect with nature. This translates to missed opportunities and rationale for incorporating biophilic design. If the multiple social, environmental and economic benefits were understood in all arenas, it would assist in uniting the arenas towards a combined integrated approach. This would hopefully provide greater means and funding for biophilic design implementation. The benefits cross over into different fields and recognition of this needs to occur. For example, the reduction of urban heat through the cooling effect of building-integrated vegetation is a social health benefit which would alleviate the pressures of heat related stress and deaths for a city's health department. Should the health department then be contributing towards implementation of these biophilic measures? Biophilic design is inter-disciplinary, combining design professions, academics and psychologists. Diverse groups have come together when the opportunity has presented, yet there is untapped potential for the integration and full realisation of the multiple benefits.

6.5.3 The interplay between the themes and arenas: hope in partnerships

The observations and illumination of the immersive journey revealed interplays between the arenas of civic, industry, government and academic research and the themes which contribute to biophilic design implementation. These interplays are depicted in Figure 6.5 below. They all suggest hopeful outcomes when the partnerships start to work.

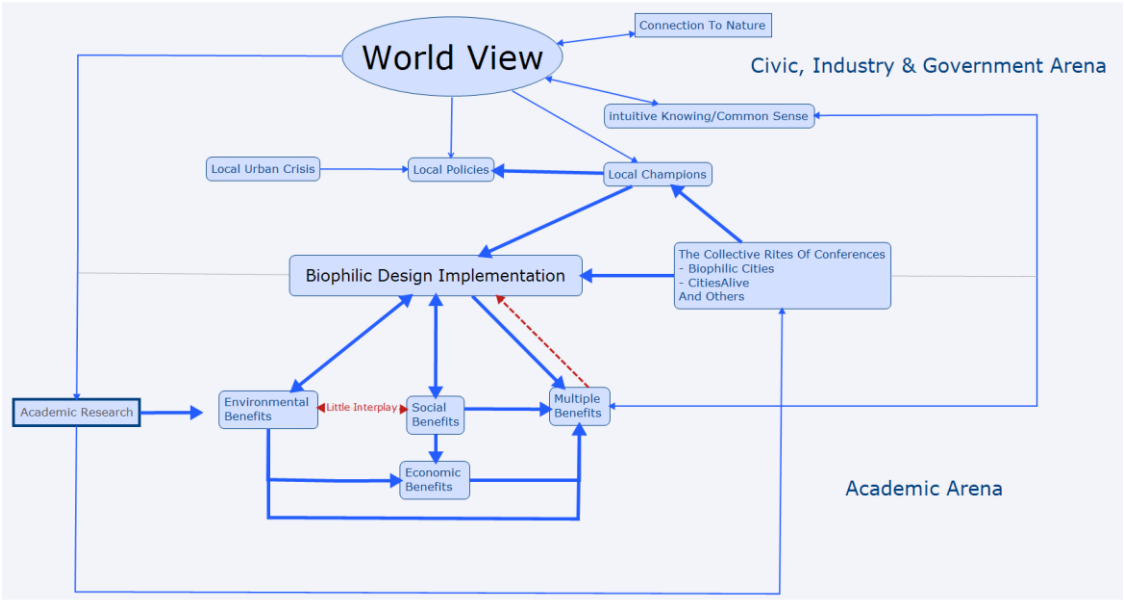


Figure 6.5 Composite depiction of the interplay

(Source Author)

The interplay of the components of Figure 6.5 is discussed below.

Connection to nature, world views, collective rites and local champions

The stories collected throughout my immersive journey are stories of pioneers and innovators in biophilic design. All interviewees expressed a connection with nature. A sense of this connection was conveyed in their conversation, framing their world view, with talk of intuitive knowing and by stating how biophilic design seemed 'common sense'. Many of the interviewees were portrayed as local champions, some having emerged through collective rites such as conferences and fields trips where education, research, stories and demonstrations all contributed to inspire and motivate.

Some of these champions experimented and researched in isolation, such as Liptan and Sharp with their green garage roof trials. Others formed small groups such as the Toronto research team of Hansell, Peck, Bass and Amelung. Siber, a landscape architect in Toronto, united with Guelph University scientists to create the first indoor bio-filter green wall; this was industry meeting with academic research. What is interesting is that out of this collaboration one of the academic researchers commercialised the green wall technology, thus shifting himself from the academic to the industry arena.

Once they had a sense of being in possession of a solution all of the key players found partnerships where they could begin delivering the practical outcomes.

The government, civic, industry and academic arenas

In the immersive journey in the US and Canada, there was sense of different arenas with different drivers between the east coast and the west coast. Biophilic initiatives on the east coast appeared to emerge from the government arena with top-down government drivers. Perhaps this was due to the need for addressing more dire local urban crises. Top-down may still involve, and need, local champions however. Chicago is an example of top-down policy driven initiatives while involving two champions in the Mayor and Berkshire. Retired Mayor Daley is still held in esteem for his resolution in implementing green initiatives in response to the urban heat crisis which resulted in loss of life. Daley's government undertook the trial research. This was due to Daley's commitment to not asking anything of industry that may not be successful, that they couldn't do themselves. Daley then recognised that policy was needed to drive the implementation at the pace he considered necessary and called on Berkshire to do this. In this situation, there was conflict between the government arena and the developers in the industry arena which needed a hero such as Berkshire to negotiate. Washington DC's green roof rebate system, while overseen by an NGO, had also been government driven. Toronto's 2009 green roof legislation was the result of research from a combined group of academics and civic individuals who then took their research to a receptive ear in government.

Interviews in Vancouver, on the west coast of North America, told the story of two landscape architects and one academic who together researched and were innovative in biophilic design applications. Their ideas were met with acceptance as Vancouver already had a civic community who enjoyed nature in their city and a

government who collaborated with community and community desires. There was the impression of bottom-up and top-down meeting with common ideals.

Although Seattle had implemented policy with their green factor, there again was a community who valued nature and supported initiatives. Portland demonstrated the strongest connection between the civic community and the government arena. Local champions such as Houek and Liptan had their ideas supported both by government and the civic community. The predominant world view of the civic community was highlighted with the community vote to tax themselves to pay for acquisition of natural areas remaining within the city.

In Fremantle, Australia, the green wall trials could only be conducted due to the receptivity of the Mayor and his motivation to create greener, more liveable cities. These trials were significant as they were an example of academia and government working together. The survey results indicate that 95% of respondents would like to see more construction of green walls in Fremantle indicating potential for community desire to meet government will.

Throughout the research journey in the US and Canada, the interplay between the arenas varied with cities. It mostly occurred between government and civic society or industry and academia, with less interplay between government and academia. While government may be informed with local research outcomes, this may be limited so the full potential of biophilic design strategies is not recognised. Partnerships produced hopeful outcomes right across the US and Canada but still the mainstreaming was limited due to lack of a clear set of economic drivers.

Academic research

The division in academic research between the investigation of environmental, social, economic and multiple benefits is significant as it tends to reinforce division in the interplay between arenas by limiting the vision of the full potential of biophilic design. The red lines in Figure 6.5 indicate this lack of integration and recognition between the benefits. So while the research benefits are there in the literature under their niche headings, their lack of integration necessitates an interpreter: someone who will do the exploratory research into the literature and champion the cause.

Implementation of biophilic design elements can lead to post-completion understanding of the full range of benefits through experience and observation. Trials and case studies can provide a meeting place for the academic research

arena with government, industry and civic arenas. Conferences and seminars (collective rites) also provide a collaborative and educational meeting place for these arenas and where the silos of benefits and research unite.

6.5.4 The significance of stories, collective rites and aligning of frames

Stories

The importance and power of stories was mentioned by Berkshire, Heerwagen, Sharp and Brastow. Stories, such as the Michigan Mile story, Oberlander's hospital story and Heerwagen's design firm story, demonstrate a concept and an outcome in a real manner that people relate to. In an emerging movement such as biophilic design, stories can reach many people in different arenas, beyond the academics and professionals. They are easily understood, providing real life examples and proof. Brastow also considered that stories can connect people to nature more, encouraging them towards greater stewardship of their environment and beyond. They can teach things about nature in a way with which people can identify.

The collected stories from interviewees in my immersive journey revealed more information and increased my understanding beyond academic research. The stories told to me revealed the motivators of either the city under discussion or the personal ones. They also illustrated both social movement theory and biophilic concepts for me. Beyond that though, the stories helped to characterise the collective identity of the biophilic design social movement. The movement is driven by passion stemming from biophilia: a love of life.

Collective rites

Conferences on a particular theme will attract those with an interest in the topic. They probably already share a common identity, however loosely. At conferences, stories can be shared and exchanged. Themes can be explored and unified plans made. Conferences provide a forum for the aligning of frames and recognition of the common identity. In five of the cities visited, conferences had been held which had an impact on the progression of biophilic design. They brought together players from different arenas yet often with a common problem needing to be solved. These

conferences can also provide the framework and education to foster local champions.

Joslin discussed the impact of the conference in San Francisco. Two components that were missing prior to the conference emerged: local champions and a road map. Washington DC experienced a similar phenomenon. The San Franciscan SWISSNEX tour group is an example of another collective rite which unified frames and created a plan of action for a city. La Clergue in Seattle discussed the importance of the I-Sustain tour which brought together people from different areas of development and united them under one framework. This trip provided ideas for a tool kit and, as LaClergue pointed out, also provided the social capital to implement the ideas.

Collective rites can bring together people who otherwise may not meet. They may be from very separate arenas yet have a common goal, or common problem to address. Biophilic urbanism expands across arenas and across fields of interest. Uniting these groups through collective rites is essential for establishing a functional wholistic framework for urban design. Indeed, the initial group whom Kellert brought together were from diverse backgrounds, yet as Heerwagen mentioned they focussed on creating more pleasing, happier and healthier cities, with the diversity adding to the richness of the outcome.

The connection with nature: a common identity

All interviewees were asked about their connection with nature and, if the connection was there, when it had been established. All expressed a connection with nature. Most had experienced a childhood in nature and spoke highly of this experience. For a few others nature was limited but still there and explored in the suburbs of their youth. For only a couple, exposure to nature had occurred as a young adult, but had been a profound experience which had established a lasting connection with nature. Houek stated that a backpacking experience as a graduate had turned his life one eighty degrees, and like a recent convert this had made him more zealous.

The connection with nature clearly is a common identity for the social movement and represents the aligning of frames as proposed by Jasper (Jasper, 1998). It was bubbling over with some of the interviewees, deeper with others. The extent to which the key players were acting because of their experience of nature or were just

recognising what E.O. Wilson and Erich Fromm called the innate connection to nature, cannot be deduced from these interviews. The strength of this mutual connection appears to support Kellert's (2008b) assertion that biophilia is a weak biological tendency which can be nurtured and strengthened through contact with nature. The biophilic connection contributes to the intuitive knowing and understanding of concepts as 'common sense'. It would contribute to forming world views, shaping responses, potentially also influencing the strength of the innate psychological and physiological responses to nature.

On the other hand the responses to biophilic design by the public are usually immediate and powerful. They appear to indicate that the biophilic connection is perhaps stronger than Kellert suggests, but it just needs to be started by a few champions, most of whom have been given a particular connection to nature that has motivated them to break out of modernist architectural traditions and show what biophilic design can do to transform our cities.

6.5.5 The convergence of enablers

The emergence of biophilic design has been timely. It is the outcome of a confluence of discoveries and events. Through my immersive journey and through the stories of others, it could be said that biophilic design has had a distinct energy that has driven the movement and enabled the flow. There has been the need, in some places the crisis, both socially and environmentally, that has contributed to the impetus. Coinciding with this have been technological discoveries and advancements that have enabled the progression. Not only have there been advancements in roof membrane and green wall technology, there have also been technological advancements for designers, providing the capacity for computer modelling and graphics to interpret and visually display their designs. Engineers and architects can also then utilise computer modelling to translate these designs into working plans.

Again technological innovations and scientific discoveries have contributed to the expansion of the knowledge base of people's physiological and psychological responses to nature. From biological and biochemical discoveries such as Pert's, there has been a continual improvement in the ability to measure human responses to biophilic design and in knowing what the responses are and what to measure. These technological advancements and improved measuring capabilities have enabled the quantifiable economic rationale to begin to be compiled.

Figure 6.6 illustrates this convergence of factors that are supporting the progression of biophilic design: the pressure, the enabling technologies, the economic rationale and the motivators and drivers.

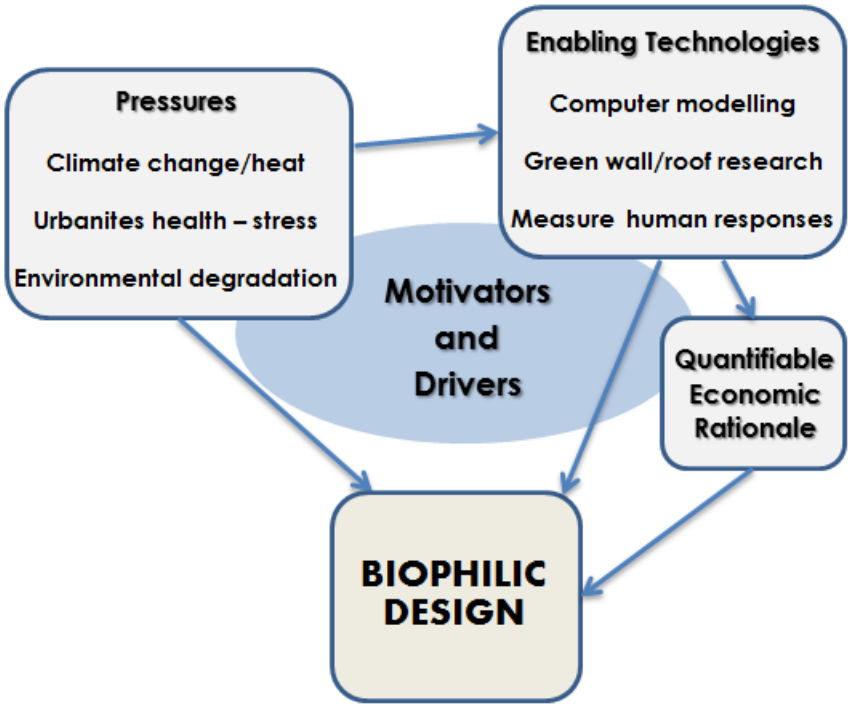


Figure 6.6 Convergence of enablers for biophilic design

(Source Author)

Where the multiple benefits and life cycle analysis are not fully represented and understood, neither are the economic benefits. The business case for biophilic design, though, may be demanded from investors and developers before they are willing to proceed with initiatives. More research is needed in this area.

So while the biophilic design movement appears to have plenty of motivators and enablers combining to support its progression, is it advancing fast enough to halt urban crises such as heat island effect, social health and pollution before further degradation in these areas? What are the motivators and drivers that could be developed and implemented to progress biophilic design at a faster rate? These are discussed on the basis of insights from the interviews and the growing momentum of the social movement. Together they create a framework of principles and practices for mainstreaming the social movement of biophilic design.

6.6 Prime motivating themes for a mainstreaming framework

6.6.1 Identify the need

Where there were clear urban crises which biophilic design could assist in mitigating, research, trials, local champions and policy had a defined pathway to a desired outcome. In other cities, such as my home town of Perth, Australia, there has not been a severe crisis with deaths or the collapse of a waterway's ecosystem, yet crises still do exist: urban heat is rising, biodiversity loss is increasing, and urban trees are dying. Not many urban crises are unique to a city; rather they are shared globally but may vary in their intensity. Each city needs to identify their driving issues as a unifying starting point.

A city inventory or 'stocktake' would assist in helping to identify the current state of the city. Surveys of the urban environmental condition which include biodiversity quality and risk factors of climate stress such as urban heat and flooding could be undertaken. A social inventory of people's health and wellbeing plus their access to nature and daily interactions would also provide base indicators from which policy makers, city planners and designers could plan strategies towards a healthy, biophilic city. This assessment may also help provide the motivation and rationale for biophilic initiatives.

6.6.2 Collective rites, collaboration and education

Each city I visited in the US and Canada which had hosted a CitiesAlive conference related how significant the impact had been on the city, with the emergence of local champions, further conferences and field trips organised, education on the benefits and know-how of green roof and green wall implementation, but particularly with the collaboration of the arenas.

Conferences and symposia provide the opportunity to bring all the stakeholders together: government, civic members from community, industry and professions plus academic researchers. A small example of this was the successful workshop held at the beginning of the Fremantle Greenskins project. All the arenas were represented which provided a high level of knowledge exchange and enthusiasm for the project. Collaborative efforts such as these address the barrier of siloing of

departments and the multiple benefits through facilitating interdisciplinary communication. To maximise the opportunity and the potential for financial contributions, all stakeholders should be represented, such as the health department, the justice department, developers, the retail industry, planners, designers, engineers, the green infrastructure industry and so on.

Presented research outlining the social and environmental benefits and how this translates to economic benefits would help to provide the business case for both government and industry investors. Detailing technical know-how and product information would assist to alleviate the perceived risks associated with the lack of knowledge and understanding. Collaboration also contributes towards development of best practices in biophilic design.

The need for biophilic designers to be collaborative is obvious. This is one profession and indeed one social movement where you can say that nearly every profession and area of knowledge needs to be involved in the process of delivering biophilic design outcomes. Figure 6.7 shows how the collaboration can be imagined as something from above with government, and below with civil society groups that are self-organising, and on each side different elements of professions that need to come together in the middle if we are to create synergistic collaboration.

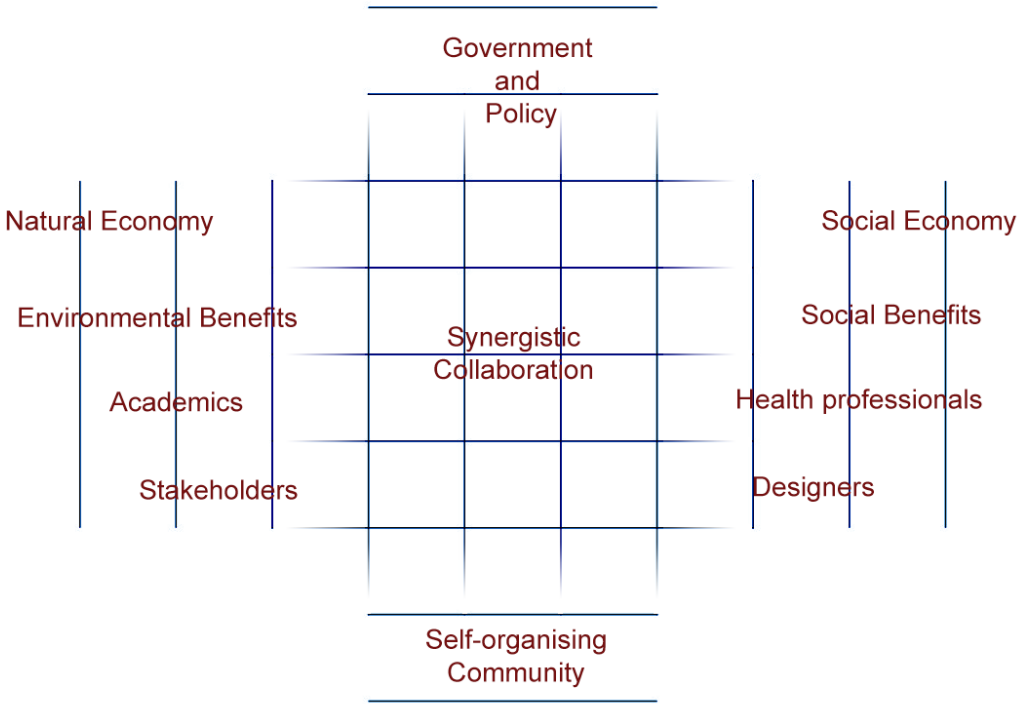


Figure 6.7 Integration and synergistic collaboration

(Source Author)

6.6.3 Local champions

From these collaborative gatherings, the potential for the emergence of local champions exists: those to whom the wholistic framework makes sense and who are prepared to step up and out and push through any barriers.

6.6.4 Case studies and demonstrations

The Chicago City Hall green roof is considered iconic. Its importance is due to its early implementation as one of the first major green roofs in North America, as well as the fact it was installed as a case study and demonstration. It was designed to study thermal properties, plant survival rates, storm water retention and, importantly, to educate. The roof was successful in all its goals and green roofs proceeded to be implemented throughout Chicago. It established a precedent An identified barrier is lack of precedence, a barrier which motivated the conception of the Fremantle Greenskins project. Demonstrations and case studies are vital in providing the tangible showpiece and knowledge to motivate further implementation. Berkshire, in Chicago, could show developers who were reluctant to comply with policy how it was done and how it looked.

Demonstrations are not only important in setting precedents and providing knowledge, they also provide a visual example which could trigger the ripple effect of implementation as experienced in some cities. Some developers, investors and clients such as the Washington DC embassies, have green features installed as they enjoy being an early adopter seeing an opportunity to be unique and iconic. For others, it may be the observed social amenity and aesthetics that motivate them to install their own. The academic literature has shown that humans have positive psychological responses to aesthetics and the varied textures, patterns and motions of nature contribute to people's appreciation of beauty. Bartczak, Dunbar and Bohren's (2013) research into people's decision making processes towards installing a living green wall concluded that the wall's contribution to building aesthetics was the most important factor in the process. This, possibly hedonic, value of green infrastructure contributes to the ripple effect of copycat installations that can follow from the initial demonstration.

6.6.5 Connection and creativity

A more subtle but repeated theme that emerged from interviews throughout the immersive journey in varying terms was the intuitive, deeper sense of the dynamics of the human connection with nature. It felt like an underlying jigsaw tugging to be put together. Connecting to nature and its beauty draws humans in, captivating them through innate biophilic responses, triggering psychological and physiological reactions which restore and de-stress people. While this response may vary with individuals, for some it also taps an intuitive knowing: a sense of wonder and a sense of peace. With the body and mind relaxed and receptive, what some interviewees call an 'open mind', creativity can flow. Ideas and innovations can be born, answers can be found.

With increasing urban growth, there is acknowledgement amongst thinkers that answers to modern day issues are to be found in cities. Cities are a dynamic mix of function and aesthetics, an organised complexity that, like nature, has the potential to self-organise; especially when threatened or facing crises. Immersion, stories and conversation illustrated the varying depths of responses people have with exposure to nature. Providing greater opportunity for human exposure to the positive benefits of nature in the built environment enhances the capacity for positive feedback loops into the self-organising dynamic of the civic arena. These positive feedbacks may contain technological innovations which contribute to restoring urban balance as a functioning eco-system; and they may contain innovations and technological advancements which enable further implementation of nature's patterns and spaces. This would increase the opportunity for urbanites to connect with nature, and the cycle begins again.

Enhancing the opportunity for the nurturing of biophilic tendencies with the resulting positive innate psychological and physiological responses not only helps individuals to manage everyday life in a city, it also assists to build social 'nature fitness'. This 'nature fitness' could also facilitate social connectivity. As discussed, the research has shown people are less stressed in biophilic spaces and more likely to be creative. This can enhance social creative discussion and connection. The success of community gardens illustrates the appeal of social interactions around nature. The Rhode Island conference which resulted in the book *Biophilic Design* was held in a beautiful natural setting which may have enhanced the creative discussion, as suggested by Heerwagen.

To build cities devoid of nature may contribute to the impairment of the self-organising system to innovate, adapt and increase its resilience. Government policy can facilitate the process, or it can hinder. If policy is transparent and collaborative there can be a meeting place for top-down and bottom-up enterprises. Within this junction, community ideas and innovations can be valued and implemented. Collective rites such as conferences can facilitate the collaborative process between government and self-organising community.

6.6.6 The place for policy

Policy has been successful, particularly in the implementation of green roofs in global cities, by incorporating the option for a green roof in sustainability standards, or by providing incentives and rebates and by regulation. Germany began with incentives in 1983 followed by Basel, Switzerland, in 2000. Both countries currently have a high number of green roofs and it is now an accepted form of practice. Since then, Chicago, US; Tokyo, Japan; Portland, US; Toronto, Canada; Seattle, US; and most recently France, have all initiated some form of incentives or regulations encouraging green roof construction in their cities. Globally, there is a growing tool kit of options for policy. Where there is resistance from the civic arena, a collaborative forum would be beneficial.

Chicago successfully implemented policy which led to a substantial increase in the number of green roofs in the city. Berkshire found that regulations, the stick, worked better than incentives, the carrot. But he went through a difficult time of initial implementation and was unpopular with developers and planners. Not every city may have a Berkshire.

Collaborative processes, such as deliberative democracy (Carson & Hartz-Karp, 2005), offer a different avenue towards addressing a city's crisis such as urban heat, by bringing together all stakeholders to jointly solve the issue. In Chicago, the developers could have been invited to be part of the solution and potentially made policy implementation easier. Collaborative forums also provide the interface, the meeting place, where data and research can be presented to the community, increasing urban literacy and civic and industrial utilisation of the research.

Community desire may also present as a policy driver. The power of the ripple effect and aesthetic, hedonic responses could lead to demand for biophilic design being led by community and the supporting biophilic design industry. The rippling effect of

biophilic design initiatives supports the research literature and the biophilic theory of an innate and responsive connection with nature that, once triggered, creates a desire for a greater connection. This also suggests that the divide from nature in cities has not been a divide of humans and nature but has been driven by politics and economics as well as modernistic architectural design that cut out nature from buildings.

Government recognition of community impetus in biophilic activism is crucial for enabling policies that support, not interrupt, the community and any positive self-organising initiatives. The government can also play a role in providing literature and an interface between the research and the civic community.

New planning and design practices need to synthesise across the interdisciplinary professions and community to build biophilic design into cities. Biophilic values and goals need to be incorporated in city planning, design and development plus be included in strategic economic development. Sustainability or 'green' ratings for buildings should include a biophilic component. This integration of biophilia and eco-system services needs to occur at all levels, from region to city to precinct to block to building.

6.6.7 Make the business case

In the interviews the strongest barrier to the implementation of biophilic design in cities was the upfront costs. Even where the costs were comparable but different design thinking was needed, interviewees expressed an encountered resistance to varying from business as usual. Browning et al.'s (2012) grey literature paper began the much-needed creation of the business case, the economic sense in biophilic design. The focus of this paper was on the social and economic benefits and savings. The economics of the environmental benefits have only been researched in small pockets focussed on a particular design element. A complete cost-benefit analysis which includes financial assessment of the multiple benefits would be challenging in its scope yet much research could be done within defined parameters that still present a solid business case. Life cycle analysis could strengthen the case for green roof implementation by factoring in the savings from the extended roof life, reduced energy consumption and water management plus increased biodiversity and the health and social amenity benefits. Comparative life cycle costing of non-biophilic alternatives may also strengthen the case for biophilic options. An example is using aluminium window louvres versus green wall 'leaf' louvres. The cost of the

aluminium extraction, louvre manufacturing, transporting and any post-installation benefits should all be factored into decision making processes when deciding options. The life cycle costs of a green wall leaf louvre installation could be less with the addition of the green wall providing long term social, environmental and economic benefits.

Ideally, to shift away from economic analysis as a main driver would be the most beneficial. If, for example, a green roof was installed solely for the economic savings in energy consumption and did not deliver the expected financial outcome then further green roof projects could be stalled. Viewing a city as a functioning natural system where the benefits of biophilic design were understood to address a variety of the city's issues would strengthen the business case by removing the emphasis on economics as the sole criteria. The human economy depends on the natural economy: on biodiversity and functioning eco-systems. This interdependence needs to be factored into policy decision making and a biophilic design approach can provide an interface between the two.

6.6.8 Build both social and natural capital

An integrated approach to biophilic design places value on the increase of both social and natural capital. The discussion of this began in section 6.6.5 with the concept of positive social feedback loops that develop from greater connection with nature. Social benefits accumulate. This may be through increased desire to create community gardens; increased community engagement and stewardship of urban nature; increased creativity that may flow with less stress; increased productivity; and happier, healthier employees and the ability to cope with everyday life. Increased social capital contributes towards decision making processes, resilience and adaptive creative solutions.

When people recognise that their connection with nature is contributing to their well-being, it can reinforce stewardship of nature and the desire to increase natural capital in cities.

6.6.9 The integration into the profession

Biophilic design will be mainstreamed when it is integrated into urban design and architecture as an everyday practice and not seen as an add-on. When

mainstreamed, biophilic design will be a standard part of education and prolific throughout the literature.

Figure 6.8 below illustrates the potential dynamics of flow which could occur within the professions associated with increased mainstreaming of biophilic design. At any point on this cycle a professional can begin by dealing with the technologies and practices of biophilic design, become activated through our innate responses to nature, absorb the need for action through relaxed and creative minds that become focussed on the real action required, and then join with groups such as professional associations, community groups and other support groups to enable local champions and local policies to be created and supported.

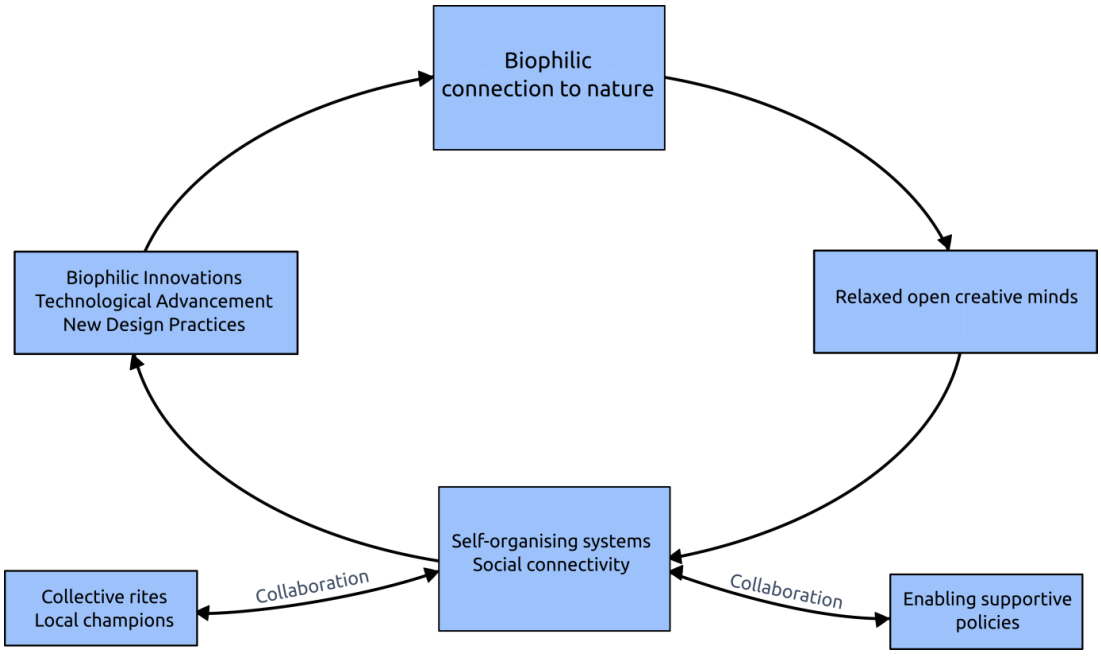


Figure 6.8 The biophilic design mainstreaming cycle

(Source Author)

There is a wide variance between global cities in the biophilic design social movement stages and acceptance. This dynamic flow as depicted above in Figure 6.8 already may be in play in some cities. In Toronto, Bass said he was no longer called on to lecture on green roofs as they were now accepted as standard practice. Green roofs are also standard practice in Switzerland and Germany. In other cities though, such as my own of Perth, Australia, while the interest is there, especially from the community, the barriers are the overriding framework though some professional activity is underway.

6.6.10 The term biophilic design

Throughout the immersive journey there was significant discussion of the word biophilia plus constant explanations of its meaning to those who had not before encountered the word or the term biophilic design. If biophilic design is to be mainstreamed then the question becomes, do we need a new word? As Heerwagen suggested it can be seen as a 'new-fangled term' for what some perceive they have already been doing, or sound like a 'fad'. There has been a push-back to using the term from green roof specialists who mostly install roofs for their functional benefits only. Some landscape architects such as Oberlander have embraced the term biophilic design, appreciating that it encompasses more than traditional landscape architecture by including building-integrated vegetation and the spaces, patterns and materials of nature in building design. Womack, another landscape architect, also understood that this was a different concept with new understandings, rationale and perceptions. Other interviewees had received comments from landscape architects not understanding why there was a new term for what they considered they already practised. Burlin, while unsure about the term, considered that it can explain concepts to others beyond landscape architects, especially how nature is integrated into buildings. He suggests that 'biophilic' can provide a context and a broader framework for including the social quality of life aspects.

By providing the biophilic design broader framework, research into the design principles or the derived benefits could unite under a single term. This would facilitate researching and conveying the multiple benefits.

In discussion with Heerwagen over the term biophilic design she said that her preference would be to use another term, yet neither of us could think of a replacement that expressed the intrinsic nature connection and the human-nature benefits that result. There are terms that convey the green nature aspect such as Living Architecture, Vertical Greenery, Skyrise Greenery, Green Facades, Living Walls and so on. None also convey the human component.

There was agreement that something was needed: a term that would unite the fragmented disciplines and the fragmented research; a term that would provide a framework and context for great urban design and planning; a term that illustrates the change in conservation and the human-nature connection in cities. Undertaking this research reinforced what a large umbrella biophilic design is and how the parameters move between disciplines and thinkers. Should biophilic design include all aspects of nature in the city with the focus on the shift in the paradigm

surrounding it? Does the term need to be narrowed to just include the architectural innovations and biophilic understanding of the built environment? Perhaps Biophilic Architecture could be a term that slightly closes the umbrella, unites the fragmented research yet finds its niche and greater acceptance and understanding.

The ten prime motivating themes which contribute towards a framework for the mainstreaming of the social movement of mainstreaming biophilic design are depicted below in Figure 6.9.

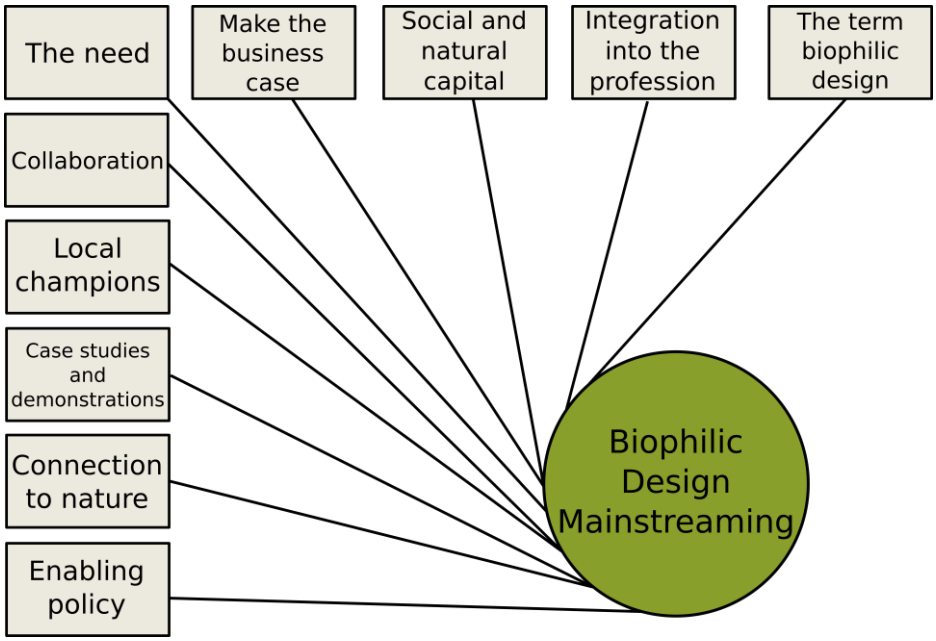


Figure 6.9 Prime motivating themes for a mainstreaming framework

(Source Author)

6.7 Conclusion

This chapter addressed the overall aim of this dissertation by identifying and discussing the motivators and drivers behind the implementation of biophilic design in cities, answering the question: *what is motivating the rapid uptake of biophilic design elements in cities globally and can they be further enabled?* These are summarised in the social movement stages of emergence and coalescence:

Emergent themes

- Connection to nature
- Intuitive knowing/common sense
- Local urban crisis
- Multiple benefits
- The collective rites of conferences

Coalescent themes

- Local champions
- Successful trials
- Multiple benefits
- Policy
- Ripple effect and image
- Aesthetics
- Economics
- Liveability, stress reduction and well-being

These motivators do reflect the research literature to some extent. There was a significant focus on the implementation of green roofs in response to urban crises. There was also strong acknowledgement of the physiological and psychological benefits of the connection to nature, particularly stress reduction and health.

Beyond the motivating themes, other components of interplays, dynamics, barriers and collective rites emerged. These are influencing factors on the mainstreaming of biophilic design and are listed below:

Components influencing the mainstreaming of biophilic design:

- The barriers
- The silos
- The interplay between the themes and arenas
- The significance of stories, collective rites and the aligning of frames
- The convergence of enablers

Together the above listed themes and components told a story and created a picture of possibilities where biophilic design is an integrated component of city design. This assisted in the development of a framework for mainstreaming biophilic design initiatives in global cities which addressed another core research question: Can identified motivators for biophilic design implementation be developed into a framework to assist mainstreaming this design approach?

This dissertation identified principles and practices which may assist in mainstreaming biophilic design. These can be transformed into a framework with clearly identifiable stages.

Prime motivating themes for a mainstreaming framework:

- Identify the need
- Collaborate through collective rites, conferences and education
- Encourage and support local champions
- Implement case studies and demonstrations
- Increase connection to nature leading to positive feedback loops of creativity and connectivity
- Support and enable the above stages through policy
- Make the business case
- Build both social and natural capital
- The integration into the profession
- The term biophilic design

The main requirements for mainstreaming biophilic design emerged as a continuous thread of integration, collaboration and unification. Where the arenas of civic society, industry, government or academia had met there had been movement and outcomes in the biophilic design social movement and biophilic urban initiatives. The separation of social and environmental benefits in the research was reflected in the explicated themes, presenting as a barrier due to its contribution to the segmenting of the benefits in practice. Uniting the research would assist in uniting the arenas and the stakeholders plus reinforcing the economic business case with a more wholistic representation.

Collective rites, collaboration, local champions, case studies and demonstrations can unite and integrate, with connection with nature and creativity providing the interface for government and community, the natural and social economies and all the biophilic benefits to overlap in a synergistic self-organising urban culture response to a need to survive. Biophilic tendencies can be nurtured and strengthened.

Biophilic design is providing a framework for this integration and the term potentially can unite a diversity of disciplines, benefits and design elements. Experience and growth has revealed the multitude of aspects and elements that can come under the term biophilic design, perhaps more than the early group who met and discussed

the concept ever thought. There is a rapidly growing shift in the approach to how cities are being designed and a term for this such as biophilic design is helpful yet there is the possibility that biophilic design as a term may be outgrown or refined.

The next chapter concludes the research with a brief overview of the current global stage of the biophilic design social movement and what further work needs to be done.

CHAPTER SEVEN
CONCLUSIONS AND FUTURE RESEARCH

7.1 Introduction

This concluding chapter brings the biophilic design social movement story up to date. It briefly examines the progression of the movement in recent times and where there are indicators it is moving into the mainstream. A selection of accumulated literature in the form of books, websites and blogs is used to indicate how rapidly biophilic design has expanded globally.

This flows into the conclusion to the dissertation where the thesis questions are re-examined followed by suggestions for future research.

7.2 The progression of the social movement

It is thirty-one years since Wilson's book on biophilia, twelve years since *The Biophilia Hypothesis* was published and seven years since the publication of *Biophilic Design.* The Rhode Island conference in 2007 brought together a diverse but dynamic group whose creative discussion and insights resulted in the birth of biophilic design. Since the book *Biophilic Design* was published, the social movement of biophilic design, as a new approach to the human-nature connection and city design, has rapidly expanded around the world. It has emerged through local champions, collaboration and education.

Green roofs, as the research literature suggested, are the most implemented biophilic design principle. They are an accepted and expected design feature in Germany and Switzerland. They are mainstreamed in Toronto where Bass (personal communication, 2013), who was a local innovator of green roofs, noted that from being asked frequently to present informative talks on green roofs, he was no longer invited as the need had passed. Green roofs had been accepted within both government and the community.

The mainstreaming of biophilic design is more than acceptance of green roofs; it is a transition of thinking, an integration of disciplines, where the philosophy of biophilic design is appearing in the everyday approach to urban design and planning. Globally the social movement is at different stages; it greatly varies between cities and between countries.

In my own city of Perth, Australia, there is emerging interest, and it is in this emergent stage that the city and its community are sitting. So while the movement has mainstreamed in some cities, in others it is just emerging or perhaps not even that. There is the opportunity to learn from the leading cities, to examine their motivators, to tap into presented potential and to fast-track initiatives.

Womack, who teaches landscape architecture in Toronto, mentioned that he included biophilic design in his courses now. My own university, Curtin University in Perth, Australia, is also considering introducing study courses in the design principles and philosophy. A local engineer commented on the need to learn about biophilic design and green roofs in response to consumer demand. I have had approaches from urban planning and architecture students for information. I also lecture in three units in sustainability about aspects of biophilic design.

In the last seven years since *Biophilic Design* was published there has been significant progression in the social movement of biophilic design, driven by a variety of motivators including a connection to nature. Throughout the research, behind the continuous positive comments and interest, there appeared to be a deeper hunger that has been awakened in urbanites: a desire for nature and the forms and patterns of nature to become an integral part of city design available to all.

7.2.1 Biophilic Cities

Initially nine cities were signed up as 'biophilic cities'. Recently, there has been an increase in the number of cities wishing to become rated as a biophilic city. An email from Beatley outlined this, with nine US cities wanting to join and another city in England.

A large number of emails have been exchanged globally with biophilic city members to develop a revised protocol for what constitutes a biophilic city. This is due to be released soon and will outline the requirements that a city needs to address before joining the Biophilic City Network. Smaller events have been held in the US such as

the recent one in Philadelphia which brought together Bill Browning and Tim Beatley with local proponents, practitioners and members of the health care community. From email discussion within the Biophilic Cities group after the event, it was very successful.

In Portland when Burlin discussed the criteria for quality of life, he concluded that they all fell under the same umbrella and he saw the Biophilic Cities Network as a way of uniting and integrating these qualities. There is a huge potential to do this. The collaboration between city representatives brings together creative minds and clever thinking. Biophilic City conferences could be held globally with greater frequency as the movement expands.

The 2013 Biophilic City conference developed a list of goals which were perceived as helpful towards the progression of biophilic design within our cities. These were introduced in section 5.3.2. Similarities do exist between aspects of the developed framework for the mainstreaming of biophilic design as outlined in Chapter Six, on the right below, and the Biophilic City list as shown on the left below. This supports the universal application of the framework.

Table 7.1 Comparative outcomes

Biophilic Cities Conference	Biophilic design framework
Cultivate a biophilic consciousness	Connection to nature
Cultivate a practice of awareness	Intuitive knowing and common sense
Showcase best practices	Successful research and conferences
Advocacy and adoption	Local champions, ripple effect
Networking	Collaboration and collective rites
Strategies for communicating the urgency to leaders and communicating the multiple benefits on offer with biophilic initiatives in urbanism	Local champions, collectives rites, social capital, unite the silos

These strategies provide a focus for Biophilic City representatives and for those interested in becoming members.

7.2.2 Books

Two recent books on sustainability included chapters on biophilic design. This may indicate that biophilic design is now being included as a pathway towards sustainability.

One of the books, *Constructing Green: The Social Structures of Sustainability,* was published in 2013 (Henn & Hoffman, 2013). It contains two chapters on biophilic design: *'*Incorporating biophilic design through living walls*:* The decision-making process' (Bartczak, Dunbar & Bohren, 2013) and *'*Constructing the biophilic community' (Browning, 2013). Another book is a beautifully written and presented comprehensive overview of emerging design philosophies called *Designing for Hope: Pathways towards Regenerative Sustainability* (Hes & Du Plessis, 2015). It examines the why and how of regenerative design and sustainability. A sizable chapter is dedicated to establishing the need to reconnect with nature, using *The Biophilia Hypothesis* as rationale and biophilic design elements as guiding principles.

I have contributed the Fremantle Greenskins story to two forthcoming books: one on sustainable development goals and the other on resilient cities.

There is an upcoming special issue on biophilic urbanism planned for the *International Journal of Smart and Sustainable Built Environment*.

7.2.3 Conferences

As discussed in the previous chapter, conferences are an important component of progression of the social movement of biophilic design. I receive regular notification of conferences concerning biophilic design or the principles of biophilic design via email. These are occurring around the globe and continue to unite interest groups in collaboration and education. The CitiesAlive conference still occurs annually and is planned to be held in New York in 2015. The 4th International Green Roof Congress was held in Istanbul, Turkey, early in 2015. This is hosted by Greenroofs.com and attendance can also be virtual. In November 2015, Singapore will once again host the International Skyrise Greenery Conference.

The second Biophilic Cities conference is planned to be held in Rio de Janeiro, Brazil, in 2016. The Biophilic Cities project which was launched at the conference in 2013 by Tim Beatley continues to grow.

7.2.4 The influence of the New York High line

The New York High Line is an example of the success of a biophilic initiative and of the ripple potential of the design approach. With its third stage being built and attracting nearly five million visitors in a year (Grynbaum, 2014), the High Line has inspired similar constructions around the world. Sydney, Australia, has begun work on the Goods Line which also utilises a disused rail freight corridor to create a pedestrian green corridor (Chua, 2014). Similarly, Chicago's Bloomingdale Trail is attracting funds and attention from government and community to upgrade the trial as has happened with the New York High Line (Sherman, 2008). London, Mexico City and Seoul all have similar plans for their own High Lines (Kwaak, 2014; Cilento, 2014; Kim, 2014).

7.2.5 Websites and Blogs

During this three year period of research there has been a significant accumulation of on-line literature and examples of global initiatives in biophilic design. Although not academic literature, the copious volume of on-line material indicates the momentum, acceptance and the beginning of biophilic design as a part of everyday life: the mainstreaming in professional practice and urban community life.

7.2.6 Greenroofs.com

Early in 2013 I attended an on-line virtual summit organised by *Greenroofs.com.* Since then, each week, a *'Project of the Week'* is emailed to me. These selected weekly projects are available to view on-line (Greenroofs.com., n.d.). Beginning in January, 2013, up until September 2015, this is 137 projects. The projects are an impressive selection of green roofs and green walls from countries around the world.

7.2.7 Further websites

Biophilic design initiatives arrive via email regularly from other organisations and websites. The prime ones were *Green roofs for Healthy Cities* (http://www.greenroofs.org/) and *Inhabitat* (http://inhabitat.com). *Green roofs for Healthy Cities* also published an online journal of green infrastructure examples and information called *Living Architecture Monitor* (http://www.livingarchitecturemonitor.com/).

A selection of global projects which have been featured by the above organisations, plus others discovered through immersive research are compiled in a matrix in Appendix C.

Amongst these on-line articles were two of particular significance due to their usage of the term *biophilia. 'Biophilia grows in Silicon Valley'* (Miller, 2015) discusses the features of a planned campus in Sunnyvale in Silicon Valley. It plans to build 90,000 square feet of rooftop gardens with workers never being further than forty five feet from a view or interaction with nature. A quote from the article cites the developer as stating: *"Increasing biophilic design into a space increases user experience."* Throughout the article reference to biophilic design is made as the term to describe the nature based design approach. The project is pursuing LEED Platinum, Living Building Challenge and Net Zero Energy certifications; biophilic design contributes to achieving all these standards. This example demonstrates early adopter acceptance of the term *biophilic design* in mainstream development to describe their approach.

Researching Nadkarni's Blue Room project in Snake River Correctional Institution in Oregon revealed an online article discussing the project under the title 'The Blue Room, biophilia and retrofitting Oregon's prisons*'* (Libby, 2014). The article discussed the concepts of biophilia as the base premise of Nadkarni's research. This is the only article I have encountered which links biophilic design and prison design. The article appeared in a blog about design in Portland, Portland Architecture.

7.2.8 Google trends

The increasing internet traffic, although not in the academic arena, is significant as indicating the increasing popular interest in biophilic design principles globally.

Google has a site which graphs the search traffic for particular terms. These are contained in Appendix D.

There has been a significant increase in the last four years in online traffic searching the terms biophilic and biophilic design. Beatley's book *Biophilic Cities* may have contributed to this.

7.3 Conclusions

In Chapter One the thesis questions were set out and they are repeated here in order to see how they have been answered.

The overall research question is:

What is motivating the rapid uptake of biophilic design elements in cities globally and can they be further enabled?

This question was augmented by four core research questions as follows:

1. Is biophilic design the emergence of a new social movement?
2. Does the research literature support the assertions of the biophilic design theorists?
3. What are the motivators and drivers of the pioneering people involved in implementing biophilic design features within cities?
4. Can identified motivators and drivers for biophilic design implementation be developed into a framework to assist mainstreaming this design approach?

The thesis attempted to answer these by using heuristic inquiry. Following this methodology of heuristic inquiry a four phase process was developed to investigate the social movement of biophilic design. The thesis chapters covered these four phases as follows:

- **Phase one: Initial engagement with the focus of inquiry –** Chapter Two and Chapter Three. These two chapters addressed the first two core questions.

- **Phase two: Immersion –** Chapter Four and Chapter Five outline the local and global immersion with the interviews summarised. These interviews and the events surrounding them were foundational in providing the data for all four core questions.

- **Phase three: Incubation –** The writing of Chapters Four and Five provided the chance to reflect on the immersion experience and so they are the incubated summaries of what motivates and drives the social movement, i.e. question three. .

- **Phase four: Creative Synthesis –** Chapter Six. This chapter addressed the overall research question and the second two core research questions.

***Phase one: Initial engagement with the focus of inquiry*.**

Chapter Two outlined the evolution of biophilic design by reviewing the literature beginning with Fromm. Fromm first defined biophilia as a love of life. Wilson later defined the term as "the innate tendency to focus on life and lifelike processes". Kellert, Wilson and others developed the theory by proposing further qualities to biophilia such as its inherent qualities as a part of our species evolutionary heritage. This they called the Biophilia Hypothesis.

Biophilic Design originated from a meeting based around the theory of the Biophilia Hypothesis. The meeting was of a diverse group with a common goal of increasing nature in cities. This group proposed Biophilic Design with the united aim of expressing the inherent human need to affiliate with nature in the design of the built environment.

The thesis thus posited that biophilic design was becoming a social movement. Using James Jasper's framework of a social movement, the thesis set about examining if biophilic design fitted the three stages of social movement: emergence, coalescence and mainstreaming. It did; as outlined in the thesis the heuristic inquiry approach enabled me to become engaged, immersed and then synthesise material that could show how biophilic design was indeed a social movement.

Thus this thesis confirmed biophilic design as an emerging, coalescing and mainstreaming social movement. This answered the first core research question: Is biophilic design a new social movement?

Jasper's social movement theory also provided a guiding framework for the thesis research in discovering the motivators and drivers of biophilic design. It proposed different components comprising a social movement as well as different stages of

development. An understanding of these guided the immersive research by providing knowledge of what to observe.

The second core research question asked by this dissertation was: Does the research literature support the assertions of the biophilic design theorists?

Chapter Three addressed this question. It reviewed the evidence, concluding that there is sufficient research literature to support the assertions of the biophilic design theorists who suggest an innate human connection to nature. If it were so then human physiological and psychological responses should be observable; these were collected from literature around the world as clear evidence for the Biophilia Hypothesis. The identified and discussed social and environmental benefits in Chapter Three provide the rationale for biophilic design and the base for the economic benefits that logically must then flow. This chapter also revealed the separation of the research into silos of social and environmental with little research presenting the full picture of all the benefits of biophilic design, especially economic benefits.

This initial engagement with the topic, as presented in Chapter Two and Chapter Three, clarified the context in preparation for the second phase of heuristic inquiry (immersive journey). The deeper insights which were gained through understanding Fromm's concept of biophilia provided a basic framework of what people could potentially experience through a connection with nature: a love of life. Beyond biophilia as a possible motive this dissertation sought to answer the core question of what are the motivators and drivers of the pioneers involved in implementing biophilic design features within cities? To gain an answer to this question, and a greater understanding of the social movement of biophilic design, an immersion within it was needed, with complete surrender to a journey of discovery. This was the second stage of heuristic inquiry, the immersion, both at a local and global level.

Phase two (Immersive Journey)

Chapter Four began the immersive journey with direct engagement with the phenomenon through local experiences and two local interviews. The encountered motivators and drivers in this immersive experience reflected limited recognition of the social benefits as discussed in Chapter Two. They did contribute towards the compilation of motivators and drivers identified within each social movement stage.

Chapter Five continued the compilation of motivators and drivers through an immersive journey in a global context. This journey involved interviews with many of the pioneers of biophilic design where the stories of why and how they have implemented biophilic design were told. These two investigative experiences, particularly the interviews, in Chapters Four and Five resulted in a collection of motivators and drivers identified within the two social movement stages of emergence and coalescence.

Phase three (Incubation)

The list of motivators and drivers was large and unwieldy. To answer the question of what the motivators and drivers are for the rapid uptake of biophilic design initiatives, an incubation period of inner reflection and illumination was needed to explicate the themes of motivators and drivers in the social movement stages.

These have been summarised in Chapters Four and Five and clearly show that there are a range of contributing factors that overlap across the whole social movement. Thus these chapters help to answer core question three of the thesis. A summary of the factors is brought together in the final section below (and outlined in Figure 7.5).

Phase four (Creative Synthesis)

The period of incubation resulted in distinct, revealed themes of the motivators and drivers of biophilic design. These are presented in Chapter Six as a Creative Synthesis and this addresses both the overall research question and the third core research question. The overall research question is: What is motivating the rapid uptake of biophilic design elements in cities globally and can they be further enabled? This question is closely linked to the third core question which is: What are the motivators and drivers of the pioneers involved in implementing biophilic design features within cities?

Five emergent motivating themes and eight coalescent motivating themes were identified. These are presented in Table 7.2.

Table 7.2 Emergent and coalescent themes

Emergent themes	Coalescent themes
Connection to nature	Local champions
Intuitive knowing/common sense	Successful trials
Local urban crisis	Multiple benefits
Multiple benefits	Policy
The collective rites of conferences	Ripple effect and image
	Aesthetics
	Economics
	Liveability, stress reduction and well-being

A love of life, or biophilic connection to nature, has been a consistent theme that has driven the social movement of biophilic design. This has been coupled with an awareness of the increasing disconnect from nature that has occurred in cities beginning in the Modernistic era. For many of the pioneers these were the core motivating themes; for others it was the range of benefits that can result from implementation of design elements. Aesthetics, the power of the ripple effect and the importance of local champions and collective rites contributed to the momentum of the rapidly expanding social movement of biophilic design.

Within the period of incubation and then explication other themes beyond the motivators and drivers also emerged which contributed significantly to the creation of a framework of ten mainstreaming implementation strategies for biophilic design in cities. This addressed the fourth core research question: Can identified motivators and drivers for biophilic design implementation be developed into a framework to assist mainstreaming this design approach? The list of motivators and drivers was not the sole contributor to the framework; it utilised other revealed themes. The identified components that can contribute towards mainstreaming the social movement of biophilic design are listed:

- Identify the need
- Collaborate through collective rites, conferences and education
- Encourage and support local champions

- Implement case studies and demonstrations
- Increase connection to nature leading to positive feedback loops of creativity and connectivity
- Support and enable the above stages through policy
- Make the business case
- Build both social and natural capital
- Integrate into professions
- Define the term

Mainstreaming of biophilic design is occurring in some global cities, with other cities still in the emergent stage. The three stages of the social movement, emergent, coalescent and mainstreaming, are depicted in Figure 7.1 showing how the various components of each level push the social movement on.

The social movement of biophilic design has triggered a shift in the approach to the inclusion of nature within cities. The world is ready and, it appears, willing, to bring nature into humanity and humanity into nature.

7.4 Personal conclusions

There is no standard way of designing biophilically; the rich palette of design elements and multiple benefits extends the concept across multiple disciplines beyond landscape architects to include biologists, psychologists, architects, urban designers, health professionals into all business and all levels of government. Biophilic design is a significant social movement that is already impacting on urban design and provides further potential to provide the opportunity and choice for urban dwellers to connect with nature in healthier more liveable cities. While the term biophilia originated through exploration of human nature (psychology), biophilic design is evolving to represent a weaving together of the dichotomy that has existed between humans and nature in the built environment.

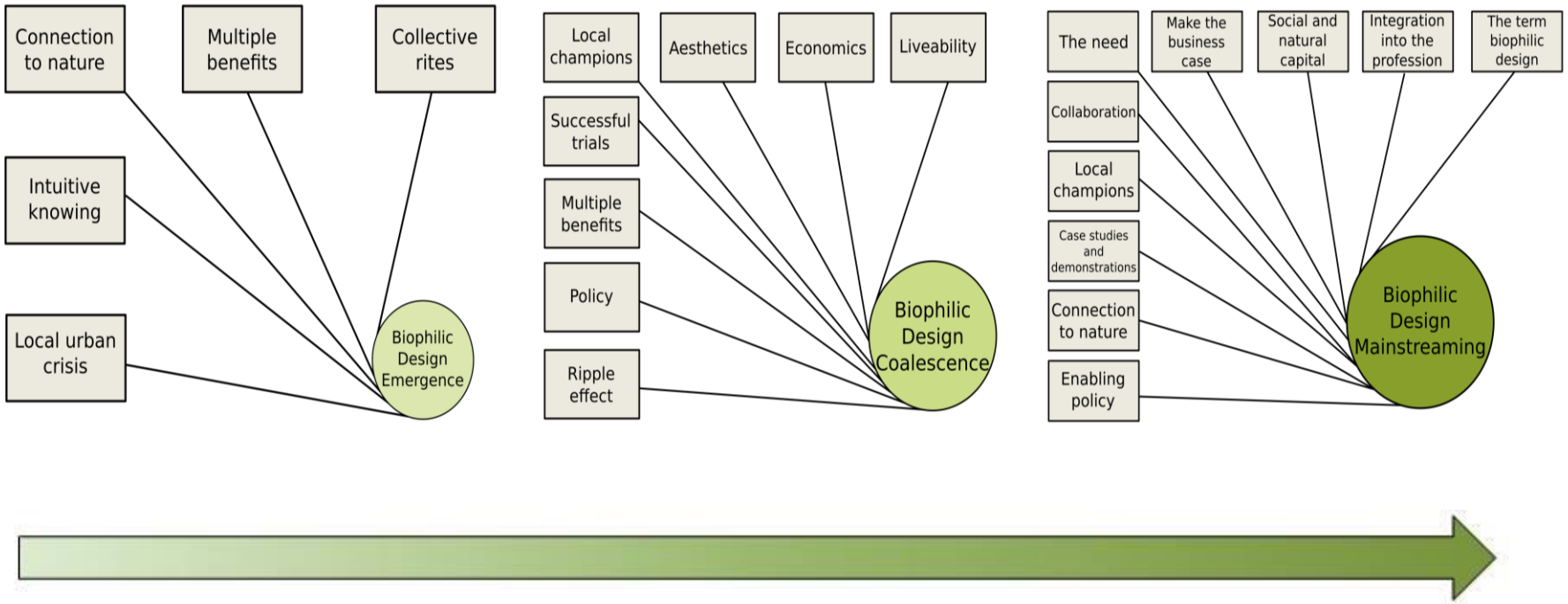


Figure 7.1 Biophilic Design social movement journey

(Source Author)

The necessary components for biophilic design to integrate into good city design are assembled in books, articles and in this thesis. Biophilic design initiatives are an effective response to urban crises, both social and environmental, so there is a need. The technology has been developed to implement, design and to monitor the social and environmental benefits which can then be translated into quantifiable economic benefits. Yet the wholistic picture of these possibilities has not been realised. The gap between community and government, stakeholders and research is contributing to retardation of implementation as both knowledge and practice is fractured. Integration may be assisted through unification of the components under the umbrella term of biophilic design.

Biophilic design is providing a meeting place for humans and nature plus function, beauty, technology, creativity, where top-down can meet bottom-up. It is providing a framework for integration of siloed arenas and benefits and where recognition of the interdependency of the motivators can occur. At the core is a love of life and a human-nature connection, one that includes creativity and peace. Does the rapid uptake of biophilic design where it has been introduced suggest true biophilia, the seeking to unite? Perhaps this increased connection with nature nurtures biophilic tendencies and does help bring nature into humanity and humanity into nature. Biophilic design has the opportunity to define a new relationship with nature and potentially one which is driven by biophilia, not just by the benefits nature brings.

People want nature, the ripple effect demonstrates this. Biophilic design can contribute towards creating cities where people have the opportunity to de-stress, be healthier and more creative. A local champion cannot change our built environment in isolation. They need to find others with the same vision and passion to change or progress. Biophilic design is a global movement and worldwide there are local champions and small groups that are collectively contributing to this greater global movement. They join together through collective rites such as conferences. They build the research. They implement the ideas and concepts which then aids further research. They make it happen. Government policy needs to enable and support the process of positive self-organising communities and provide opportunities for education and collaboration. Integrating the components provides the opportunity for synergistic momentum in biophilic design initiatives, resulting in healthy, liveable and resilient cities where nature, and all its elements, is an integral, accepted and expected inhabitant. Buildings can become more than technological feats,

they can be habitats. All urbanites should have access to nature in their lives, the chance to connect with nature or, in Fromm's view, the opportunity to follow the progressive path of life through love. Imagine cities where every day people can interact with nature, where opioid receptors, our molecules of emotion, start zinging, biophilic love is stirred, and the world is a little better for it.

7.5 Future research

With biophilic design an emerging and very broad field there is a substantial amount of research needed. The immersive journey identified barriers which need to be addressed and raised further questions:

- The economics of biophilic design:
  Lack of the business case and the economic rationale presented as a prime barrier to biophilic design implementation. Research is needed into the economics of the life cycle, especially compared to non-biophilic options, plus the economics of both social and environmental benefits.

- Further studies on stress reduction through biophilic design applications:
  Stress is a social crisis of cities and contributes to health problems both physical and mental. Biophilic design for office workers could greatly assist their health and if demonstrable will spread biophilic design rapidly.

- Research is needed on biophilic design in prisons and the potential to not only reduce stress for prisoners, staff and visitors but to also to improve mental health and cognitive learning for inmates.

- Development of the mainstreaming framework as proposed in this dissertation. Can it work? Is it possible to develop a guide for cities? Can it help to foster a shift in consciousness and attitude towards urban dwelling?

- Research is needed on the effects of increasing nature in an area which can result in gentrification. Can direct nature be implemented without causing a rise in real estate prices? Should this increase be value-captured and contribute towards other amenities in the area?

- The potential for biophilic design through direct greenery, insulation or shading to significantly reduce carbon in cities is not fully realised or exploited. Research could enable biophilic design to be quantified and made into mainstream green credentialing of buildings.

- The social, environmental and economic benefits of biophilic design are still accumulating and research is continuously needed to update and amalgamate this research plus disseminate the compiled outcome.

- Research on cross benefits and inter-departmental beneficial outcomes would assist in funding and impetus for implementation.

- To conduct further social surveys on human responses to nature. This could assist to further the understanding of the human-nature connection, particularly the relevance of beauty and aesthetics.

- Research is needed on the differences resulting from living in a biophilic environment or a non-biophilic environment particularly in relation to age and gender differences.

- Research is needed on the metrics of a biophilic city. Defining a biophilic city's attributes and requirements ensures that biophilic design will not be compartmentalised into established nature in the city strategies.

BIBLIOGRAPHY

350.org what we do. from http: //350.org/about/what-we-do

Roots and Shoots 11th May 2013 & J. Lush & S. Hahn (Directors). (2013), *Roots and Shoots*: 720 ABC Perth.

Avaaz. (2015). from http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Avaaz

202020. (2014). Projects. 2014, from http://202020vision.com.au/projects/

Abbott, A. D. (2004). *Methods of discovery : Heuristics for the social sciences / Andrew Abbott*. New York: W.W. Norton & Co.

Akbari, H. (2002). Shade trees reduce building energy use and CO2 emissions from power plants. *Environmental Pollution, 116, Supplement 1*(0), S119-S126. doi: http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/S0269-7491(01)00264-0

Albanese, A. (2013). *State of Australian Cities 2013* A. G. D. o. I. a. Transport (Ed.) Retrieved from https://infrastructure.gov.au/infrastructure/pab/soac/files/2013_00_INFRA1782_MCU_SOAC_FULL_WEB_FA.pdf

Alexander, C., Ishikawa, S. & Silverstein, M. (1977). *A pattern language : Towns, buildings, construction.* New York: Oxford University Press.

Anacostia Watershed Society. (2015). Green roofs. Retrieved August 2, 2015, from http://www.anacostiaws.org/green-roofs

Anders, R. M. & Walker, J. B. (2011). Green roof stormwater performance in a southeastern US climate. Paper presented at the 9th Annual Green Roof and Wall Conference, Philadelphia, USA.

Appleton, J. (1975). *The experience of landscape*. London: Wiley.

Bartczak, C., Dunbar, B., & Bohren, L. (2013). Incorporating biophilic design through living walls: The decision-making process. In R. Henn & A. Hoffman (Eds.), *Constructing green: The social structures of sustainability*. Massachusetts: Massachusetts Institute of Technology.

Battellino, R. (2010). Mining booms and the Australian economy. *RBA Bulletin, March*, 63-69.

Baumann, N. (2006). Ground-nesting birds on green roofs in Switzerland: Preliminary observations. *Urban Habitats, 4*(1), 37-50.

Beatley, T. (2011). *Biophilic cities: Integrating nature into urban design and planning*. Washington, DC: Island Press.

Beauchemin, K. M. & Hays, P. (1996). Sunny hospital rooms expedite recovery from severe and refractory depressions. *Journal of Affective Disorders, 40*(1–2), 49-51. doi: http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/0165-0327(96)00040-7

Benedetti, F., Colombo, C., Barbini, B., Campori, E. & Smeraldi, E. (2001). Morning sunlight reduces length of hospitalization in bipolar depression. *Journal of Affective Disorders, 62*(3), 221-223. doi: http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/S0165-0327(00)00149-X

Benson, E. D., Hansen, J. L., Schwartz Jr, A. L. & Smersh, G. T. (1998). Pricing residential amenities: The value of a view. *Journal of Real Estate Finance and Economics, 16*(1), 55-73. doi: 10.1023/A:1007785315925

Berkebile, B., Fox, B. & Hartley, A. (2008). Reflections on implementing biophilic design. In S. R. Kellert, J. Heerwagen & M. Mador (Eds.), *Biophilic design: The theory, science, and practice of bringing buildings to life*. Hoboken, N.J.: Wiley.

Berman, M. G., Jonides, J. & Kaplan, S. (2008). The cognitive benefits of interacting with nature. *Psychological Science, 19*(12), 1207-1212. doi: 10.2307/40064866

Berman, M. G., Kross, E., Krpan, K. M., Askren, M. K., Burson, A., Deldin, P. J. & Jonides, J. (2012). Interacting with nature improves cognition and affect for individuals with depression. *Journal of Affective Disorders, 140*(3), 300-305. doi: http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.jad.2012.03.012

Berto, R. (2005). Exposure to restorative environments helps restore attentional capacity. *Journal of Environmental Psychology, 25*(3), 249-259. doi: http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.jenvp.2005.07.001

Biederman, I. & Vessel, E. A. (2006). Perceptual pleasure and the brain: A novel theory explains why the brain craves information and seeks it through the senses. *American Scientist, 94*(3), 247-253. doi: 10.2307/27858773

Biophilic Cities. Biophilic Cities. 2014, from http://biophiliccities.org/films/

BiophilicCities. (2015). Homepage. Retrieved August 2, 2015, from http://biophiliccities.org/

Birmingham, L. (1999). Between prison and the community: The 'revolving door psychiatric patient' of the nineties. Editorial. *British Journal of Psychiatry, 174* (MAY), 378-379.

Brengman, M., Willems, K. & Joye, Y. (2012). The impact of in-store greenery on customers. *Psychology and Marketing, 29*(11), 807-821. doi: 10.1002/mar.20566

Brenneisan, S. (2006). Space for urban wildlife: Designing green roofs as habitats in Switzerland. *Urban Habitats, 4*(1), 27-36.

Brown, H. (2008). Prologue: In retrospect. In S. R. Kellert, J. Heerwagen & M. Mador (Eds.), *Biophilic design: The theory, science, and practice of bringing buildings to life.* Hoboken, N.J.: Wiley.

Browning, B. (2013). Constructing the biophilic community. In R. Henn & A. Hoffman (Eds.), *Constructing green: The social structures of sustainability*. Massachusetts: Massachusetts Institute of Technology.

Browning, B., Garvin, C., Ryan, C., Kallianpurkar, N., Labruto, L., Watson, S. & Knop, T. (2012). The economics of biophilia - Why designing with nature in mind makes financial sense. from http://www.terrapinbrightgreen.com/report/economics-of-biophilia/

Bryman, A. (2008). *Social research methods*. Oxford, U.K.: Oxford University Press.

Burian, S. J., Nix, S. J., Pitt, R. E. & Durrans, S. R. (2000). Urban wastewater management in the United States: Past, present, and future. *Journal of Urban Technology, 7*(3), 33-62. doi: 10.1080/713684134

Burns, G. (2005). Naturally happy, naturally healthy: The role of the environment in well-being. In F. A. Huppert, N. Baylis & B. Keverne (Eds.), *The science of well-being* (pp. 405-434). Oxford, UK: Oxford University Press. (Reprinted from: 2007).

Burrows, R. M. & Corragio, M. A. (2011). Living walls: Integration of water re-use systems. Paper presented at the Cities Alive: 9th Annual Green Roof and Wall Conference, Philadelphia, USA.

Butler, T., Allnutt, S., Cain, D., Owens, D. & Muller, C. (2005). Mental disorder in the New South Wales prisoner population. *Australian and New Zealand Journal of Psychiatry, 39*(5), 407-413. doi: 10.1080/j.1440-1614.2005.01589.x

Carey, P. (2013). A guide to phytoremediation: A symbiotic relationship with plants, water & living architecture. *Greenroofs.com.* 12/02/13. 2014, from http://www.greenroofs.com/content/Phytoremediation-A-Symbiotic-Relationship-with-Plants-Water-and-Living-Architecture.htm

Carson, L., & Hartz-Karp, J. (2005). Adapting and combining deliberative designs: Juries, polls and forums. In J. Gastil & P. Devine (Eds.), *The deliberative democracy handbook: Strategies for effective civic engagement in the twenty-first century.* (pp. 120-138). USA: Jossey-Bass (Wiley-Blackwell).

CBD International. (2012). 2011 - 2020 United Nations Decade on Biodiversity. Retrieved 21/07/2014, from https://www.cbd.int/doc/press/2012/pr-2012-10-20-cop-11-en.pdf

Cheng, C. Y., Cheung, K. K. S. & Chu, L. M. (2010). Thermal performance of a vegetated cladding system on facade walls. *Building and Environment, 45*(8), 1779-1787. doi: http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.buildenv.2010.02.005

Chettle, N. (2014). Self-sufficient prisons: NSW inmates grow their own food, saving Corrective Services $4 million a year. Retrieved 25/08/14, from http://www.abc.net.au/news/2014-06-30/nsw-prisoners-grow-their-own-food-save-taxpayers-money/5555708

Chiang, K. & Tan, A. (Eds.). (2009). *Vertical greenery for the tropics*. Singapore: National Parks Board and Building and Construction Authority.

Christensen, C. M., & Overdorf, M. (2000). Meeting the Challenge of Disruptive Change. *Harvard Business Review, March-April*. doi: http://doi.org/10.1002/rwm3.20019

Christiansen, J. (2009). Four stages of social movements. *Research Starters: Academic Topic Overviews, EBSCO, Ipswich, MA*.

Chua, G. (2014). New design concepts unveiled for Sydney's New York style 'high line'. *Architecture and Design*. http://www.architectureanddesign.com.au/home

Cilento, K. (2011). Mexico City's high line park. *Arch Daily*. http://www.archdaily.com/162420/mexico-citys-high-line-park/

Cook-Patton, S. C. & Bauerle, T. L. (2012). Potential benefits of plant diversity on vegetated roofs: A literature review. *Journal of Environmental Management, 106*(September 2012), 85-92. doi: http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.jenvman.2012.04.003

Curtis, C. (2008). Evolution of the transit-oriented development model for low density cities: A case study of Perth's new railway corridor. *Planning, Practice and Research, 23*(3), 285-302.

Daniel, G. (2012). Curtin helps the walls of Fremantle come alive. Retrieved 02/07/2012, 2012, from http://news.curtin.edu.au/media-releases/curtin-helps-the-walls-of-fremantle-come-alive/

Denson, B. (2014, 21/08/14). Oregon prison tackles solitary confinement with Blue Room experiment. *The Oregonian*. Retrieved from

http://www.oregonlive.com/politics/index.ssf/2014/08/oregon_prison_tackles_solitary.html#incart_river

Eichholtz, P., Kok, N. & Quigley, J. (2010). Doing well by doing good? Green office buildings. *American Economic Review, 100*(5), 2492-2509. doi: 10.1257/aer.100.5.2492

Erwine, B. & Heschong, L. (2000). Daylight: Healthy, wealthy & wise. *Architectural Lighting, 15*(2), 98.

Fazel, S. & Baillargeon, J. (2011). The health of prisoners. *The Lancet, 377*(9769), 956-965. doi: http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/S0140-6736(10)61053-7

Fazel, S., & Danesh, J. (2002). Serious mental disorder in 23 000 prisoners: A systematic review of 62 surveys. *The Lancet, 359*(9306), 545-550. doi: http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/S0140-6736(02)07740-1

Frances, K. (2003). The role of arboriculture in a healthy social ecology. *Aboriculture and Urban Forestry (Formerly Journal of Aboriculture), 29*(3), 148-155.

Fraser, A., Gatherer, A. & Hayton, P. (2009). Mental health in prisons: Great difficulties but are there opportunities? *Public Health, 123*(6), 410-414. doi: http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.puhe.2009.04.005

Frick, W. (1990). The symbolic growth experience - A chronicle of heuristic inquiryand a quest for synthesis. *J. Humanist. Psychol., 30*(1), 64-80.

Friends of the Highline. (2013). *Highline field guide*. New York, NY: Friends of the Highline.

Fromm, E. (1964). *The heart of man*. New York, USA: Harper and Row.

Girardet, H. (2015). *Creating regenerative cities*. Oxon, UK: Routledge.

Grant, G. (2006). Extensive green roofs in London. *Urban Habitats, 4*(1), 51-65.

Greenroofs.com. Greenroof and greenwall projects of the week gallery. 2013, from http://www.greenroofs.com/greenroof-and-greenwall-projects-of-the-week

Gregoire, B. G. & Clausen, J. C. (2011). Effect of a modular extensive green roof on stormwater runoff and water quality. *Ecological Engineering, 37*(6), 963-969. doi: http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.ecoleng.2011.02.004

Grynbaum, M. (2014). Highline draws millions but de Blasio isn't one of them. *The New York Times*. Retrieved from http://www.nytimes.com/2014/10/02/nyregion/high-line-draws-millions-but-de-blasio-isnt-one.html

Guéguen, N., & Stefan, J. (2014). Green altruism: Short immersion in natural green environments and helping behavior. *Environment and Behaviour, 2014*(July), 1-19. doi: 10.1177/0013916514536576

Gunn, J., Maden, A., & Swinton, M. (1991). Treatment needs of prisoners with psychiatric disorders. *BMJ: British Medical Journal, 303*(6798), 338-341. doi: 10.2307/29712608

Hagerhall, C. M., Laike, T., Taylor, R., Küller, M., Marcheschi, E., Boydston, C., Thwaites, K. (2012 Jun 24 - 29). *Human eeg responses to exact and statistical fractal patterns.* Paper presented at the 22nd International Association People - Environment Studies (IAPS), Glasgow, UK.

Haluza, D., Schönbauer, R. & Cervinka, R. (2014). Green perspectives for public health: a narrative review on the physiological effects of experiencing outdoor nature. *International Journal of Environmental Research and Public Health, 11*(5), 5445. doi: 10.3390/ijerph110505445

Haney, C. (2003). The pyschological impact of incarceration. In J. a. M. W. Travis (Ed.), *Prisoners once removed: The impact of incarceration and reentry on children, families and communities*. Washington, D.C.: The Urban Institute Press.

Hartig, T., Bringslimark, T. & Patil, G. G. (2008). Restorative environmental design: What, when, where and for whom? In S. R. Kellert, J. H. Heerwagen & M. L. Mador (Eds.), *Biophilic design: The theory, science, and practice of bringing buildings to life* (pp. 133-152). Hoboken, USA: John Wiley and Sons, Inc.

Heerwagen, J. (2000). Green buildings, organizational success and occupant productivity. *Building Research and Information, 28*(5-6), 353-367.

Heerwagen, J. & Gregory, B. (2008). Biophilia and sensory aesthetics. In S. R. Kellert, J. H. Heerwagen & M. L. Mador (Eds.), *Biophilic Design: The theory, science, and practice of bringing buildings to life* (pp. 227 - 241). New Jersey: John Wiley & Sons.

Henn, R. & Hoffman, A. (2013). *Constructing green: The social structures of sustainability*. Massachusetts: Massachusetts Institute of Technology.

Hes, D. & Du Plessis, C. (2015). *Designing for hope: Pathways to regenerative sustainability*. Oxon, U.K.: Routledge.

Heschong, L. (2002). Daylighting and human performance. *ASHRAE Journal, 44*(6), 65-67.

Hongming, H. & Jim, C. Y. (2010). Simulation of thermodynamic transmission in green roof ecosystem. *Ecological Modelling, 221*(24), 2949-2958. doi: 10.1016/j.ecolmodel.2010.09.002

Ikei, H., Komatsu, M., Song, C. R., Himoro, E. & Miyazaki, Y. (2014). The physiological and psychological relaxing effects of viewing rose flowers in office workers. *Journal of Physiological Anthropology, 33*(6), 1-5. doi: 10.1186/1880-6805-33-6

Jaffal, I., Ouldboukhitine, S.-E. & Belarbi, R. (2012). A comprehensive study of the impact of green roofs on building energy performance. *Renewable Energy, 43*(2012), 157-164. doi: http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.renene.2011.12.004

Jasper, J. (1998). The emotions of protest: Affective and reactive emotions in and around social movements. *Sociological Forum, 13*(3), 397-424.

Jasper, J. (2007). Social movements. In G. Ritzer (Ed.), *The Blackwell encyclopedia of sociology*. Malden, MA: Blackwell.

Jasper, J. (2014). Introduction: playing the game. In J. Jasper & J. W. Duyvendak (Eds.), *Players and arenas: The interactive dynamics of protest* (pp. 9-32). Amsterdam: Amsterdam University Press.

Jordan, M. (2011). The prison setting as a place of enforced residence, its mental health effects, and the mental healthcare implications. *Health & Place, 17*(5), 1061-1066. doi: http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.healthplace.2011.06.006

Joye, Y., Willems, K., Brengman, M. & Wolf, K. (2010). The effects of urban retail greenery on consumer experience: Reviewing the evidence from a restorative perspective. *Urban Forestry and Urban Greening, 9*(1), 57-64. doi: 10.1016/j.ufug.2009.10.001

Kaplan, R. & Kaplan, S. (1989). *The experience of nature: a psychological perspective*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

Kaplan, S. (1995). The restorative benefits of nature: Toward an integrative framework. *Journal of Environmental Psychology, 15*(3), 169-182. doi: http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/0272-4944(95)90001-2

Kellert, S. R. (1993). Introduction. In S. R. Kellert & E. O. Wilson (Eds.), *The biophilia hypothesis*. Washington, DC, USA: Island Press.

Kellert, S. R. (2008a). Dimensions, elements, and attributes of biophilic design. In S. R. Kellert, J. Heerwagen & M. L. Mador (Eds.), *Biophilic design* (pp. 3-19). New Jersey, US: John Wiley and Sons.

Kellert, S. R. (2008b). Biophilia. In E. J. Sven & F. Brian (Eds.), *Encyclopedia of ecology* (pp. 462-466). Oxford: Academic Press.

Kellert, S. R. & Calabrese, E. F. (2015). The practice of biophilic design. from http://www.biophilic-design.com/

Kellert, S. R. & Heerwagen, J. (2008). Preface. In S. R. Kellert, J. Heerwagen & M. L. Mador (Eds.), *Biophilic design: The theory, science, and practice of bringing buildings to life*. Hoboken, N.J.: Wiley.

Kellert, S. R., Heerwagen, J. & Mador, M. L. (Eds.). (2008). *Biophilic design : the theory, science, and practice of bringing buildings to life* Hoboken, N.J.: Wiley.

Kellert, S. R., & Wilson, E. O. (Eds.). (1993). *The biophilia hypothesis*. Washington, D.C.: Island Press.

Kim, J. (2014). Will London's garden bridge rival New York's high line, or is it just a tacky tourist trap? *Quartz*. http://qz.com/307475/will-londons-garden-bridge-rival-new-yorks-high-line-or-is-it-just-a-tacky-tourist-trap/

Kimmelman, M. (2014, 21st August, 2014). In redesigned room, hospital patients may feel better already. *New York Times,* p. 1. Retrieved from http://www.nytimes.com/2014/08/22/arts/design/in-redesigned-room-hospital-patients-may-feel-better-already.html?ref=arts&_r=0

Kontoleon, K. J. & Eumorfopoulou, E. A. (2010). The effect of the orientation and proportion of a plant-covered wall layer on the thermal performance of a building zone. *Building and Environment, 45*(5), 1287-1303. doi: http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.buildenv.2009.11.013

Kowarik, I. (2011). Novel urban ecosystems, biodiversity, and conservation. *Environmental Pollution, 159*(8–9), 1974-1983. doi: http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.envpol.2011.02.022

Kuo, F. E. (2001). Coping with poverty: Impacts of environment and attention in the inner city. *Environment and Behaviour, 33*(1), 5-34.

Kuo, F. E. & Sullivan, W. C. (2001). Environment and crime in the inner city - Does vegetation reduce crime? *Environment and Behaviour, 33*(3), 343-367.

Kupfer, J. H. (2003). Engaging nature aesthetically. *The Journal of Aesthetic Education, 37*(1), 77.

Kwaak, J. (2014). Seoul plans high line style elevated park. Retrieved from http://blogs.wsj.com/korearealtime/2014/09/01/seoul-plans-high-line-style-elevated-park/

Lee, J. Y., Moon, H. J., Kim, T. I., Kim, H. W. & Han, M. Y. (2013). Quantitative analysis on the urban flood mitigation effect by the extensive green roof system. *Environmental Pollution, 181*(2013), 257-261. doi: http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.envpol.2013.06.039

Lehmann, S. (2015). Low carbon cities: More than just buildings. In S. Lehmann (Ed.), *Low carbon cities*. Oxon, UK: Routledge.

Leopold, A. (1949). *A sand county almanac*. Oxford: Oxford University Press.

Leung, D. Y. C., Tsui, J. Y., Chen, F., Yip, W.-K., Vrijmoed, L. P. & Liu, C.-H. (2011). Effects of urban vegetation on urban air quality. *Landscape Research, 36*(2), 173-188. doi: 10.1080/01426397.2010.547570

Levin, H. (2014). Can house plants solve indoor air quality problems? Retrieved 21/07/14, 2014, from http://www.practicalasthma.net/pages/topics/aaplants.htm

Li, Q., Otsuka, T., Kobayashi, M., Wakayama, Y., Inagaki, H., Katsumata, M., Kagawa, T. (2011). Acute effects of walking in forest environments on cardiovascular and metabolic parameters. *European Journal of Applied Physiology, 111*(11), 2845-2853. doi: 10.1007/s00421-011-1918-z

Libby, B. (2014, August 22nd, 2014). The blue room, biophilia and retrofitting Oregon's prisons. Retrieved from http://chatterbox.typepad.com/portlandarchitecture/2014/08/the-blue-room-and-biophilia.html

Lopez, M. (2014). How to build for success: Prison design and infrastructure as a tool for rehabilitation. Retrieved from http://www.penalreform.org/blog/build-success-prison-design-infrastructure-tool-rehabilitation/?utm_source=Penal+Reform+International+e-

bulletin&utm_campaign=782cb0eeda-E+Newsletter+July+August+2014&utm_medium=email&utm_term=0_1c6082fc44-782cb0eeda-266632885

Madre, F., Vergnes, A., Machon, N. & Clergeau, P. (2014). Green roofs as habitats for wild plant species in urban landscapes: First insights from a large-scale sampling. *Landscape and Urban Planning, 122*(2014), 100-107. doi: http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.landurbplan.2013.11.012

Mascia M.B., Broscius, J. P., Dobson, T. A., Forbes, B. C., Horowitz, L., McKean, M. A. & Turner, N. J. (2003). Conservation and the social sciences. *Conservation Biology, 17*(3), 649-650.

Matsunaga, K., Park, B. J., Kobayashi, H. & Miyazaki, Y. (2011). Physiologically relaxing effect of a hospital rooftop forest on older women requiring care. *Journal of the American Geriatrics Society, 59*(11), 2162-2163. doi: 10.1111/j.1532-5415.2011.03651.x

Mentens, J., Raes, D. & Hermy, M. (2006). Green roofs as a tool for solving the rainwater runoff problem in the urbanized 21st century? *Landscape and Urban Planning, 77*(3), 217-226. doi: http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.landurbplan.2005.02.010

Miller, J. R. (2005). Biodiversity conservation and the extinction of experience. *Trends in Ecology and Evolution, 20*(8), 430-434. doi: http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.tree.2005.05.013

Miller, M. (2015). Biophilia grows in Silicon Valley. *GreenBiz*.

Mills, G. (2015). The urban heat island and low carbon cities. In S. Lehmann (Ed.), *Low carbon cities*. Oxon, UK: Routledge.

Miyawaki, A. (1998). Restoration of urban green environments based on the theories of vegetation ecology. *Ecological Engineering, 11*(1–4), 157-165. doi: http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/S0925-8574(98)00033-0

Moore, E. O. (1981). A prison environment's effect on health care service demands. *Journal of Environmental Systems, 11*(1), 17-34.

Moran, A. & Novak, J. (2009). The great lock out: The impact of housing and land regulations in Western Australia. *Institute of Public Affairs Occasional Paper*.

Moustakas, C. E. (1990). *Heuristic research: Design, methodology, and applications / Clark Moustakas*. Newbury Park, Calif.; London: SAGE.

Mugerauer, R. & Liao, K.-H. (2012). Ecological design for dynamic systems: Landscape architecture's conjunction with complexity theory. *Journal of Biourbanism, 2*(2), 29-48.

Nadkarni, N. M. (2010). Life science in prison. *TED Talks.* Retrieved 23/08/14, from http://www.ted.com/talks/nalini_nadkarni_life_science_in_prison/transcript?language=en

Nadkarni, N. M. & Pacholke, D. J. (2013). Bringing sustainability and science to the incarcerated. In J. Appleton (Ed.), *Values in sustainable development*. Hoboken: Taylor and Francis.

Naess, A. (1989). *Ecology, community, and lifestyle: outline of an ecosophy / Arne Naess*. Cambridge : Cambridge University Press.

Nanda, U., Pati, D., Ghamari, H. & Bajema, R. (2013). Lessons from neuroscience: Form follows function, emotions follow form. *Intelligent Buildings International, 5*(1), 61-78. doi: 10.1080/17508975.2013.807767

Nesse, R. M. & Williams, G. C. (1995). *Evolution and healing: The new science of darwinian medicine.* London: Weidenfeld and Nicolson.

Newman, P. (2014). Biophilic urbanism: a case study on Singapore. *Australian Planner, 51*(1), 47-65. doi: 10.1080/07293682.2013.790832

Newman, P. & Jennings, I. (2008). *Cities as sustainable ecosystems*. Washington, DC: Island Press.

Newman, P. & Kenworthy, J. (2015). *The end of automobile dependence: How cities are moving beyond car-based planning*. New York, USA: Island Press.

Newman, P. & Matan, A. (2012). Human health and human mobility. *Current Opinion in Environmental Sustainability, 4*(4), 420-426.

Nieuwenhuis, M., Knight, C., Postmes, T. & Haslam, S. A. (2014). The relative benefits of green versus lean office space: Three field experiments. *Journal of Experimental Psychology Applied, 20*(3), 199-214. doi: 10.1037/xap0000024

Nurse, J., Woodcock, P. & Ormsby, J. (2003). *Influence of environmental factors on mental health within prisons: Focus group study* (Vol. 327).

Ode, Å., Hagerhall, C. M. & Sang, N. (2010). Analysing visual landscape complexity: Theory and application. *Landsc Research, 35*(1), 111-131. doi: 10.1080/01426390903414935

Ogloff, J. R. P. (2002). Identifying and accommodating the needs of mentally ill people in gaols and prisons. *9*, 1-33. doi: 10.1375/132187102760196745

Olsson, K. & Haas, T. (2014). Introduction: Emergent urbanism and beyond. In T. Haas & K. Olsson (Eds.), *Emergent urbanism*. Surrey, UK: Ashgate.

Orr, D. (1993). Love it or lose it: The coming biophilia revolution. In S. R. Kellert & E. O. Wilson (Eds.), *The biophilia hypothesis* (pp. 415-440). Washington, DC, USA: Island Press.

Ostendorf, M., Retzlaff, W., Thompson, K., Woolbright, M., Morgan, S. & Celik, S. (2011 Nov 30 - Dec 3). *Storm water runoff from green retaining wall systems.* Paper presented at the Cities Alive: 9th Annual Green Roof and Wall Conference, Philadelphia, USA.

Ottelé, M., Perini, K., Fraaij, A. L. A., Haas, E. M. & Raiteri, R. (2011). Comparative life cycle analysis for green façades and living wall systems. *Energy and Buildings, 43*(12), 3419-3429. doi: http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.enbuild.2011.09.010

Ottelé, M., van Bohemen, H. D. & Fraaij, A. L. A. (2010). Quantifying the deposition of particulate matter on climber vegetation on living walls. *Ecological Engineering, 36*(2), 154-162. doi: http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.ecoleng.2009.02.007

Owen, D. (2009). *Green metropolis*. New York, USA: Penguin Group.

Park, B. J., Tsunetsugu, Y., Kasetani, T., Kagawa, T. & Miyazaki, Y. (2010). The physiological effects of Shinrin-yoku (taking in the forest atmosphere or forest bathing): Evidence from field experiments in 24 forests across Japan. *Environmental Health and Preventive Medicine, 15*(1), 18-26. doi: http://dx.doi.org/10.1007/s12199-009-0086-9

Park, S. H. & Mattson, R. H. (2008). Effects of flowering and foliage plants in hospital rooms on patients recovering from abdominal surgery. *HortTechnology, 18*(4), 563-568.

Pegas, P. N., Alves, C. A., Nunes, T., Bate-Epey, E. F., Evtyugina, M. & Pio, C. A. (2012). Could houseplants improve indoor air quality in schools? *Journal of Toxicology and Environmental Health, Part A, 75*(22-23), 1371-1380. doi: 10.1080/15287394.2012.721169

Pert, C. B. (1997). *Molecules of emotion : Why you feel the way you feel.* New York: Scribner.

Pert, C. B. & Snyder, S. H. (1973). Opiate receptor: Demonstration in nervous tissue. *Science, 179*(4077), 1011-1014. doi: 10.1126/science.179.4077.1011

Picken, J. (2012). The coping strategies, adjustment and well being of male inmates in the prison environment. *Internet Journal of Criminology*.

Plains CO2 Reduction Partnership. (n.d.). CO2 and storage in the region. Retrieved 13/10/2014, from http://www.undeerc.org/PCOR/Region/

Pugh, T. A. M., MacKenzie, A. R., Whyatt, J. D. & Hewitt, C. N. (2012). Effectiveness of green infrastructure for improvement of air quality in urban street canyons. *Environmental Science and Technology, 46*(14), 7692-7699. doi: 10.1021/es300826w

Raanaas, R. K., Evensen, K. H., Rich, D., Sjøstrøm, G. & Patil, G. (2011). Benefits of indoor plants on attention capacity in an office setting. *Journal of Environmental Psychology, 31*(1), 99-105. doi: http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.jenvp.2010.11.005

Rowe, D. B. (2011). Green roofs as a means of pollution abatement. *Environmental Pollution, 159*(8–9), 2100-2110. doi: http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.envpol.2010.10.029

Rowe, M. (2013). Urbanophilia and the end of misanthropy: Cities are nature. *The nature of cities*. http://www.thenatureofcities.com/2013/02/27/urbanophilia-and-the-end-of-misanthropy-cities-are-nature/

Ryan, C. O., Browning, W. O., Clancy, J. O., Andrews, S. L. & Kallianpurkar, N. B. (2014). Biophilic design patterns: Emerging nature-based parameters for health and well-being in the built environment. *ArchNet International Journal of Architectural Research, 8*(2), 62-76.

Salingaros, N. A. (2012). Fractal art and architecture reduce physiological stress. *Journal of Biourbanism, 2*(2), 11-28.

Salingaros, N. A. & Masden, K. G. (2008). Neuroscience, the natural environment, and building design. In S. R. Kellert, J. H. Heerwagen & M. L. Mador (Eds.), *Biophilic design: The theory, science, and practice of bringing buildings to life* (pp. 59-83). New Jersey: John Wiley & Sons.

Schroll, E., Lambrinos, J., Righetti, T. & Sandrock, D. (2011). The role of vegetation in regulating stormwater runoff from green roofs in a winter rainfall climate. *Ecological Engineering, 37*(4), 595-600. doi: http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.ecoleng.2010.12.020

Seal Cramer, J. & Browning, B. (2008). Transforming building practices through biophilic design. In S. R. Kellert, J. Heerwagen & M. Mador (Eds.), *Biophilic design: The theory, science, and practice of bringing buildings to life* (pp. 335-347). New Jersey: John Wiley & Sons.

Seidl, M., Gromaire, M.-C., Saad, M. & de Gouvello, B. (2013). Effect of substrate depth and rain-event history on the pollutant abatement of green roofs. *Environmental Pollution, 183*(2013), 195-203. doi: http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.envpol.2013.05.026

Sherman, D. (2008). Chicago's park in the sky: The Bloomingdale trail. Retrieved from http://www.thehighline.org/blog/2008/02/13/chicagos-park-in-the-sky-the-bloomingdale-trail

Sheweka, S. & Magdy, A. N. (2011). The living walls as an approach for a healthy urban environment. *Energy Procedia, 6*(2011), 592-599. doi: http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.egypro.2011.05.068

Sheweka, S. M., & Mohamed, N. M. (2012). Green facades as a new sustainable approach towards climate change. *Energy Procedia, 18*(2012), 507-520. doi: http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.egypro.2012.05.062

Singh, A. M. S., Syal, M., Grady, S. C. & Korkmaz, S. (2010). Effects of green buildings on employee health and productivity. *American Journal of Public Health, 100*(9), 1665-1668.

Smelser, N. J. (n.d.). Social movement. Retrieved 09/09/14 (http://www.britannica.com/EBchecked/topic/551335/social-movement)

Soule, M. E. (1993). Biophilia: Unanswered questions. In S. R. Kellert & E. O. Wilson (Eds.), *The biophilia hypothesis*. Washington, DC: Island Press.

Sproul, J., Wan, M. P., Mandel, B. H. & Rosenfeld, A. H. (2014). Economic comparison of white, green and black flat roofs in the United States. *Energy and Buildings, 71*(March 2014), 20-27.

Stamps, A. E. (2002). Fractals, skylines, nature and beauty. *Landscape and Urban Planning, 60*(3), 163-184. doi: http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/S0169-2046(02)00054-3

Steiner, F. R. (2011). *Design for a vulnerable planet*. USA: University of Texas Press.

Steinfeld, H., Gerber, P., Wassenaar, T., Castel, V., Rosales, M. & de Hann, C. (2006). Livestock's long shadow: Environmental issues and options. Rome, ITA: Food and Agriculture Organisation (FAO).

Storey, D. & Kang, K. K. P. (2015). Planning for sustainable and low carbon green cities. In S. Lehmann (Ed.), *Low carbon cities*. Oxon, UK: Routledge.

Susca, T., Gaffin, S. R. & Dell'Osso, G. R. (2011). Positive effects of vegetation: Urban heat island and green roofs. *Environmental Pollution, 159*(8–9), 2119-2126. doi: http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.envpol.2011.03.007

Taylor, R. P. (2006). Reduction of physiological stress using fractal art and architecture. *Leonardo, 39*(3), 245-251.

Tenngart Ivarsson, C. & Hagerhall, C. M. (2008). The perceived restorativeness of gardens – Assessing the restorativeness of a mixed built and natural scene type. *Urban Forestry & Urban Greening, 7*(2), 107-118. doi: http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.ufug.2008.01.001

Terrapin Bright Green. (2014). About us. *Terrapin Bright Green.* 2014, from http://www.terrapinbrightgreen.com/about/bios/

Tyrväinen, L., Ojala, A., Korpela, K., Lanki, T., Tsunetsugu, Y. & Kagawa, T. (2014). The influence of urban green environments on stress relief measures: A field experiment. *Journal of Environmental Psychology, 38*(2014), 1-9. doi: http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.jenvp.2013.12.005

Ulrich, C. & Nadkarni, N. M. (2009). Sustainability research and practices in enforced residential institutions: Collaborations of ecologists and prisoners. *Environment, Development and Sustainability, 11*(4), 815-832. doi: http://dx.doi.org/10.1007/s10668-008-9145-4

Ulrich, R. S. (1979). Visual landscapes and psychological well-being (National Parks). *Landscape Research, 4*(1), 17-23.

Ulrich, R. S. (1984). View through a window may influence recovery from surgery. *Science, 224*(4647), 420-421.

Ulrich, R. S. (2002). Health benefits of gardens in hospitals. Paper presented at the Plants for People: International Exhibition Floriade, Haarlemmerme, NETH.

Ulrich, R. S. (2006). Essay: Evidence-based health-care architecture. *The Lancet, 368* (December 2006), S38-S39.

Ulrich, R. S., Simons, R. F., Losito, B. D., Fiorito, E., Miles, M. A. & Zelson, M. (1991). Stress recovery during exposure to natural and urban environments. *Journal of Environmental Psychology, 11*(3), 201-230. doi: http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/S0272-4944(05)80184-7

Van Den Born, R. J. G., Lenders, R. H. J., De Groot, W. T. & Huijsman, E. (2001). The new biophilia: An exploration of visions of nature in western countries. *Environmental Conservation, 28*(1), 65-75.

Wang, R., Eckelman, M. & Zimmerman, J. (2013). Consequential environmental and economic life cycle assessment of green and gray stormwater infrastructures for combined sewer systems. *Environmental Science and Technology, 47*(19), 11189-11189.

Washington State Department of Corrections & The Evergreen College. (2014). Sustainability in prisons. Retrieved 14/08/14, from http://sustainabilityinprisons.org/contact-us/

Water Corporation. (2009). Water forever: Towards climate resilience. *2015*. https://www.watercorporation.com.au/~/media/files/about-us/planning-for-the-future/water-forever-50-year-plan.pdf

White, E. V. & Gatersleben, B. (2011). Greenery on residential buildings: Does it affect preferences and perceptions of beauty? *Journal of Environmental Psychology, 31*(1), 89-98. doi: http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.jenvp.2010.11.002

Wilson, E. O. (1984). *Biophilia*. Massachusetts: Harvard University Press.

Wilson, E. O. (1993). Biophilia and the conservation ethic. In S. R. Kellert & E. O. Wilson (Eds.), *The biophilia hypothesis*. Washington, DC: Island Press.

Wilson, E. O. (2008). The nature of human nature. In K. S.R., J. Heerwagen & M. L. Mador (Eds.), *Biophilic design* (pp. 21-25). New Jersey: John Wiley & Sons.

Wolf, K. l. (2005). Trees in the small city retail business district: Comparing resident and visitor perceptions. *Journal of Forestry, 103*(8), 390-395.

Wolverton, B., McDonald, R., & Watkins, E. (1984). Foliage plants for removing indoor air pollutants from energy-efficient homes. *Economic Botany, 38*(2), 224-228. doi: 10.1007/BF02858837

Wong, N. H., Kwang Tan, A. Y., Chen, Y., Sekar, K., Tan, P. Y., Chan, D. & Wong, N. C. (2010). Thermal evaluation of vertical greenery systems for building walls. *Building and Environment, 45*(3), 663-672. doi: http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.buildenv.2009.08.005

World Health Organisation & International Association for Suicide Prevention. (2007). *Preventing suicide in jails and prisons*. Geneva.

Worthington, A. C. (2012). The quarter century record on housing affordability, affordability drivers and government policy responses in Australia. *International Journal of Housing Markets and Analysis., 5*(3), 235-252.

Wright, N., Jordan, M. & Kane, E. (2014). Mental health/illness and prisons as place: Frontline clinicians' perspectives of mental health work in a penal setting. *Health & Place, 29*(0), 179-185. doi: http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.healthplace.2014.07.004

Ye, Q. (2008). Commodity booms and their impacts on the Western Australian economy: The iron ore case. *Resources Policy, 33*(2), 83-101.

Yok, T. P., Chiang, K., Chan, D., Wong, N. H., Yu, C., Tan, A. & Wong, N. C. (2009). *Vertical greenery for the tropics*. Singapore: National Parks Board and Building and Construction Authority.

Permissions

Figure 5.3 Beatley's house his father built

From: Jana Soderlund [Jana.Soderlund@curtin.edu.au]
Sent: Friday, August 28, 2015 4:28 AM
To: Beatley, Timothy (Tim) (tb6d)
Subject: RE: photo of the house i grew up in

Wow wow wow. The house and setting is stunning.....no wonder you love nature!!
I could imagine the bliss of living there.
Would it be intrusive to use it in my PhD with due credit to you? I can understand if this is too personal though.
All the best,
Jana

you are welcome to use the image.

Timothy Beatley, PhD
Teresa Heinz Professor of
Sustainable Communities
School of Architecture
University of Virginia
tel: 434-924-6457
http://timbeatley.org/
http://biophiliccities.org/
_____

Figure 5.13 The Guelph Humber indoor biofilter green wall

On Oct 3, 2015, at 00:25, Jana Soderlund <Jana.Soderlund@curtin.edu.au> wrote:

Hi,

I am writing to request permission to use the photo below in my PhD on Biophilic Design. It is in reference to the story told to me by Birgit Siber of this wall at Guelph Humber.

Thankyou

Jana Soderlund
Biophilic Urban Design Research

Curtin University Sustainability Policy (CUSP) Institute

Curtin University
Tel | +61 8 9266 9030
Fax | +61 8 9266 9031
Mobile | 0424306153

Email | jana.soderlund@curtin.edu.au
Web | http://sustainability.curtin.edu.au

From: Alan Darlington [mailto:Alan@Nedlaw.ca]

Sent: Saturday, 3 October 2015 9:57 PM

To: Jana Soderlund

Cc: LW-LivingWalls

Subject: Re: Photo use

Jana

We have no problem with you using the photo so long as either accompanying the photo or in the associated text the living wall is attributed to Nedlaw Living Walls; the building is recognized as University of Guelph-Humber and Diamond and Schmitt Architects are recognized as the designers of the building.

Please include "photo courtesy of Nedlaw Living Walls" with the photo

I would be very interested in an electronic version of your thesis when completed.

Alan Darlington
Founder
Nedlaw Living Wall
Cell 519.820.7870

On Oct 4, 2015, at 04:35, Jana Soderlund <Jana.Soderlund@curtin.edu.au> wrote:

Hi Alan,

Thank you. Yes of course. Photo credit is essential and this is contained in a write up of my interview with Birgit Siber where we are talking about the development of bio-filter green walls and the Guelph-Humber story. She is acknowledged as working with Diamond and Schmitt. Birgit has a copy of the whole interview.

Regards,

Jana

APPENDIX A
META-ANALYSIS TABLES

A.1 Meta-analysis of design priciples

Table A.1 Meta-analysis of design principles

Design Principle	Benefit	Social	Environ-mental	Econ-omic	Country of Study	References
Vertical Living Walls						
	Aesthetically pleasing	X[1], O[2]			[1]U.K., [2]Egypt	[1]White, Emma V., and Birgitta Gatersleben. 2011. "Greenery on Residential Buildings: Does It Affect Preferences and Perceptions of Beauty?" *Journal of Environmental Psychology* 31 (1): 89-98. doi: http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.jenvp.2010.11.002. [2]Sheweka, Samar Mohamed, and Nourhan Magdy Mohamed. 2012. "Green Facades as a New Sustainable Approach Towards Climate Change." Energy Procedia 18 (0): 507-520. doi: http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.egypro.2012.05.062.

	Psychologically restorative	X[1]			[1]U.K.	[1]White, Emma V., and Birgitta Gatersleben. 2011. "Greenery on Residential Buildings: Does It Affect Preferences and Perceptions of Beauty?" *Journal of Environmental Psychology* 31 (1): 89-98. doi: http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.jenvp.2010.11.002.
	Noise attenuation		X[1], O[2]		[1]Singapore, [2]Egypt	[1]Wong, Nyuk Hien, Alex Yong Kwang Tan, Puay Yok Tan, Kelly Chiang, and Ngian Chung Wong. 2010. "Acoustics Evaluation of Vertical Greenery Systems for Building Walls." *Building and Environment* 45 (2): 411-420. doi: http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.buildenv.2009.06.017. [2]Sheweka, Samar Mohamed, and Nourhan Magdy Mohamed. 2012. "Green Facades as a New Sustainable Approach Towards Climate Change." Energy Procedia 18 (0): 507-520. doi: http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.egypro.2012.05.062.
	Life cycle analysis		X[1],		[1]Netherlands	[1]Ottelé, Marc, Katia Perini, A. L. A. Fraaij, E. M. Haas, and R. Raiteri. 2011. "Comparative Life Cycle Analysis for Green Façades and Living Wall Systems." *Energy and Buildings* 43 (12): 3419-3429. doi: http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.enbuild.2011.09.010.
	Increased building lifespan		O[1]		[1]Egypt,	[1]Sheweka, Samar Mohamed, and Nourhan Magdy Mohamed. 2012. "Green Facades as a New Sustainable Approach Towards Climate Change." Energy Procedia 18 (0): 507-520. doi: http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.egypro.2012.05.062.
	Water recycling		X[1]		[1]U.S.A.	[1]Burrows, R.M., and M.A. Corragio. 2011. "Living Walls: Integration of Water Re-Use Systems." In *Cities Alive: 9th Annual Green Roof and Wall Conference*, *Philadelphia,* edited by Green Roofs for Healthy Cities. **Green Wall water re-use irrigation*

	Decreased energy consumption		X^1, X^2, X^3, O^5	O^{1*}	[1]Netherlands, [2]Greece, [3]Singapore, [4]Spain, [5]Egypt	[1]Ottelé, Marc, Katia Perini, A. L. A. Fraaij, E. M. Haas, and R. Raiteri. 2011. "Comparative Life Cycle Analysis for Green Façades and Living Wall Systems." *Energy and Buildings* 43 (12): 3419-3429. doi: http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.enbuild.2011.09.010. [2]Kontoleon, K. J., and E. A. Eumorfopoulou. 2010. "The Effect of the Orientation and Proportion of a Plant-Covered Wall Layer on the Thermal Performance of a Building Zone." *Building and Environment* 45 (5): 1287-1303. doi: http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.buildenv.2009.11.013. [3]Wong, Nyuk Hien, Alex Yong Kwang Tan, Puay Yok Tan, and Ngian Chung Wong. 2009. "Energy Simulation of Vertical Greenery Systems." *Energy and Buildings* 41 (12): 1401-1408. doi: http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.enbuild.2009.08.010. [4]Pérez, G., L. Rincón, A. Vila, J. M. González, and L. F. Cabeza. 2011. "Behaviour of Green Facades in Mediterranean Continental Climate." *Energy Conversion and Management* 52 (4): 1861-1867. doi: http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.enconman.2010.11.008. *(inconclusive) [5]Sheweka, Samar Mohamed, and Nourhan Magdy Mohamed. 2012. "Green Facades as a New Sustainable Approach Towards Climate Change." Energy Procedia 18 (0): 507-520. doi: http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.egypro.2012.05.062.
	Passive interior cooling	O^3	X^1, X^2, X^3,X^4, X^5, X^6	O^3	[1]Greece, [2]Singapore, [3]Egypt, [4]Hong Kong, [5]Egypt, [6]Spain	[1]Kontoleon, K. J., and E. A. Eumorfopoulou. 2010. "The Effect of the Orientation and Proportion of a Plant-Covered Wall Layer on the Thermal Performance of a Building Zone." *Building and Environment* 45 (5): 1287-1303. doi: http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.buildenv.2009.11.013. [2]Wong, Nyuk Hien, Alex Yong Kwang Tan, Puay Yok Tan, and Ngian Chung Wong. 2009. "Energy Simulation of Vertical Greenery Systems." *Energy and Buildings* 41 (12): 1401-1408. doi: http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.enbuild.2009.08.010. [3]Sheweka, Samar, and Arch Nourhan Magdy. 2011. "The Living Walls as an Approach for a Healthy Urban Environment." *Energy Procedia* 6 (0): 592-599. doi: http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.egypro.2011.05.068.

						[4]Cheng, C. Y., Ken K. S. Cheung, and L. M. Chu. 2010. "Thermal Performance of a Vegetated Cladding System on Facade Walls." *Building and Environment* 45 (8): 1779-1787. doi: http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.buildenv.2010.02.005. [5]Sheweka, Samar Mohamed, and Nourhan Magdy Mohamed. 2012. "Green Facades as a New Sustainable Approach Towards Climate Change." Energy Procedia 18 (0): 507-520. doi: http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.egypro.2012.05.062. [6]Pérez, G., L. Rincón, A. Vila, J. M. González, and L. F. Cabeza. 2011. "Behaviour of Green Facades in Mediterranean Continental Climate." *Energy Conversion and Management* 52 (4): 1861-1867. doi: http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.enconman.2010.11.008. *(inconclusive)
	Improved air quality		X^1, X^2, O^3		[1]U.K., [2]Egypt, [3]Egypt	[1]Pugh, Thomas A. M., A. Robert MacKenzie, J. Duncan Whyatt, and C. Nicholas Hewitt. 2012. "Effectiveness of Green Infrastructure for Improvement of Air Quality [2]Sheweka, Samar, and Arch Nourhan Magdy. 2011. "The Living Walls as an Approach for a Healthy Urban Environment." *Energy Procedia* 6 (0): 592-599. doi: http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.egypro.2011.05.068. [3]Sheweka, Samar Mohamed, and Nourhan Magdy Mohamed. 2012. "Green Facades as a New Sustainable Approach Towards Climate Change." Energy Procedia 18 (0): 507-520. doi: http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.egypro.2012.05.062.
	Urban heat island effect mitigation		X^1, X^2, X^3	O^2	[1]Singapore, [2]Egypt, [3]Egypt	[1]Wong, Nyuk Hien, Alex Yong Kwang Tan, Puay Yok Tan, and Ngian Chung Wong. 2009. "Energy Simulation of Vertical Greenery Systems." *Energy and Buildings* 41 (12): 1401-1408. doi: http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.enbuild.2009.08.010. [2]Sheweka, Samar, and Arch Nourhan Magdy. 2011. "The Living Walls as an Approach for a Healthy Urban Environment." *Energy Procedia* 6 (0): 592-599. doi: http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.egypro.2011.05.068. [3]Sheweka, Samar Mohamed, and Nourhan Magdy Mohamed. 2012. "Green Facades as a New Sustainable Approach Towards Climate Change." Energy Procedia 18 (0): 507-520. doi: http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.egypro.2012.05.062.

	Wind protection		X[1]		[1]Egypt,	[1]Sheweka, Samar Mohamed, and Nourhan Magdy Mohamed. 2012. "Green Facades as a New Sustainable Approach Towards Climate Change." Energy Procedia 18 (0): 507-520. doi: http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.egypro.2012.05.062.
	Increased building rating		O[1]		[1]Egypt,	[1]Sheweka, Samar Mohamed, and Nourhan Magdy Mohamed. 2012. "Green Facades as a New Sustainable Approach Towards Climate Change." Energy Procedia 18 (0): 507-520. doi: http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.egypro.2012.05.062.
	Building value			O[1]	[1]Egypt,	[1]Sheweka, Samar Mohamed, and Nourhan Magdy Mohamed. 2012. "Green Facades as a New Sustainable Approach Towards Climate Change." Energy Procedia 18 (0): 507-520. doi: http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.egypro.2012.05.062.
Green Roofs						
	Aesthetically pleasing	X[1], X[2]			[1]U.K., [2]U.S.A	[1]White, Emma V., and Birgitta Gatersleben. 2011. "Greenery on Residential Buildings: Does It Affect Preferences and Perceptions of Beauty?" *Journal of Environmental Psychology* 31 (1): 89-98. doi: http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.jenvp.2010.11.002. [2]Jungels, Jeremy, Donald A. Rakow, Shorna Broussard Allred, and Sonja M. Skelly. 2013. "Attitudes and Aesthetic Reactions toward Green Roofs in the Northeastern United States." *Landscape and Urban Planning* 117 (0): 13-21. doi: http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.landurbplan.2013.04.013.
	Psychologically restorative	X[1]			[1]U.K.	[1]White, Emma V., and Birgitta Gatersleben. 2011. "Greenery on Residential Buildings: Does It Affect Preferences and Perceptions of Beauty?" *Journal of Environmental Psychology* 31 (1): 89-98. doi: http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.jenvp.2010.11.002.
	Storm water management		X[1], X[2], X[3], X[4], X[5], X[6],	O[7]	[1]U.S.A., [2]U.S.A., [3]Belgium,	[1]Schroll, Erin, John Lambrinos, Tim Righetti, and David Sandrock. 2011. "The Role of Vegetation in Regulating Stormwater Runoff from Green Roofs in a Winter Rainfall Climate." *Ecological Engineering* 37 (4): 595-600. doi: http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.ecoleng.2010.12.020. [2]Gregoire, Bruce G., and John C. Clausen. 2011. "Effect of a Modular Extensive Green Roof on

			X[7], X[8], X[9]		Germany, [4]Sweden, [5]U.S.A., [6]U.K., [7]U.S.A., [8]U.S.A., [9]Belgium, [10]U.S.A., Hong Kong, Malaysia	Stormwater Runoff and Water Quality." *Ecological Engineering* 37 (6): 963-969. doi: http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.ecoleng.2011.02.004. [3]Mentens, Jeroen, Dirk Raes, and Martin Hermy. 2006. "Green Roofs as a Tool for Solving the Rainwater Runoff Problem in the Urbanized 21st Century?" *Landscape and Urban Planning* 77 (3): 217-226. doi: http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.landurbplan.2005.02.010. [4]Czemiel Berndtsson, Justyna. 2010. "Green Roof Performance Towards Management of Runoff Water Quantity and Quality: A Review." *Ecological Engineering* 36 (4): 351-360. doi: http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.ecoleng.2009.12.014. [5]Rowe, D. Bradley. 2011. "Green Roofs as a Means of Pollution Abatement." *Environmental Pollution* 159 (8-9): 2100-10. doi: 10.1016/j.envpol.2010.10.029. [6]Nagase, Ayako, and Nigel Dunnett. 2012. "Amount of Water Runoff from Different Vegetation Types on Extensive Green Roofs: Effects of Plant Species, Diversity and Plant Structure." *Landscape and Urban Planning* 104 (3–4): 356-363. doi: http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.landurbplan.2011.11.001. [7]Wang, Ranran, Matthew Eckelman, and Julie Zimmerman. 2013. "Consequential Environmental and Economic Life Cycle Assessment of Green and Gray Stormwater Infrastructures for Combined Sewer Systems." *Environmental Science & Technology* 47 (19): 11189-11189. [8]Volder, Astrid, and Bruce Dvorak. 2014. "Event Size, Substrate Water Content and Vegetation Affect Storm Water Retention Efficiency of an Un-Irrigated Extensive Green Roof System in Central Texas." *Sustainable Cities and Society* 10 (0): 59-64. doi: http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.scs.2013.05.005. [9]Vanuytrecht, Eline, Carmen Van Mechelen, Koenraad Van Meerbeek, Patrick Willems, Martin Hermy, and Dirk Raes. 2014. "Runoff and Vegetation Stress of Green Roofs under Different Climate Change Scenarios." *Landscape and Urban Planning* 122 (0): 68-77. doi: http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.landurbplan.2013.11.001.

						[10]Berardi, Umberto, AmirHosein GhaffarianHoseini, and Ali GhaffarianHoseini. 2014. "State-of-the-Art Analysis of the Environmental Benefits of Green Roofs." *Applied Energy* 115 (0): 411-428. doi: http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.apenergy.2013.10.047.
	Water runoff quality		X[1], X[2], X[3], X[4], X[5], X[6]	O[4],	[1]U.S.A., [2]Sweden, [3]U.S.A., [4]U.S.A., [5]France, [6]U.S.A., Hong Kong, Malaysia	[1]Gregoire, Bruce G., and John C. Clausen. 2011. "Effect of a Modular Extensive Green Roof on Stormwater Runoff and Water Quality." *Ecological Engineering* 37 (6): 963-969. doi: http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.ecoleng.2011.02.004. [2]Czemiel Berndtsson, Justyna. 2010. "Green Roof Performance Towards Management of Runoff Water Quantity and Quality: A Review." *Ecological Engineering* 36 (4): 351-360. doi: http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.ecoleng.2009.12.014. [3]Rowe, D. Bradley. 2011. "Green Roofs as a Means of Pollution Abatement." *Environmental Pollution* 159 (8-9): 2100-10. doi: 10.1016/j.envpol.2010.10.029. [4]Wang, Ranran, Matthew Eckelman, and Julie Zimmerman. 2013. "Consequential Environmental and Economic Life Cycle Assessment of Green and Gray Stormwater Infrastructures for Combined Sewer Systems." *Environmental Science & Technology* 47 (19): 11189-11189. [5]Seidl, Martin, Marie-Christine Gromaire, Mohamed Saad, and Bernard De Gouvello. 2013. "Effect of Substrate Depth and Rain-Event History on the Pollutant Abatement of Green Roofs." *Environmental Pollution* 183 (0): 195-203. doi: http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.envpol.2013.05.026. [6]Berardi, Umberto, AmirHosein GhaffarianHoseini, and Ali GhaffarianHoseini. 2014. "State-of-the-Art Analysis of the Environmental Benefits of Green Roofs." *Applied Energy* 115 (0): 411-428. doi: http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.apenergy.2013.10.047.
	Flood mitigation		X[1]		[1]South Korea	[1]Lee, J. Y., H. J. Moon, T. I. Kim, H. W. Kim, and M. Y. Han. 2013. "Quantitative Analysis on the Urban Flood Mitigation Effect by the Extensive Green Roof System." *Environmental Pollution* 181 (0): 257-261. doi: http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.envpol.2013.06.039.

	Air quality/air pollution reduction		X^1, X^2, X^3, X^4		[1]U.S.A., [2]U.K., [3]Hong Kong, [4]U.S.A., Hong Kong, Malaysia	[1]Rowe, D. Bradley. 2011. "Green Roofs as a Means of Pollution Abatement." *Environmental Pollution* 159 (8-9): 2100-10. doi: 10.1016/j.envpol.2010.10.029. [2]Pugh, Thomas A. M., A. Robert MacKenzie, J. Duncan Whyatt, and C. Nicholas Hewitt. 2012. "Effectiveness of Green Infrastructure for Improvement of Air Quality [3]Leung, Dennis Y. C., Jeaniek Y. Tsui, Feng Chen, Wing-kin Yip, Lilianl P. Vrijmoed, and Chun-ho Liu. 2011. "Effects of Urban Vegetation on Urban Air Quality." *Landscape Research* 36 (2): 173-188. doi: 10.1080/01426397.2010.547570. [4]Berardi, Umberto, AmirHosein GhaffarianHoseini, and Ali GhaffarianHoseini. 2014. "State-of-the-Art Analysis of the Environmental Benefits of Green Roofs." *Applied Energy* 115 (0): 411-428. doi: http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.apenergy.2013.10.047.
	Carbon dioxide reduction		X^1		[1]U.S.A.	[1]Rowe, D. Bradley. 2011. "Green Roofs as a Means of Pollution Abatement." *Environmental Pollution* 159 (8-9): 2100-10. doi: 10.1016/j.envpol.2010.10.029.
	Noise attenuation		X^1, X^2		[1]U.S.A., [2]U.S.A., Hong Kong, Malaysia	[1]Rowe, D. Bradley. 2011. "Green Roofs as a Means of Pollution Abatement." *Environmental Pollution* 159 (8-9): 2100-10. doi: 10.1016/j.envpol.2010.10.029. [2]Berardi, Umberto, AmirHosein GhaffarianHoseini, and Ali GhaffarianHoseini. 2014. "State-of-the-Art Analysis of the Environmental Benefits of Green Roofs." *Applied Energy* 115 (0): 411-428. doi: http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.apenergy.2013.10.047.
	Decreased energy consumption		X^1, X^2, X^3, X^4	O^3	[1]France, [2]Italy, Spain, Egypt, [3]U.S.A., Hong Kong, Malaysia,	[1]Jaffal, Issa, Salah-Eddine Ouldboukhitine, and Rafik Belarbi. 2012. "A Comprehensive Study of the Impact of Green Roofs on Building Energy Performance." *Renewable Energy* 43 (0): 157-164. doi: http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.renene.2011.12.004. [2]Zinzi, M., and S. Agnoli. 2012. "Cool and Green Roofs. An Energy and Comfort Comparison between Passive Cooling and Mitigation Urban Heat Island Techniques for Residential Buildings in the Mediterranean Region." *Energy and Buildings* 55 (0): 66-76. doi: http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.enbuild.2011.09.024. [3]Berardi, Umberto, AmirHosein GhaffarianHoseini, and Ali GhaffarianHoseini. 2014. "State-of-the-Art Analysis of the Environmental Benefits of Green Roofs." *Applied Energy* 115 (0): 411-428. doi: http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.apenergy.2013.10.047.

					[4]U.S.A.	[4]Susca, T., S. R. Gaffin, and G. R. Dell'Osso. 2011. "Positive Effects of Vegetation: Urban Heat Island and Green Roofs." *Environmental Pollution* 159 (8–9): 2119-2126. doi: http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.envpol.2011.03.007.
	Passive cooling		X^1, X^2		[1]Italy, Spain, Egypt, [2]U.S.A.	[1]Zinzi, M., and S. Agnoli. 2012. "Cool and Green Roofs. An Energy and Comfort Comparison between Passive Cooling and Mitigation Urban Heat Island Techniques for Residential Buildings in the Mediterranean Region." *Energy and Buildings* 55 (0): 66-76. doi: http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.enbuild.2011.09.024. [2]Susca, T., S. R. Gaffin, and G. R. Dell'Osso. 2011. "Positive Effects of Vegetation: Urban Heat Island and Green Roofs." *Environmental Pollution* 159 (8–9): 2119-2126. doi: http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.envpol.2011.03.007.
	Urban heat island effect		X^1, X^2, X^3, X^4	O^2	[1]Italy, Spain, Egypt, [2]U.S.A., Hong Kong, Malaysia, [3]U.S.A., [4]Hong Kong,	[1]Zinzi, M., and S. Agnoli. 2012. "Cool and Green Roofs. An Energy and Comfort Comparison between Passive Cooling and Mitigation Urban Heat Island Techniques for Residential Buildings in the Mediterranean Region." *Energy and Buildings* 55 (0): 66-76. doi: http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.enbuild.2011.09.024. [2]Berardi, Umberto, AmirHosein GhaffarianHoseini, and Ali GhaffarianHoseini. 2014. "State-of-the-Art Analysis of the Environmental Benefits of Green Roofs." *Applied Energy* 115 (0): 411-428. doi: http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.apenergy.2013.10.047. [3]Susca, T., S. R. Gaffin, and G. R. Dell'Osso. 2011. "Positive Effects of Vegetation: Urban Heat Island and Green Roofs." *Environmental Pollution* 159 (8–9): 2119-2126. doi: http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.envpol.2011.03.007. [4]Wong, Johnny Kwok Wai, and Leo Siu-Kit Lau. 2013. "From the 'Urban Heat Island' to the 'Green Island'? A Preliminary Investigation into the Potential of Retrofitting Green Roofs in Mongkok District of Hong Kong." *Habitat International* 39 (0): 25-35. doi: http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.habitatint.2012.10.005.
	Economic savings		O^1	X^1	[1]U.S.A.	[1] Sproul, Julian, Man Pun Wan, Benjamin H. Mandel, and Arthur H. Rosenfeld. 2014. "Economic Comparison of White, Green, and Black Flat Roofs in the United States." *Energy and Buildings* 71 (0): 20-27. doi:

						http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.enbuild.2013.11.058.
	Biodiversity		X^1, X^2, X^3, X^4		[1]U.K., [2]U.K., [3]Switzerland, [4]U.S.A., Hong Kong, Malaysia	[1]Grant, Gary. 2006. "Extensive Green Roofs in London." *Urban Habitats* . 4, 1 (ISSN 1541-7115). [2]Kadas, G. 2006. "Rare Invertebrates Colonising Green Roofs in London." *Urban Habitats* . 4, 1 (ISSN 1541-7115). [3]Brenneisan, S. 2006. "Space for Urban Wildlife: Designing Green Roofs as Habitats in Switzerland." *Urban Habitats* . 4, Number 1 (ISSN 1541-7115). [4]Berardi, Umberto, AmirHosein GhaffarianHoseini, and Ali GhaffarianHoseini. 2014. "State-of-the-Art Analysis of the Environmental Benefits of Green Roofs." *Applied Energy* 115 (0): 411-428. doi: http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.apenergy.2013.10.047
	Life cycle benefit analysis	X^1		O^1, X^2	[1]Canada, U.S.A.	[1]Bianchini, Fabricio, and Kasun Hewage. 2012. "Probabilistic Social Cost-Benefit Analysis for Green Roofs: A Lifecycle Approach." *Building and Environment* 58 (0): 152-162. doi: http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.buildenv.2012.07.005. [2]Berardi, Umberto, AmirHosein GhaffarianHoseini, and Ali GhaffarianHoseini. 2014. "State-of-the-Art Analysis of the Environmental Benefits of Green Roofs." *Applied Energy* 115 (0): 411-428. doi: http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.apenergy.2013.10.047.
	Climate and vegetation performance		X^1		[1]Belgium	[1]Vanuytrecht, Eline, Carmen Van Mechelen, Koenraad Van Meerbeek, Patrick Willems, Martin Hermy, and Dirk Raes. 2014. "Runoff and Vegetation Stress of Green Roofs under Different Climate Change Scenarios." *Landscape and Urban Planning* 122 (0): 68-77. doi: http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.landurbplan.2013.11.001.
	Policy	X^1	O^1	O^1	[1]U.S.A., Hong Kong, Malaysia	[1]Berardi, Umberto, AmirHosein GhaffarianHoseini, and Ali GhaffarianHoseini. 2014. "State-of-the-Art Analysis of the Environmental Benefits of Green Roofs." *Applied Energy* 115 (0): 411-428. doi: http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.apenergy.2013.10.047.

Green Connectors						
	Increased biodiversity		X[1], X[2]		[1]U.K., [2]France	[1]Angold, P. G., J. P. Sadler, M. O. Hill, A. Pullin, S. Rushton, K. Austin, E. Small et al. 2006. "Biodiversity in Urban Habitat Patches." *Science of The Total Environment* 360 (1–3): 196-204. doi: http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.scitotenv.2005.08.035. [2]Savard, Jean-Pierre L., Philippe Clergeau, and Gwenaelle Mennechez. 2000. "Biodiversity Concepts and Urban Ecosystems." *Landscape and Urban Planning* 48 (3–4): 131-142. doi: http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/S0169-2046(00)00037-2.
	Increased land value			O[1]	[1]France	[1]Savard, Jean-Pierre L., Philippe Clergeau, and Gwenaelle Mennechez. 2000. "Biodiversity Concepts and Urban Ecosystems." *Landscape and Urban Planning* 48 (3–4): 131-142. doi: http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/S0169-2046(00)00037-2.
Bioretention basin						
	Increased water quality (pollution reduction)		X[1]	O[1]	[1]U.S.A.	[1]Wang, Ranran, Matthew Eckelman, and Julie Zimmerman. 2013. "Consequential Environmental and Economic Life Cycle Assessment of Green and Gray Stormwater Infrastructures for Combined Sewer Systems." *Environmental Science & Technology* 47 (19): 11189-11189.
	Aquatic environmental benefits		X[1]	O[1]	[1]U.S.A.	[1]Wang, Ranran, Matthew Eckelman, and Julie Zimmerman. 2013. "Consequential Environmental and Economic Life Cycle Assessment of Green and Gray Stormwater Infrastructures for Combined Sewer Systems." *Environmental Science & Technology* 47 (19): 11189-11189.
Indoor Plants						
	Increased attention	X[1], X[2]			[1]Norway, [2]Netherland	[1]Raanaas, Ruth K., Katinka Horgen Evensen, Debra Rich, Gunn Sjøstrøm, and Grete Patil. 2011. "Benefits of Indoor Plants on Attention Capacity in an Office Setting." *Journal of Environmental Psychology* 31 (1): 99-105. doi:

	capacity				, U.K.	http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.jenvp.2010.11.005. [2]Nieuwenhuis, Marlon, Craig Knight, Tom Postmes, and S. Alexander Haslam. 2014. "The Relative Benefits of Green Versus Lean Office Space: Three Field Experiments." *Journal of Experimental Psychology: Applied* 20 (3): 199-214. doi: 10.1037/xap0000024.
	Stress reduction	X^1, X^2, X^3, O^4	X^4		[1]Japan, [2]U.S.A., [3]South Korea, [4]Australia	[1]Ikei, Harumi, Misako Komatsu, Chorong Song, Eri Himoro, and Yoshifumi Miyazaki. 2014. "The Physiological and Psychological Relaxing Effects of Viewing Rose Flowers in Office Workers." *Journal of Physiological Anthropology* 33 (1): 6. http://www.jphysiolanthropol.com/content/33/1/6. [2]Wener, Richard, and Hannah Carmalt. 2006. "Environmental Psychology and Sustainability in High-Rise Structures." *Technology in Society* 28 (1–2): 157-167. doi: http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.techsoc.2005.10.016. [3]Park, S. H., and R. H. Mattson. 2008. "Effects of Flowering and Foliage Plants in Hospital Rooms on Patients Recovering from Abdominal Surgery." *HortTechnology* 18 (4): 563-568. [4]Daly, John, Margaret Burchett, and Fraser Torpy. 2010. "Plants in the Classroom Can Improve Student Performance." *National Interior Plantscape Association*.
	Increased air quality/ pollutant removal	O^1, O^3	X^1, X^2, X^3		[1]U.S.A., [2]Japan, [3]Portugal,	[1]Wener, Richard, and Hannah Carmalt. 2006. "Environmental Psychology and Sustainability in High-Rise Structures." *Technology in Society* 28 (1–2): 157-167. doi: http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.techsoc.2005.10.016. [2]Oyabu, Takashi, Ayako Sawada, Takeshi Onodera, Kozaburo Takenaka, and Bill Wolverton. 2003. "Characteristics of Potted Plants for Removing Offensive Odors." *Sensors and Actuators B: Chemical* 89 (1–2): 131-136. doi: http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/S0925-4005(02)00454-9. [3]Pegas, P. N., C. A. Alves, T. Nunes, E. F. Bate-Epey, M. Evtyugina, and C. A. Pio. 2012. "Could Houseplants Improve Indoor Air Quality in Schools?" *Journal of Toxicology and Environmental Health, Part A* 75 (22-23): 1371-1380.

						doi:10.1080/15287394.2012.721169.
	Increased healing rates	X[1]			[1]South Korea,	[1]Park, S. H., and R. H. Mattson. 2008. "Effects of Flowering and Foliage Plants in Hospital Rooms on Patients Recovering from Abdominal Surgery." *HortTechnology* 18 (4): 563-568.
	Increased productivity	X[1], X[2]		O[2]	[1]Australia, [2]Netherland, U.K.	[1]Daly, John, Margaret Burchett, and Fraser Torpy. 2010. "Plants in the Classroom Can Improve Student Performance." *National Interior Plantscape Association*. [2]Nieuwenhuis, Marlon, Craig Knight, Tom Postmes, and S. Alexander Haslam. 2014. "The Relative Benefits of Green Versus Lean Office Space: Three Field Experiments." *Journal of Experimental Psychology: Applied* 20 (3): 199-214. doi: 10.1037/xap0000024.
	Increased positive mood	X[1]			[1]Netherland, U.K.	[1]Nieuwenhuis, Marlon, Craig Knight, Tom Postmes, and S. Alexander Haslam. 2014. "The Relative Benefits of Green Versus Lean Office Space: Three Field Experiments." *Journal of Experimental Psychology: Applied* 20 (3): 199-214. doi: 10.1037/xap0000024.
Natural Lighting						
	Stress reduction	X[1]			[1]U.S.A.	[1]Wener, Richard, and Hannah Carmalt. 2006. "Environmental Psychology and Sustainability in High-Rise Structures." *Technology in Society* 28 (1–2): 157-167. doi: http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.techsoc.2005.10.016.
View of Nature						
	Attention capacity increase	X[1], X[2]			[1]U.S.A., [2]Netherland, U.K.	[1]Wener, Richard, and Hannah Carmalt. 2006. "Environmental Psychology and Sustainability in High-Rise Structures." *Technology in Society* 28 (1–2): 157-167. doi: http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.techsoc.2005.10.016. [2]Nieuwenhuis, Marlon, Craig Knight, Tom Postmes, and S. Alexander Haslam. 2014. "The Relative Benefits of Green Versus Lean Office Space: Three Field

						Experiments." *Journal of Experimental Psychology: Applied* 20 (3): 199-214. doi: 10.1037/xap0000024.
	Increased healing rates	X[1]			[1]U.S.A.	[1]Ulrich, Roger S. 1984. "View through a Window May Influence Recovery from Surgery." *Science* 224 (4647): 420-421. doi: 10.2307/1692984.
Fractal Patterns						
	Aesthetically pleasing	X[1]			[1]U.S.A.	[1]Taylor, Richard P., Branka Spehar, Paul Van Donkelaar, and Caroline M. Hagerhall. 2011. "Perceptual and Physiological Responses to Jackson Pollock's Fractals." *Frontiers in human neuroscience* 5: 60. doi: http://dx.doi.org/10.3389/fnhum.2011.00060.
	Stress reduction	X[1]			[1]U.S.A.	[1]Taylor, R. P. 2006. "Reduction of Physiological Stress Using Fractal Art and Architecture." *Leonardo* 39 (3): 245-251.

A.2 Meta-analysis of researched human–nature benefits

Table A.2 Researched human-nature benefits			
	Primary Benefit	**Country of Study**	**References**
	Increased Well-being		
Secondary Benefits	*Short term stress recovery* *Mental fatigue recovery* *Faster recuperation from illness* *Increased liveability*	Norway	Velarde, Ma D., G. Fry, and M. Tveit. 2007. "Health Effects of Viewing Landscapes – Landscape Types in Environmental Psychology." *Urban Forestry & Urban Greening* 6 (4): 199-212. doi: 10.1016/j.ufug.2007.07.001.
	Stress reduction *Health promotion* *Rehabilitation* *Disease prevention*	Japan	Park, BumJin, Yuko Tsunetsugu, Tamami Kasetani, Takahide Kagawa, and Yoshifumi Miyazaki. 2010. "The Physiological Effects of Shinrin-Yoku (Taking in the Forest Atmosphere or Forest Bathing): Evidence from Field Experiments in 24 Forests across Japan." *Environmental Health and Preventive Medicine* 15 (1): 18-26. doi: 10.1007/s12199-009-0086-9.

	Decreased blood pressure	Japan	Li, Q., T. Otsuka, M. Kobayashi, Y. Wakayama, H. Inagaki, M. Katsumata, Y. Hirata et al. 2011. "Acute Effects of Walking in Forest Environments on Cardiovascular and Metabolic Parameters." *European Journal of Applied Physiology* 111 (11): 2845-2853. doi: 10.1007/s00421-011-1918-z.
	Increased activeness in natural environment	U.K.	Bowler, Diana, Lisette Buyung-Ali, Teri Knight, and Andrew Pullin. 2010. "A Systematic Review of Evidence for the Added Benefits to Health of Exposure to Natural Environments." *BMC Public Health* 10 (1): 456. http://www.biomedcentral.com/1471-2458/10/456.
	Increased well-being from: • *Viewing nature* • *Being in a natural environment*	Australia	Pryor, Anita, Mardie Townsend, Cecily Maller, and Karen Field. 2006. "Health and Well-Being Naturally: 'Contact with Nature' in Health Promotion for Targeted Individuals, Communities and Populations." *Health promotion journal of Australia : official journal of Australian Association of Health Promotion Professionals* 17 (2): 114-123. http://search.proquest.com/docview/68771442?accountid=10382
	Stress reduction *Pain reduction*	U.S.A.	Ulrich, Roger S. 2006. "Essay: Evidence-Based Health-Care Architecture." *The Lancet* 368: S38-S39. http://search.proquest.com/docview/199067283?accountid=10382
	Reduction in indoor air pollution *Stress reduction* *Psychological benefits*	U.S.A.	Wener, Richard, and Hannah Carmalt. 2006. "Environmental Psychology and Sustainability in High-Rise Structures." *Technology in Society* 28 (1–2): 157-167. doi: http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.techsoc.2005.10.016.
	Reduction in indoor air pollution	Japan	Oyabu, Takashi, Ayako Sawada, Takeshi Onodera, Kozaburo Takenaka, and Bill Wolverton. 2003. "Characteristics of Potted Plants for Removing Offensive Odors." *Sensors and Actuators B: Chemical* 89 (1–2): 131-136. doi: http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/S0925-4005(02)00454-9.

	Odour reduction		
	Reduction in indoor air pollution	Portugal	Pegas, P. N., C. A. Alves, T. Nunes, E. F. Bate-Epey, M. Evtyugina, and C. A. Pio. 2012. "Could Houseplants Improve Indoor Air Quality in Schools?" *Journal of Toxicology and Environmental Health, Part A* 75 (22-23): 1371-1380. doi: 10.1080/15287394.2012.721169.
	Attention Restoration		
	Perceived restorativeness	Sweden	Tenngart Ivarsson, Carina, and Caroline M. Hagerhall. 2008. "The Perceived Restorativeness of Gardens – Assessing the Restorativeness of a Mixed Built and Natural Scene Type." *Urban Forestry & Urban Greening* 7 (2): 107-118. doi: http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.ufug.2008.01.001.
	Stress reduction	U.S.A.	Kaplan, Stephen. 1995. "The Restorative Benefits of Nature: Toward an Integrative Framework." *Journal of Environmental Psychology* 15 (3): 169-182. doi: http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/0272-4944(95)90001-2.
	Stress Reduction		
		[1]Japan, [2]Finland	[1]Tsunetsugu, Yuko, Juyoung Lee, Bum-Jin Park, Liisa Tyrväinen, Takahide Kagawa, and Yoshifumi Miyazaki. 2013. "Physiological and Psychological Effects of Viewing Urban Forest Landscapes Assessed by Multiple Measurements." *Landscape and Urban Planning* 113 (0): 90-93. doi: http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.landurbplan.2013.01.014. [2]Tyrväinen, Liisa, Ann Ojala, Kalevi Korpela, Timo Lanki, Yuko Tsunetsugu, and Takahide Kagawa. 2014. "The Influence of Urban Green Environments on Stress Relief Measures: A Field Experiment." *Journal of Environmental Psychology* 38 (0): 1-9. doi: http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.jenvp.2013.12.005.
	Aesthetically pleasing *Architectural implications*	U.S.A.	Taylor, R. P. 2006. "Reduction of Physiological Stress Using Fractal Art and Architecture." *Leonardo* 39 (3): 245-251.

	Relaxation	Japan	Ikei, Harumi, Misako Komatsu, Chorong Song, Eri Himoro, and Yoshifumi Miyazaki. 2014. "The Physiological and Psychological Relaxing Effects of Viewing Rose Flowers in Office Workers." *Journal of Physiological Anthropology* 33 (1): 6. http://www.jphysiolanthropol.com/content/33/1/6.
	Decreased Violence and Crime		
	Aesthetically pleasing *Physiological effects*	U.S.A.	Kuo, F. E., and W. C. Sullivan. 2001. "Environment and Crime in the Inner City - Does Vegetation Reduce Crime?" *Environ. Behav.* 33 (3): 343-367.
	Aesthetically Pleasing		
	Attention restorative *Stress reduction*	U.K.	White, Emma V., and Birgitta Gatersleben. 2011. "Greenery on Residential Buildings: Does It Affect Preferences and Perceptions of Beauty?" *Journal of Environmental Psychology* 31 (1): 89-98. doi: http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.jenvp.2010.11.002.
		[1]U.S.A., [2]U.S.A	Taylor, R. P., B. Spehar, P. van Donkelaar, and C. M. Hagerhall. 2011. "Perceptual and Physiological Responses to Jackson Pollock's Fractals." Biederman, Irving, and Edward A. Vessel. 2006. "Perceptual Pleasure and the Brain: A Novel Theory Explains Why the Brain Craves Information and Seeks It through the Senses." *American Scientist* 94 (3): 247-253. doi: 10.2307/27858773.
	Improved Mental Health		
	Depression recovery	U.S.A.	Berman, Marc G., Ethan Kross, Katherine M. Krpan, Mary K. Askren, Aleah Burson, Patricia J. Deldin, Stephen Kaplan, Lindsey Sherdell, Ian H. Gotlib, and John Jonides. 2012. "Interacting with Nature Improves Cognition and Affect for

	Cognitive & memory increase		Individuals with Depression." *Journal of Affective Disorders* 140 (3): 300-305. doi: http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.jad.2012.03.012.
	Cognitive Enhancement		
	Attention restoration *Therapeutic benefits*	U.S.A.	Berman, Marc G., John Jonides, and Stephen Kaplan. 2008. "The Cognitive Benefits of Interacting with Nature." *Psychological Science* 19 (12): 1207-1212. doi: 10.2307/40064866.
	Increased Healing Rate		
	Stress reduction	South Korea	Park, S. H., and R. H. Mattson. 2008. "Effects of Flowering and Foliage Plants in Hospital Rooms on Patients Recovering from Abdominal Surgery." *HortTechnology* 18 (4): 563-568.
	Stress reduction *Therapeutic benefits*	U.S.A.	Ulrich, Roger S. 1984. "View through a Window May Influence Recovery from Surgery." *Science* 224 (4647): 420-421. doi: 10.2307/1692984.
	Increased Productivity		
	Increased positive mood	Australia	Daly, John, Margaret Burchett, and Fraser Torpy. 2010. "Plants in the Classroom Can Improve Student Performance." *National Interior Plantscape Association*.
	Increased air quality *Increased concentration* *Increased positive mood*	Netherland, U.K.	Nieuwenhuis, Marlon, Craig Knight, Tom Postmes, and S. Alexander Haslam. 2014. "The Relative Benefits of Green Versus Lean Office Space: Three Field Experiments." *Journal of Experimental Psychology: Applied* 20 (3): 199-214. doi: 10.1037/xap0000024.

APPENDIX B

THE REMAINING NORTH AMERICAN INTERVIEWS

Table B.1 The complete interview list

City	Player			
Virginia	**Tim Beatley** Teresa Heinz Professor of Sustainable Communities School of Architecture University of Virginia			
Washington DC	**Michael Lucy** Senior Consultant Greening the Built Environment Anacostia Watershed Society	**Kelliann Whitley** Senior Property Manager Blake Real Estate		
Pennsylvania	**Helena van Vliet** Biophilic Architect			
New York	**Mary W. Rowe** Managing Director and Head Global Initiative for Urban Liveability and Resilience The Municipal Art Society of New York	**Bill Browning** Director Terrapin Bright Green	**Stephen Kellert** Tweedy Ordway Professor Emeritus Yale University School Forestry & Environmental Studies	
Chicago	**Jay Womack** WRD Environmental *Sustainable Results*	**Michael Berkshire** Sustainable Development Division City of Chicago		
Toronto	**Brad Bass** Great Lakes Issue Management and Reporting Section Environment Canada	**Roger Hansell** University President at Noble International University Emeritus Professor, Department of Ecology and Evolutionary Biology University of Toronto, Canada	**Birgit Siber** Principal Diamond Schmitt Architect	**Steven Peck** Founder and President Green Roofs for Healthy Cities

Vancouver	**Randy Sharp** Principal Sharpe and Diamond Landscape Architects	**Cornelia Hahn Oberlander** Landscape Architect		
Seattle	**Dave LaClergue** Urban Designer Department of Planning and Development | City of Seattle	**Judith Heerwagen** HPGB Program Expert Office of Federal High-Performance Green Buildings US General Services Administration		
Portland	**Matt Burlin** Sustainable Stormwater Management Environmental services City of Portland	**Mike Houck** Director Urban Greenspaces Institute	**Tom Liptan** Ecoroof Program Manager at City of Portland Portland, Oregon Area Environmental Services	**Ada Kardos** Portland homeowner
San Francisco	**Kirstin Weeks** Energy and Building Ecology Specialist ARUP **Mary Davidge** Principal, Mary Davidge Associates Green Building Consultant Google HQ	**Scott Edmondson** Planner/Economist Information and Analysis Group San Francisco Planning Department	**Peter Brastow** Senior Biodiversity Coordinator SF Environment	**Jeff Joslin** Director of Current Planning San Francisco Planning Department
Perth	**Mayor Brad Pettitt** Mayor of the City of Fremantle	**Julian Rose** Director Deep Green Corporation		

B.2 The North American interviews

B.2.1 Washington DC

I was looking forward to getting back to Washington DC as I had a contact whom I had met previously and scheduled an interview with.

Michael Lucy-04/11/2013

Senior Consultant
Greening the Built Environment
Anacostia Watershed Society

Player	Arena	Strategy	Word	Connection to Nature
Michael Lucy	Civic	Education and policy implementation	Home	Rural, young

Upon my return to Washington DC I was able to spend an afternoon in conversation with Michael Lucy of the Anacostia Watershed Foundation and some of his co-workers. He gave some background to the development of green roofs in Washington DC and the Foundation's role in the implementation of these. In 2005, the Anacostia Watershed Society hosted a *CitiesAlive* conference. I asked why this occurred and Lucy explained *"*There were a lot of people interested; Parks and Recreation, the Mayor was interested in promoting these things and the District Department of the Environment. This was to encourage more green roofs as they make such a difference for storm water management plus the other environmental benefits, it just made sense." Although green roofs had been appearing in Washington DC for the last 20 years, the conference catalysed the interest and growth so that at the time of my visit there in 2013, there were over 2 million square feet of green roofs over 200 buildings. The US Coast Guard green roof itself is over 10 acres. As part of the Sustainable DC initiative the plan is to have 20 million square feet of green roof by 2020. Lucy thought that this was a *"*huge stretch since it has taken at least 10 years to reach the current 2 million square feet*"*. I asked Lucy if he considered valid the rippling effect that successful green roofs can have in catalysing further implementation. *"*Absolutely! People see one next door and think they can have it here, absolutely!" he replied. Lucy is hopeful that the Washington DC universities will install green roofs as well as more of the embassies.

Currently, the English and French embassies have green roofs and there is hope that the Chinese and the Australian will follow. He asked if, being Australian I had a

contact there? Lucy thought that the embassies want to “look cool as they are representing their countries and they want to have a green building. The European countries have known about it for a long time.” The French embassy, Lucy explained, had undertaken a few sustainability initiatives and the green roof was considered “a simple initiative” for the benefits that came with it. “Of course the green roof rebate helped.”

Lucy explained the development of this rebate. The Green Roof rebate program started in 2005 and was originally overseen by the Chesapeake Bay Foundation with funding from DC Water. The District Department of the Environment (DDE) started their own rebate program around 2007 and the Chesapeake Bay Foundation rebate closed down. For the past four years the Anacostia Watershed Society has been managing the DDE rebate program for them, doing outreach and publicity initiatives. In these past four years 30,000 square feet of green roof per year has been funded.

The DDE’s main interest is “to manage storm water more effectively” and this is considered the primary driver for green roof initiatives in Washington DC DC. “The money and the intention is to get these roofs installed so that the water gets slowed down and absorbed and cleaned. And there are all the other benefits, clean air and good for the building, people are happier and healthier, properties are worth more”, Lucy explains.

The conversation went back to the significance of the Green Roofs for Healthy Cities conference. The rebate came shortly after the conference and Lucy considers that *“*it helped*”* towards the rebate being implemented. The rebate is currently $8 to $10 per square foot and requires suitable plants that will do well, to be grown. Lucy says that they have talked about having extra funds available for native plants but *“*because green roofing is so new in America and there have been very few long term studies on native plants done, we have not required it. We want to get as many roofs up there as possible so we can manage as much water as possible. There is funding available for innovative proposals for greening the built environment if people want to experiment on green roofs and biodiversity.”

I asked what Lucy saw as the barriers for green roof implementation and he had many thoughts about this. *“*Many people are completely separated from the environment so they forget how important it is and how connected we are to the natural world. Here in America we have spent many years designing systems and homes to get water far away from our buildings as quickly as possible. People are

afraid of their homes becoming wet with leakage. This is a new technology; people don't understand it very well so they are afraid. So the tradition of building in a certain way means people are not used to this way of building. That is the biggest impediment I think and the second biggest is that it costs more. It may cost more up front but there are longer term benefits. The roof lasts two or three times longer. There is less heating and contracting and the roof actually can leak less. The benefits are not packaged very well."

Lucy had heard research that suggested that the biggest economic benefit of green roofs is *"*reduced temperatures, therefore reduced fatalities. Less people were dying. Even with the slightest reduction would have more people survive plus have reduced health requirements. On the hottest days our elders and young kids have the biggest health risks. Green roofs can help*."*

****

The interview with Michael provided a practical understanding of biophilic design in action. Although the driver here was an environmental one and not 'biophilia', Michael demonstrated awareness of the human-nature connection and the current disconnect from nature that has permeated design of our built environment. It was encouraging to see how financial rebates can aid the implementation of a green roof as a strategic choice in dealing with the cities' crisis of water pollution and storm water management.

Table B.1 Michael Lucy

	Motivators and Drivers		
Stages of social movement	**Environmental**	**Social** (including emotional)	**Economic**
Emergence	Storm water management, multiple benefits	It makes sense	Financial rebate, multiple benefits for the outlay
Coalescence	Clean air, extended roof life	Happier and healthier people, ripple effect, image	Higher property values, decreased health costs
Any Identified Barriers		Disconnect from nature, new technology and lack of understanding	Higher initial cost

B.2.2 Pennsylvania

Between Washington DC and my next destination of New York, I had arranged to meet a fellow attendee of the Biophilic Cities conference. Her name was Helena Van Lliet and she was passionate in her occupation as a biophilic architect. We had connected at the conference with shared perspectives and understandings. I was excited to see her again and she welcomed me to stay with her overnight.

Helena Van Lliet-07/11/2013

Biophilic Architect

Player	Arena	Strategy	Word	Connection to Nature
Helena Van Lliet	Industry	Design	Peace	Urban nature, young

Van Lliet is a successful Pennsylvania based architect whose personal journey and intuitive knowing have guided her architectural designs towards a biophilic focus. "In my work I was always trying to connect people with nature. I was always trying to build buildings that were in natural materials, rooted to the ground and would draw people outside no matter what the weather, which breathed. I was also interested in the connection between buildings and health." She grew up very connected with nature and drew on these childhood experiences for inspiration.

Van Lliet came across the term biophilia six years ago while searching for a term to describe her approach to her architecture. "I was redoing my web site and people were asking what style I do. I said I don't do a style, it's more of a process. But what is it that I do? Then I discovered this word and I read about it and thought yep!, that's what it is. I started to read about it more and more."

In the last few years Van Liet has become more and more interested in the health and wellbeing aspects and really connecting architecture with health. "Architects are not unlike doctors and really have a tremendous influence on the sense of wellbeing of occupants of the spaces and buildings that we create." She considers architects have a responsibility to design buildings that support health rather than increase stress. She now lectures on biophilic design in both architecture and medical professions. Van Lliet tells her architecture students, "What you will be doing will make people either well or stressed so how do we design places that are nourishing or relaxing. As Kellert says in his books we will only sustain over time buildings which we love."

Her design focus is on enabling people to connect with nature through their senses, not their intellect. "Places where people feel at home in and feel safe in and feel well in, invigorated and playful." I asked her whether her designs were driven by intuition

or by the literature. *"*It's both, it's the intuition that drives it and then I go and find the literature and I think yep! I try and find the connection between the client's needs and the site's needs. It is inherently there, I just need to find it."

At times, Van Lliet does encounter some resistance. *"*Sometimes the way I design is more expensive because it involves organic shapes and curves. Average builders can be frustrated because they haven't built this way, or I have roof forms which are very complex. The cheapest building is a box with a lid on it, so you add cost when you deviate from that and you have to have a client who understands that*."* Van Lliet knows of other architects who work like her, "but they might not call it biophilic design."

The concept of what we perceive as beauty is a large part of Van Lliet's personal research. She cites Wilson in his definition of beauty. *"*Beauty is our word for what had been most successful in survival. If something is not beautiful, it is probably not efficient in a wholistic sense. Beauty is not subjective, it is part of our evolutionary design. A lot of our illnesses are stress related today. We can create spaces that are nourishing and helpful instead of depleting*."* Living in a small rural Pennsylvania town she wonders how we can house animals in nature zoos yet we still house ourselves *"*in concrete jungles where people walk in circles*".*

She advocates for biophilic design through her blog, website and by hosting discussion groups in her exemplary, self-designed home.

****

Talking with Helena was like immersing myself in the beauties of nature. Her depth of knowledge and understanding about the human-nature connection and how to encapsulate this in design was captivating. The intuitive knowing and understanding was a strong feature of the conversation as I think there was a shared acknowledgment and awareness of this connection. We both have a wonder and deep bond with nature. It was inspiring to hear of her journey and her work in expressing this passion. And of her joy in discovering the framework of biophilic design. Although her designs were always nature based, Helena now has a term for her work that she can share. Her explanation of the importance of aesthetics and of the theories connecting our evolution and beauty was illuminating and thought provoking.

Table B.2 Helena Van Lliet

	Motivators and Drivers		
Stages of social movement	**Environmental**	**Social** (including emotional)	**Economic**
Emergence		Intuitive knowing, want to connect people to nature, health, term for framework, aesthetics	
Coalescence		Decrease stress, health and wellbeing	
Any Identified Barriers			Cost

B.2.3 Toronto

Steven Peck-25/11/2013

Founder and President

Green Roofs for Healthy Cities

Player	Arena	Strategy	Word	Connection to Nature
Steven Peck	Civic	Implementation through research	Connected	Wilderness, young

The world that Steve Peck inhabits is one focussed on developing the market for green roofs and green walls. He sees that biophilic design is just one aspect, one piece of the puzzle, but not the only piece. Peck acknowledges that with green walls

in particular, biophilic benefits are probably the most predominant benefit. He suggests that living walls don't offer the same benefits as green roofs but they offer a lot of strong biophilic benefits as they are "right in your face and quite striking when you come up against them. They have a biophilic impact on people. Lots of green walls are built because they need to manage storm water or there are regulatory drivers. They create green spaces in apartments for people and can attract higher levels of rent or increase the value of the units for sale." Green roofs bring a wide range of environmental benefits, "more mundane stuff, such as storm water management, reducing the urban heat island effect and cutting back on energy consumption, sustaining the life expectancy of roof membranes." Biophilia is not a driving force for green roofs. It may become the driver as people such as Bill Browning "unravel the science and economics of it". I discussed how the environmental benefits that he discussed are ones that myself and others consider biophilic, as they are natural systems integrated into our urban buildings. Even if they are not initially built with a human-nature connection motive, they are often discovered and enjoyed by those with access.

Peck then jumped to suggesting that I had taken the term biophilic urban design and put it on top of a lot of things that weren't biophilic, that there is no such thing as biophilic urban design. I said I had met some biophilic architects and designers. "That is all just smoke and mirrors."

He suggests, though, that the emerging science of the economics of biophilic design is what will change how our cities are designed and it will help bring vegetation into our cities. It may evolve into a school of biophilic design. As far as a social movement of biophilic urban design "This is coming from Australia. You do things strangely down there, upside down."

The discussion then shifted to an area of mutual interest and where Peck thinks there needs to be further research. He questions whether biophilic responses are innate or learned and the ratio of this. I mentioned Kellert's proposal that biophilia is a weak biological tendency and needs to be nurtured. This combines the two thoughts. Peck's other area of interest is the gender difference in biophilic responses and again he suggests that this is an area needing research. Explaining how green Toronto is he said that many inhabitants have great opportunities to connect with green space and proposes that where this occurs in cities their "inhabitants are more receptive to policies that support sustainability than cities that don't have green space".

Peck has had lots of contact with nature growing up. This has been through trips outside the city but also with Toronto's ravine system, the lake and Toronto's forest. He has had a long standing relationship with nature in the city and considers this probably puts him at the top of the *"*biophilic health index*".* Peck wonders what impact the technology age is having on the younger generation. How does the amount of time spent in front of screens affect their biophilic responses? He thinks this is very dangerous, the disconnect that is happening from nature and ecology for the technological generation. *"*How is nature represented in the virtual worlds they inhabit*?"* This led to a deeper conversation about how we get more nature in cities, how we keep younger people connected to nature and some of the local initiatives of community groups such as the YMCA.

Toronto had one of the early wide ranging green roof regulatory requirements in North America. Peck said this took ten years of work to implement and "the drivers were energy, climate change, and increasing green space*".* He said the politicians, staff and private sector were all pretty knowledgeable about green roofs and he had been involved with the building of a demonstration green roof at City Hall for which seven companies working on green roofs came together on the project. This led to the first conference on green roofs held in 2003 in Chicago. He thinks that the reason they have done well is that they are "science based and work with researchers plus have involved policy makers and implemented green roof training*".* Peck mentions Brad Bass who, alongside Roger Hansell, led the research charge and he led the policy and design side. The group were forging a new industry for Canada calling it Greenbacks for Green Roofs*.* They looked at the multiple benefits of green roofs, having to translate the research from German, as, in 1998, there was only German green roof literature. Peck and his colleagues were motivated by the multiple benefits that green roofs offer. *"*There isn't a technology that exists that has the range and scope of green roofs. It is the best technology for existing and retrofit buildings in terms of the range and scale of benefits that it brings. There is nothing that comes close to it."

Again Peck suggests that if we are going to redesign our cities, or consider the metrics of biophilic cities, then gender response to biophilia needs to be researched. He thinks gender and design *"*has a huge potential for further research in biophilia. There are differences in the way genders perceive biophilia*".*

Peck is also involved in implementing training for net zero water usage with green roofs. Peck calls the Toronto Deputy Mayor a *"*champion*",* as he was intrinsic in implementing green roof policy. Together they worked on standards for green roof

construction as well as the regulatory requirement. This requirement also has a financial incentive built in. If a builder does not want to construct a green roof on the new building, they can buy out of it with the money going into a fund that supports retrofit green roofs.

*"*Different communities have different motivators and drivers. In Austen, Texas, their motivator is usable green space. Tokyo's big driver is urban heat island, where Copenhagen's is climate change and reducing greenhouse gases. Basel in Switzerland's issue is biodiversity because they have mostly wiped out their biodiversity with human urbanisation. So drivers will vary compared with what is going on.*"* There may be alternatives to addressing the particular cities issue but green roof offers the multiple benefits. Peck has developed a methodology to calculate the returns that expenditure on a green roof will bring to city.

B.3 Steve Peck

	Motivators and Drivers		
Stages of social movement	**Environmental**	**Social** (including emotional)	**Economic**
Emergence	Multiple benefits, storm water management, urban heat island, energy consumption, climate change, reducing GHG, biodiversity	Multiple benefits, science and economics, receptivity through established nature connections, increasing green space, demonstrations	Multiple benefits
Coalescence	Extended roof life	Striking, high impact, regulations, green spaces in apartments, knowledge and research, unity with sectors,	Higher rentals, increased property value, extends roof life, financial policy incentives
Any Identified Barriers		Technology with younger generation	

B.2.4 Vancouver

I was looking forward to Vancouver, having heard a lot of wonderful things about it. We were staying in an Air BNB close to the famous Stanley Park, a sizable nature park with walk and bike trails throughout. Our accommodation had stunning views of the park and the nearby mountains while also being close to the city. My first interview was with a man whose name I had been given by Steve Peck in Toronto.

Randy Sharp-03/12/2013

Principal
Sharpe and Diamond Landscape Architects

Player	Arena	Strategy	Word	Connection to Nature
Randy Sharp	Industry	Implementation and research	Relaxed	Rural, young

Randy considers landscape architects have been doing biophilic design for 37 years in Vancouver. Urban forest and high tree canopies he puts in this category. In the 1970s it became mandatory for landscape architecture to be more than aesthetics. Liveability on a neighbourhood level became important. *"*Where we can't plant big canopy trees like on roof tops or narrow spaces hence the green roofs or living walls or other types of greening initiatives. We have the great fortune in Vancouver that green roofs have been part of our zoning for forty years. Basically with high density development virtually all onsite parking has to be underground therefore most of the sites in Vancouver are built landscape over parking structure. When you cross the property line it is a green roof like a conventional roof top garden.*"* Sharp explains that Vancouver consists of a lot of mixed use development and most of their work is ground level gardens, intensive green podiums and then the lighter weight extensive green roofs higher up. He explains that "development has to give back to the community, give back to the environment and that zoning responds to form and character*".* If a new structure is going to be overlooked then the adjacent building doesn't want to be looking down on a grey roof covered with gravel, hence a green

roof would be built. Vancouver doesn't have the same specific green roof regulations as some other cities; in Vancouver it is largely discretionary. They have the Eco City initiative which sets standards such as LEED Gold, having to earn at least six energy credits and comply with "storm water management, heat island reduction, and green roof coverage hence the drivers for the green roofs*".* Vancouver wants to be the greenest city by 2020.

In the late 1960s, early 1970s, Vancouver and San Francisco were very close and shared a lot of planning resources. Sharp didn't know the specific reasons but suggests that, like San Francisco, "Vancouver has always had a lot of neighbourhood participation in rezoning plans and local area participation around the City of Vancouver and a lot is driven by community input in overall planning requirements*".* In the 1960s there were pioneers like Cornelia Oberlander who were creating rooftop gardens like Robson Square in the CBD. Tomas Oberson also installed an iconic green roof on the Kayser Resources building around the same time. At a similar time a city planner, Ray Sapksman, was keen on pioneering discretionary zoning and green roofs. So Vancouver has had a long tradition of intensive green roofs, but extensive green roofs have only come into play in the last ten years. In 1998 Sharp met with Oberlander and an academic Maureen Conelly on a nearby "ecological system island" to brainstorm on how they could put *"*this pallet of plants or replicate the ecosystems on rooftops in downtown Vancouver*".* The plants on the island grew in shallow soil so would be suitable for green roofs. At the time they were importing green roof products from Germany so they started experimenting. Sharp built a green roof on his garage 14 years ago to experiment with the process and roof membranes. In 2003, Conelly had established the Green Roof Resource Centre in Vancouver at the British Columbia Institute of Technology campus as part of the centre for architectural ecology. *"*She is the cornerstone of the green roof industry here in Vancouver."

Sharp knew of the earlier green roofs in Germany. He had seen the ones in Stuttgart which were built to draw fresh air down into the polluted valley. About 40 years ago green roof companies had become established in Europe. In 1988 green roof technology had just been introduced to North America. Sharp recognised that Vancouver did not have the traditional growing media. What Vancouver did offer though was a wonderful array of volcanic rock so Sharp began experimenting with this as a light weight growing media on his garage roof with varying plants and media depths. In 2002 he was involved in building the first extensive roof on the coast based on his research. *"*So that is my story on green roofs*."*

In 2005, he was involved in a building expansion that needed to remove part of the local rainforest. What Sharp had been doing with his green roof volcanic media was looking at ways to take the green roof and turn it sideways. His approach was to create more of a thermal wall combining light weight volcanic rock with growing media and plants that grow on vertical surfaces. The creative vision came from a *"*gorgeous waterfall, but it's really a fern wall with water coming down. It's the inspiration for the living wall. A wonderful vertical habitat, lots of dripping water, a beautiful array of three types of ferns, perennials, mosses. So we wanted to replicate this*."*

In 2005 Japan hosted the AICHI world fair and the Japanese government had sponsored thirty different green wall systems to be on display so they could export this technology. Sharp attended and looked at some of the systems. He inspired a company from Vancouver to export a modular system and they planted them with 15 coastal plants. From these they selected eight species to plant in an installed green wall in Vancouver Aquarium in 2006. This was the first modular living wall system brought to North America. This system they considered used less water than the Patric Blanc ones he had seen and could be pre-vegetated off site plus be able to change modules on site. The wall uses a rain water system and still exists. "Living walls technologies are largely like living waterfalls. This is one of the concerns expressed around living walls. They use a lot of potable water and a lot of nutrients. The Aquarium uses rainwater but we are looking at using air conditioner runoff and treated grey water*."*

Sharp has installed another modular wall at Vancouver Airport in 2009. As passengers walked out of the airport they were struck by a six storey transit station that obscured the natural views of the surrounding rainforest. The living wall was created to obscure the transit station and merge with the rainforest. *"*It sits with the overall thematics of the airport, which is to create a biophilic environment that is calming. Passengers typically if they have had a long flight or are tired or are in transit; the airports and the airlines don't want stressed out passengers. So if they take a walk outside, they can see the wall, so they can become relaxed, calm, cool, collected. So the wall gives them an opportunity to not only see this beautiful tapestry back drop but to actually go up and touch the plants. So to be in contact with nature. The airport has been voted one of the top airports in the world for the top ten years. Another important driver for the green initiatives was the soundscape and acoustics*."* There is also a green roof with a beautiful piece of art from a First Nation carver with the context of the estuary. The idea was to bring a bit of the

estuary to the roof top of the airport. From there you can look out over the area. It is a combination of creating the setting and the story.

Sharp works a lot in high density urban environments. He has been building rain gardens as part of storm water management systems. He has been building these rain gardens on rooftops and calls them "blue roofs". Sharp also worked with architects to build six different green roofs at Vancouver Island University. These roofs get incorporated into the learning curriculum as a teaching laboratory. "Rain water management is a big driver." The roofs have now become areas for growing and different activities for the students.

Sharp agrees that strong neighbourhood committees and strong planning departments are both present in Vancouver and can work together. "We take it for granted that when we are preparing plans that there is a high portion of site coverage in landscape and tree canopies and roof tops and neighbouring views. People buy properties for the views. Not just long distance ones."

B.4 Randy Sharp

	Motivators and Drivers		
Stages of social movement	**Environmental**	**Social** (including emotional)	**Economic**
Emergence	Storm water management, urban density, heat island	Pioneer group with shared, creative vision, inspired by nature, community input and govt. sharing green, liveability vision	Real estate with views of nature
Coalescence		Policy, stress reduction, sound scape, aesthetics	
Any Identified Barriers			

****

The interview with Randy Sharp went beyond our hour as we immersed ourselves in the conversation. He seemed to drift into a timeless zone as he recounted the story of his involvement with the greening of Vancouver. I felt privileged to hear such an historic tale. The emergence story was different to the east coast stories, involving individual champions being innovative in their shared visions and creatively forging ahead with their ideas. I got the sense that community, local heroes and government all share a focus and work together in creating the city they want to live in.

Cornelia Oberlander-03/12/2013-04/12/2013

Landscape Architect O.C.

Player	Arena	Strategy	Word	Connection to Nature
Cornelia Oberlander	Industry	Design and implementation	Relief	Urban nature, young

After I left the interview with Randy Sharp I took his advice and quickly got a train to the airport to see the green wall and landscaping there. The wall was large and beautiful, and the landscaped walks conveyed a feel of the native environment. I noticed the waving native grasses, sustainable, moving and calming. Randy had organised for me to then meet Cornelia Oberlander, a reknowned architect whom I had heard of. I went back to the offices to meet with her. We didn't have a lot of time but she had brought me some articles and we were able to have a discussion. She explained at the start that because of time constraints this would only be "superficial".

Oberlander explained that she had been involved in *"*stimulating*"* the building of a green roof on Toronto's City Hall that was constructed by a company in Chicago.

Our conversation then digressed into who I had been meeting with as she was interested in how I was meeting with people and about my research and thesis. How did I get to biophilic urban design? Had I read *Biophilia*? She was taught by E.O. Wilson at Harvard.

Oberlander showed me photos of the roofs and works she had constructed. One of these was at Vancouver public library. She spoke about the Convention Centre green roof, not one of hers, which is unfortunately having some leakage issues. We then went back to talking about my travels and my plans. When she heard I was going to Portland, Oberlander said I must meet with Tom Lipton. I had been told his name a few times. She said "He got everything going. He is my guru*".*

Gradually we got back to her story. Oberlander was married to a very famous city planner and had many children. She was limited in her work but later in life was asked to design Robson Square in Vancouver's CBD. This is three blocks of a green roof.

Her latest green roof is at Van Duysen Botanical Garden visitor centre and has just won a green leadership award at the International Green Roof Congress in Hamburg. An article she showed me wrote that it was a beacon in sustenance and landscape activation. Oberlander wrote an article about it titled Green Roofs Ought to be Fun*".* It is in the shape of a native orchid.

Oberlander only works with bigger projects and names and only if she is called in at the very beginning. *"*I don't take any job unless they are kings. Otherwise out!" When I asked her what had been her motivator, how she had begun constructing green roofs, if it was policy, she replies *"*No policy, Cornelia's idea*!"* Asked what barriers she encounters, she says they happen all the time: "Moving along, a barrier. Over that one, move along, next barrier*."* Then we get back to looking at more pictures of her green roofs. I asked why she thinks people want green roofs: *"*Well to look down on an asphalt roof is ugly."

Next we get talking about green walls. Oberlander does not like the outdoors ones as *"*they use too much water*".* We both agreed that indoor green walls have a value. She mentioned an outdoor one she did like at the Lincoln Centre in New York.

Oberlander says that *"*years ago she tried to motivate green roof implementation with her book on green roofs*".* She talked about the slow process in getting one built. I asked her again why she thought they were built and she listed environmental factors: *"*it cools, microclimatic conditions*".* Then she read from her book, *"*Humans have physiological reactions to natural beauty and the diversity of

the shapes and colours of nature. Especially to green and to the motion and sound of other animals. This was written by Frederick Olmstead in 1899.*"*

We went back to discussing how in Vancouver it is not direct policy driving green roof implementation but the result of LEEDs certification. *"*LEEDs is stupid. You don't use water." She works now only on the Living Building Challenge by Cascadia Green Building Council. Here the site is rated as well as the building.

I asked again why she builds these green roofs. *"*Because I don't want to look down on a gravel roof. And to increase the biomass in the city. And cooling the building in the summer. And warming it in the winter. My library roof after rainfall only puts 28% of the water into the sewer system. So storm water retention and storm water management and reducing the destructive impact of impervious area on aquatic environments."

The discussion went into stories that people had told me of their experiences with green roofs. Oberlander then recounted one of her own when she was rushing through Robson Square, *"*There is a quiet corner and when I was rushing past a man stopped me. He knew my name but said I didn't know him. He explained that he was a tax collector and found his job stressful. So every lunch time he sits in the quiet corner under beautiful maple trees and goes back to work refreshed.*"*

Oberlander and I discussed the drivers then for biophilic urban design. She sees it as *"*People. Here in Vancouver it is community and collaboration.*"*

A fellow landscape architect joined us and the discussion led to hospitals and a design they are currently working on. Oberlander had created a garden at a hospital in Vancouver after an accident had led to her being there a while. She didn't like looking out at the asphalt roof, so after her release she created a roof top garden. Further discussion led to me rearranging my travel plans to stay an extra day and journey with her and her colleague to view the roof top garden and Van Duysen Botanical Garden Centre.

****

The offer by Cornelia to show me some of her creations was very special. I knew she was somewhat of an icon in landscape architecture and her colleague informed me she was 92! The wisdom of her years shone through and I could tell she was a leader who inspired with her creativity and innovation. She had said she had done a lot of work in New York as well. Cornelia had brought me one of her books and papers to read. I felt very honoured to get to spend this time with her. She also told of her life and initially being a refugee from Nazi Germany. Her mother was a

horticulturalist. Cornelia says she has had a wonderful life, loved her work and travelled the world. She has received much acknowledgement for her work, her perception and passion guiding her creativity.

The Next Day

The Hospital

I met with Cornelia and her colleague, Ken, at the appointed time and we travelled to the hospital garden she had created. There a senior nurse took us out to the roof top. Cornelia recounted a story that a patient had told her on one of her visits. "There was a young girl, she was nineteen and she had many skin grafts and it was December. I went to see the garden and she was sitting there but the rain was coming down. She said she loved the rain and it soothed her skin. And then she tells me that when she has finished sitting there she takes a sprig of rosemary with her and then she can sleep well at night." The nurse also recounted how restorative and de-stressing the roof was both for the patients who visited and for the staff. She said a lot of the burns patients were long term but the roof top had wheel chair access and they were able to come out and plant something in the garden and watch the plant grow. So life goes on. The nurse explained that other health care providers really needed to come out and catch their breath here and often the patients' families as well. She said it was definitely about de-stressing. They had to remove a rose bush as the patients didn't like the fact it had thorns. They were very particular about the plants they liked and wanted ones that were nice to touch; they needed to touch them. The patients love the feather grasses to touch and they like the movement. For the staff, they may suffer vicarious trauma and the garden has become a necessary healing retreat. The nurse explains that "it is a blessed relief for everyone that she can't say enough about. That morning the birds had been singing out there. It's about the sounds too. They have a waterfall and the ability to play music out there. It engages all the senses and it's pleasurable. They are overstimulated in the ward, sometimes can get angry with the pain and the garden allows them the opportunity to come out where it doesn't hurt, it's life affirming. And the seasons! They can see the colours changing and know that the seasons are changing. It's all fluorescent and it's all institutionalised so especially for the stress response, not only for the patients but for the families and the staff and the children."

Cornelia also told of a boy who had watered the plants when he was there and when he left he told his mother he wanted to start a garden at home. We both

acknowledged how, given a chance to connect with nature, it can inspire further desire.

Van Duysen Botanical Gardens Visitor Centre

After the hospital we went straight to the visitor centre. It was wonderful to walk with Cornelia as she explained her design of the landscape and centre to me. As we walked in she pointed out the patterning in the bricks that curved away from the old centre towards the new one so as to lead people there. We admired the natural walls with green cascades and daylighted streams. Then we saw her green roof shaped like orchid petals, but also reflecting the distant shape of the mountains. Cornelia said that they had wanted to echo the forms of nature in its design as well as be functional. She emphasised the need to collaborate with others involved such as the architects. Then beautiful designs can happen. When we reached the door of the centre Cornelia poised and showed me the carved wooden door handle, “very biophilic”, she said.

By the door was an inscription –

> When one tugs at a single thing in nature, the rest of the world follows
>
> John Muir

Inside it was like we had walked into a mushroom with wooden overhead “gills” comprising the undulating ceiling and leading to a central peak. This also ventilated the space. It was very beautiful and very special. Both welcoming and warm. Here Cornelia brought tea and cake while we admired the view to the outside gardens and talked about the beauty of nature and the wonderful opportunities to create more of this in our urban designs.

We spent the rest of the evening with her until she dropped us at a water taxi. It was a highlight of my travels.

B.5 Cornelia Oberlander

	Motivators and Drivers		
Stages of social movement	**Environmental**	**Social** (including emotional)	**Economic**
Emergence	Storm water retention	Connection to nature, aesthetics, collaboration	
Coalescence	Increase biomass in city, cool and heat buildings	Restoration, connection to nature- all senses, healing, de-stressing	
Any Identified Barriers			

B.2.5 Seattle

The train ride from Vancouver to Seattle was very beautiful with snowy vistas. It would be a quick stay but I had two interviews there, one with Judith Heerwagen, a pioneer of biophilic urban design and one of the Rhode Island Group – this was exciting; also an urban designer who worked in planning, providing a good opportunity to hear the policy story of Seattle. Michael Berkshire from Chicago had given me his name.

Dave LaClergue-06/12/2013

Urban Designer

Department of Planning and Development | City of Seattle

Player	Arena	Strategy	Word	Connection to Nature
Dave LaClergue	Government	Policy	Interested	Urban nature, young

LaClergue began by explaining a landscaping factor that they have called the Seattle Green Factor. It is not an incentive programme or voluntary, it is a requirement that they have had since 2006. It is a scoring system focussed on landscape that counts traditional elements such as trees, ground covers and shrubs but it also counts green roof, green walls, permeable paving, rain gardens and so on. Usually landscaping requirements in the US have been cut and dried and not really considered other types of green infrastructure. So that is part of what Green Factor responds to. In the early 2000s people were starting to use some of this *"*more novel stuff and we were trying to figure out how to give people credit for this if they are doing it voluntarily and how do we encourage people to do more*".* He then went on to discuss the drivers for this initiative: *"*First off there was a strong awareness at this point of storm water pollution as one of the major sources of water quality problems in Puget Sound. We are really clustered around this body of water, there is lots of urban density around this water. Over the last decade it has been come really clear that declining aquatic resources in Puget Sound have a lot to do with pollutants that are carried by urban run-off."

Green Factor applies to new developments referred to as urban villages, or urban centres. They have a growth management plan in these focal areas of high density. So Green Factor applies to the developers in these areas. When I asked him what group were implementing green infrastructure who planning then responded to, he replied, *"*It was the leading edge developers that were into green building already and trying to do all that stuff*."* I asked what the initial incentives for the developers were and LaClergue speculated that it was to do with being unique, or elitist and finding a niche. Seattle has had a population boom over the last twenty years, not just with more people moving to urban centres, but also due to some big corporations like Microsoft, Amazon and Starbucks moving their headquarters to

Seattle. He says that Seattle has gone from a low density small city and experienced growing pains along the way. "It has created a conflicting feeling among the residents. We have a very environmentally minded population, but being environmentally minded means different things to different people. So some are on board when it comes to urban density as an efficient way to arrange people. But to others it means when you move to higher density you have less trees, you have less landscape or breathing room or open space. So half of Seattle fights the other. I think the Green Factor came about when this debate was under way."

Green Factor is based on similar systems in Berlin and Malmo. "It came about through a company called I-Sustain, essentially an eco-tourism company for policy and design nerds. The company took a collaborative group of politicians, planners, architects, urban designers, developers; this whole kind of ecosystem of different types of people involved in development. This group would take them to Singapore to look at water infrastructure, to look at what people are doing there. Or Berlin, or Copenhagen to look at public space improvements. So there were all these specialists in different fields who went to these cities together and learnt about different cities. Then they would come back to Seattle and have this common vocabulary. Lots had been to Berlin and Malmo so were familiar with Green Factor scoring. So as part of updating development codes in 2006 someone said "Well what about Green Factor like they do in Berlin and Malmo", and everyone agreed and liked how it worked in those cities, so let's try it here in Seattle. There wasn't a lot of debate and it happened in a relatively short time. There was the social capital to do it." LaClergue feels the Green Factor ratio sets the bar much higher for the amount of expected landscaping as well as giving more flexibility in ways of meeting that bar.

Since Green Factor has been in effect, six or seven years, LaClergue has observed a couple of things. Before Green Factor, the typical way a design process for a new development would go is that the engineers, the architects and the developers would design pretty much the whole project and when they were at ninety percent design, they would bring in the landscape architects to figure out where they were going to put the trees and shrubs. Because a lot of the time it is necessary to do things on the structure to meet the Green Factor ratio, the landscape architects are being brought in much earlier, at the very beginning of the design project, and this seems to be resulting in much better projects. Before, sometimes projects would have "cool" things in the design and then they would get valued and engineered out, but now they have to do it to meet the code.

I asked how the community has responded and LaClergue responds that it is pretty popular, though the initiatives are not always visible. He says Green Factor projects have nicer streetscapes along the sidewalk which are visible, but a nice green roof top helps "build community*"* within the buildings by providing a nice amenity to use. Developers either like it or tolerate it because it is a known factor and doesn't add a huge amount of cost to the project. The Planning Department expected there to more resistance from developers. The one challenge has been *"*an impassioned group of tree advocates who appealed Green Factor as not having to provide trees. We see a lot of trees though as trees are the cheapest way to get credit. So we have never seen a Green Factor project that doesn't have trees. But this group was hung up on the technicality that the code didn't say they had to provide trees. We had to defend it in hearings and so made some small adjustments to recognise that concern. We see this as a very green forward thinking standard*."*

We recapped what LaClergue considered the major drivers for increasing urban greenery. These were increasing density, increasing population and storm water management. He also mentioned that planning had adopted the Green Factor code at the same time as they updated our storm water code to give more credit to green roofs. This was also at the same time that the *"*Private market already was starting to provide more green roofs just because there was demand for it. People liked them. It is like a selling point for an apartment building. It is a relatively cheap thing you can do to create an amenities base for the residents. It can't give all the credit to Green Factor. There is evidence that if you are selling or leasing either office space or residential space that looks on to a green roof over a blank roof that you can sell or lease that space for more."

With people meeting their storm water requirements, "they are either going to spend money on a big cistern under the house or visible stuff, and there is a lot of advantage to visible stuff. There are a lot of different factors all steering in the same direction. And it's more attractive."

La Clergue talked about the strongly community driven and maintained gardens that are popping rapidly around Seattle. Seattle is also creating a lot of green streets, where they are narrowing streets and creating rain gardens and bike infrastructure. People want to ride bikes and walk more so the focus is more on creating that aspect of liveability. Unlike Europe, where cities were created before cars, Seattle is trying to retrofit.

****

I didn't have a lot of expectations in going to this interview but by the end was enthralled. It was a conversation of confirmation of the concepts that had arisen throughout the journey. Here was the lived experience and observation. Again I saw that a major initiative like Green Factor had started with a group, collaboration, a shared understanding. Also because of this meeting point there was less time and debate involved in implementation. There was resistance only where there was fear and it was misunderstood.

There was clear recognition of the drivers: population growth, density and storm water being the environmental factors, but also good observation of the social drivers, and of biophilic design implemented by the leading, cutting edge, almost elitist developers. It was wonderful to hear that he had witnessed the building of community through greater provision of green space, such as a green roof. Again the higher property value was witnessed, with people paying more for views of a green roof and to have green amenities. It is wonderful to hear the success of biophilic initiatives.

B.6 David La Clergue

	Motivators and Drivers		
Stages of social movement	**Environmental**	**Social** (including emotional)	**Economic**
Emergence	Storm water polluting water way, increasing density	Collaboration, education and awareness, leading, innovative	
Coalescence		Cool, aesthetics, visible, liveability	Increased property value
Any Identified Barriers		Community misunderstanding,	

B.2.6 Portland

Matt Burlin-09/12/2013

Sustainable Stormwater Management
Environmental services
City of Portland

Player	Arena	Strategy	Word	Connection to Nature
Matt Burlin	Government	Policy implementation and innovation	Peace	Wilderness, adult

Burlin and I had met at the Biophilic Cities conference so it was good to have that connection established already. I had heard that Portland had a lot of grass roots initiatives and asked him to tell me about these, the top down policy initiatives and where he saw them integrating. He explained that his area was storm water management, which I thought had been a major driver here, but Burlin pointed out that there were significant others. The river was one of these, keeping it clean, plus neighbourhood streets and developments. Burlin considers that people really understand the relationship between their behaviour and the river and that there are impacts when you make decisions. A lot of people ride bikes in Portland, not all do it because it helps keep the river clean, but there is an awareness of this. As far as Portland being a sustainable city, there are all kinds of initiatives in energy conservation and waste management plus he explains they focus a lot on diversity and equity. Burlin says their top down policies also really strive to be equitable. They have park systems, natural areas and integrated green infrastructure programs.

Portland is a small city, a factor that Burlin considers can aid implementation of green initiatives. He says the river really attracts people as it runs through the middle of the city so is a central focus in people's lives. "There is an inherent connection. People are thus very aware if the river is not taken care of."

Burlin also thinks that there are a lot of progressive thinkers in Portland that have been here for decades and this makes the city a bit different. "If we go back to the

70s and 80s there were already people here rattling cages and trying to get land conserved. There were advocates and leaders and I think that kind of leadership fosters more leaders and creates that kind of culture. While we have done a lot in the last decade with green infrastructure and biophilia I think we have a lot of pioneers from thirty to forty years ago to thank for this."

Portland is a very walkable city with a lot of connectivity nodes that not only connect people but wildlife and habitat also. *"*I think it's a planning philosophy to really look at things comprehensively and strategically; where you have nodes where people can access their immediate needs by walking. Nature needs to be included in those needs. Otherwise it's like saying I have to drive twenty miles to get groceries; I have to drive twenty miles to get nature. Everyone needs access to nature*."* Portland has an urban growth boundary that increases density and improves efficiency. Burlin feels this also gives the neighbourhoods distinctive character.

Initiatives also sprang from a Federal mandate to clean up the river. Burlin thinks that this was when *"*the difference was; the leadership, the innovation was when we started suggesting that perhaps we could do this in a more efficient manner if we started using nature to help manage our water sheds and our storm water runoff and prevent sewer overflows*".* We discussed the recurring theme of the multiple benefits that using nature to respond to a crisis can bring. Burlin then explained that economic perspectives still hinder green infrastructure progress in Portland, yet there has been progress. *"*When someone makes a decision to do things differently in the world that we live in in the US and it doesn't pencil out as the least expensive option people aren't going to go for it. But I think one of the differences here was that someone along the line decided it was ok to test it out, to see if it worked and then if it does, let's monitor and evaluate it for a few years. And then if it does add up, lets expand it to a bigger area, and then if that works then keep on going. This doesn't happen so much in other places. This takes leadership and innovative ideas. I think what happens then is when you start to integrate these things into the city, and then over time you see the city get greener, then the people who are counting the pennies say 'Oh look, it's helping with our cost of living, it's helping with our property values', and then they are interested*."*

Burlin thinks this gap from trialling to the potential multiple benefits is hard to quantify. "We don't talk about multiple benefits and equate them to dollars*."* This is why he thinks that the green infrastructure argument is often lost. In the energy movement things can be equated to dollars. He thinks that what Portland has seen is an incremental slow evolution towards understanding that these techniques over

time will save money. *"*That's really what we base our whole argument on when we say we want green street policy and water shed protection. We are saying we know this works and we know this will save ratepayers money. When you have an option on the table that offers multiple benefits for the moneys like green infrastructure, it makes sense to go with that. It also helps make the city more resilient and healthy, yet we still have opposition that say we should use pipes! But things are changing.*"* A budget cut unfortunately cut the green roof incentive that had been in place. He thinks policy makers saw it as a subsidiary and that this is not needed as people should be doing these things anyway. Burlin thinks it was complicated by the financial incentive being implemented in a recession when development slowed down. There were still 135 projects funded though. Now development is picking up but there is no green roof incentive but he is hoping that they will still see green roofs coming in and technical assistance and resources will be offered. *"*But cost is still a major barrier and without something to help the initial cost for the start-up businesses their costs are going to be higher until there is a broader foundation.*"*

Burlin explains that although his role is to take care of the sewer and storm water, over time they have realised that this also involves taking care of the water shed; a healthy water shed takes care of the sewer and the storm water. This is part of their green infrastructure system.

Burlin is aware that Portland has a good reputation for green infrastructure but he thinks if it wasn't for the leaders such as Bob Sallinger, Mike Houek and Tom Liptan, they wouldn't be doing all this stuff. I had heard of these three and were able to arrange meetings with both Houek and Liptan. Liptan is a retired landscape architect and a big advocate for green roofs who started the whole thing here. Houek is an active ecologist and naturalist plus director of the Urban Green Spaces Institute. "Mike is just a prominent voice and he has done some of the most important projects that have happened here in the last decades, and people listen to him."

The conversation shifted to discussion of the term biophilic design and Burlin recounted a story around this from a conversation with a prominent Portland landscape architect who was asked about the term: *"*Why are we calling it that? That is already what we do.*"* Burlin responded that she was right, that is what she does as a landscape architect, but it is not what everybody else does. So how do we get other people to do it and understand the language? He is not sure what the right word is but when you are able to say that a street design in a neighbourhood can have an impact on a child's creative mind, someone needs to explain it that way. *"*Who do we have to do this*?"*

I talked about Heerwagen's thoughts about how biophilic design should not be an add on. Burlin has been enjoying thinking about how to explain it and expresses this. *"*I have been thinking about biophilic as a context for our work instead of a new way of talking about this work. It is that we are already doing the work, but now we have a different framework, a broader framework in order to talk about it. For a long time we have talked about the storm water benefits of a green roof. Then in order to make it sell we would say that it prolongs the life of your roof, you will provide habitat and it will coon your building and overtime save money on your storm water fee. But I think what biophilia does is that now it says, 'Oh if you and your neighbours do that then your neighbourhood will go up seven quality of life points.' And it's giving us another step towards saying when your neighbourhood or city is designed like this then your quality of life goes up. We just need to figure out how much it goes up." Calculating the economic benefits may seem daunting at this point but Burlin points out that in many emerging fields being able to do these calculations may always have seemed difficult. Eventually these things can be figured out. When we get it done, it may get easier.

Burlin discussed how initial decisions made around city design years ago did not take into account, they could not take into account, the impact on future quality of life those decisions had. You don't learn the effects of a city with no green over one generation, you learn it over time. He mentioned the loss of lives in Chicago's heat wave that no one was prepared for, so the decision to take action was vital. Their leadership was there saying *"*Green roofs, they are going to have to happen. We have to bring these urban temperatures down and that is a quality of life decision that they are making. That makes a lot of sense*."* Burlin knew of Michael Berkshire in planning in Chicago and the tough implementation time he had gone through, *"*Michael is a saint!" This is a sign of leadership, maybe aggressive leadership.

I discussed how things seem to be moving from pure function benefits to more awareness of the psychological benefits and Burlin agrees. He sees that in cities which have implemented green infrastructure, results are starting to be seen. Burlin notes that cities like Detroit, a vehicular city, went bankrupt. He sees a new approach coming into cities with people like Jane Jacobs in New York. But questions how much of an impact the cities which are doing well are having, as there are still many who are not doing good initiatives. Burlin is hoping that *"*as cities evolve it is proved that it is worth that investment in nature for the quality of life, and if you don't make that choice and you go the other direction, then you are going to lose quality of life".

Burlin recounted a story where a landscape architect managed to persuade the property owner to install a green roof. He was hesitant but interested and so they installed it. The property owner loved it and decided to build another apartment building next door and wanted another green roof. The owner loved what this did for his building. *"*He has space that is open to tenants on the roof. He has created a gathering space and the tenants love it. It really is beautiful*."*

To Burlin it is about quality of life and healthy living, that we want people to be healthier because the city is healthier. He feels that sometimes we can get lost in the detail, or that the idea of a biophilic city can leave out the fact that the individual is healthier because the city is biophilic. Burlin explains that his job is to keep the river clean, but this is not the bottom reason, it is so the river is clean for the people, the fish and the wildlife so they can be healthier. He thinks there should be an office for the quality of life, which sets strategies to increase quality of life points. We need to be able to value quality of life. Does biophilia do this? *"*There is no real context for quality of life, there are so many different ways to make your life better but are we really valuing this as quality of life? Like trees are good, clean air is good, air quality is good but it is not an integrated approach to improving quality of life. All these things fall under the same umbrella yet in some way need to coalesce. That is what I like about Biophilic Cities. This is a way to build them so that all things make sense*."*

Burlin says that The Portland Plan is starting to incorporate new things, like trees and green streets. He reflects that our cities have been designed with such different focusses yet is confident that if we built a city from scratch today it would be built green and sustainably, it would make sense. *"*We are having to retrofit now*."* Portland generally shows much support for green initiatives and campaigns to protect natural areas receive a lot of community support. It is a young community that embraces being outside. Many of the inhabitants have moved to Portland so they have greater access to nature. Sustainability seems to be part of the culture. Green building is big in both residential and commercial. *"*What has drawn young people to Portland is the nature and so it makes sense they want to care for nature and incorporate biophilic initiatives. It is a vibrant energetic city that takes care of its natural resources and people appreciate that."

We discussed how once a certain mind-set develops in a city then it tends to attract more people wishing to live that lifestyle, so it ripples out and grows. Then there are some strong community advocates who connect with the government. Burlin explains that usually where there are push backs to the green programs it is in

areas where there are greater problems and need. These are the more disadvantaged, outer suburbs with higher crime, infrastructure disrepair and dirt streets. Ironically, it is these areas that need biophilia the most. So sometimes sustainability is a luxury and implementation can be a little skewed. *"*When we come up for the road map for biophilic urbanism, we have to come up with the equity for all communities. We have done a lot of outreach in the less advantaged communities. We need to approach it so we are making the whole city healthy, not just parts of the city. Quality of life for everyone is quality of life for everyone*."*

****

The conversation with Matt was extremely thought provoking and informative. The recurring themes of leadership and innovation were reinforced – a group of leaders with a common vision supporting one another. I got a sense of the interface between community progressive thinkers and government policy makers. Innovative, strong local champions had a voice and influence. Matt also conveyed the sense of the community that is drawn to Portland because of the access to nature so there is a mind-set that develops and ripples out attracting similar thinkers. I think this helps make Portland special.

Matt conveyed a depth or perception and deep thinking regarding the issues of biophilic urbanism and it was stimulating to discuss these. The multiple benefits that come with implementation have arisen in most interviews. Matt explored this further, discussing the difficulty of making the economic case and being able to quantify the benefits. Maybe this is where biophilic urbanism sits; a framework for integrating the benefits and outcomes of a multidisciplinary approach to urban design. An integration that I think really needs to happen.

Matt's thoughts about it all coming down to quality of life for all were insightful and they really did illuminate the bottom line of what is trying to be achieved in biophilic design. We need a greater understanding of the broader picture, the deeper perspectives and recognition of the need to coalesce into a more integrated framework for quality of life.

Matt also offered to show me around Portland and the next day he took me to some of their natural parks, the green roof of their City Hall and showed examples of their green streets initiatives and kerb-side rain gardens. It was generous of him and wonderful to see these examples.

B.7 Matt Burlin

	Motivators and Drivers		
Stages of social movement	**Environmental**	**Social** (including emotional)	**Economic**
Emergence	Innovative trials, storm water management,	Connection to river, progressive thinkers/leaders,	
Coalescence	Multiple benefits, resilient city	Walkability, density, healthier city, increased creativity, increased quality of life	Property values, money saving over time, multiple benefits for dollars, tenant amenity/rent value
Any Identified Barriers		Difficulty in quantifying social benefits, equity in green initiatives in suburbs	Difficulty in quantifying multiple benefits, initial cost

Ada Karlos-10/12/2013

Homeowner

Player	Arena	Strategy	Word	Connection to Nature
Ada Karlos	Civic	Community involvement	Contentment	Urban nature, adult

Ada and her family were our wonderful AirBnB hosts. On our arrival at their home I was happily surprised to spot a green roof on their substantial chicken coop. Ada agreed to talk with me about this.

The roof is seven years old and the idea came after Ada had researched into what makes a comfortable environment for an urban chicken. Portland can have extremes of hot and cold and Ada sees *"*this as a way to control the temperature. It never gets really hot inside*".* The roof is also visible for their kitchen window and this is something Ada gets pleasure from. When she arrived in Portland Ada became aware that a few other people had small garden roofs but she thought it would be good to encourage more. She visited the nursery to find out which species would be best. There was a lot of interest in the roof and it was picked for the annual community chicken calendar and became part of the Tour de Coop, where people visit interesting coops. So far Ada has had a couple of hundred visitors to the green roof.

Ada grew up in the suburbs and wasn't especially interested in the outdoors.

B.2.7 San Francisco

San Francisco offered a few interviews. Two major players had been at the Biophilic Cities conference and one had emailed colleagues and organised some other interviews for me. Both the conference attendees had presented so I had some background on initiatives in San Francisco. This city was climatically quite different to others I had visited and therefore had a different agenda. Storm water was not the issue it was in most of the other US cities. Judith Heerwagen had also provided me with a contact at Google. Both Judith and Bill Browning had been involved with their architects in designing biophilia into the Google headquarters at Silicon Valley. I was excited about this interview as I was told it is not so easy to get to visit Google headquarters.

Peter Brastow-16/12/2013

Senior Biodiversity Coordinator
SF Environment

Player	Arena	Strategy	Word	Connection to Nature
Peter Brastow	Government	Community stewardship	Peace	Rural, young

We began the conversation by discussing the term biophilic design. Brastow considers that there are similar terms but maybe they are not as encompassing as biophilic design. Brastow's career has focused on restoring habitat in the city and connecting residents to this habitat and nature in the city. He considers that this *"*is so they can deepen their sense of place and is also for the sake of nature itself. We have some amazing habitats here and biodiversity inherent to this particular place. It's about recognising that just because we are a city doesn't mean that we shouldn't take care of the biodiversity that is indigenous to and special about this place."

Brastow considers the human nature connection as *"*fundamental. It's like a mutually beneficial relationship and process. Nature needs us to heal and manage and steward*."* He works with voluntary community stewardship where people have a stake and restore the relationship. We need to encourage people to be engaged and reconnecting *"*because it's really about restoring a whole new relationship with the earth*".* He recounts the number of stewardship programs around the city in the city parks where people are involved but also expresses that *"*we want to expand this to where we are really bringing nature into the built environment so that the built environment becomes more compatible with our remaining natural environment and so ultimately we are evolving towards a more wholistic blend of the two in place*."* There are some public funds but Brastow thinks more tax money should be allocated to take care of the nature of the places where we live. This is a matter of priorities.

The stewardship programs in San Francisco have blossomed in the last 25 years. There is a huge need for more people. One barrier encountered by Brastow are the

unions "who are not always super happy about using tons of volunteers. But it improves the volunteer's quality of life".

I commented on the number of little parklets and small gardens I had seen around San Francisco. "Yes. There is a real movement of people taking over little pieces of park where they have been permitted to do so, or derelict areas, and greening them. It's part of the street parks program where you can apply to do this. People adopt little places. Some of these have been connected to provide restorative biodiversity corridors."

Brastow had founded a non-profit organisation called Nature in the City in 2005 that is also involved in the parklet management. It is still successfully functioning. He had worked with the National Parks service early in his career and it was this work that got him interested and led to the idea of creating an NGO. Brastow wanted to be more in the heart of the city and focus on urban nature and biodiversity. In the early 1990s there had been recognition that there were still some significant natural areas in the city and that a program was needed to take care of them for nature and biodiversity. This occurred with the hiring of a biologist and community supportive activism. Some sectors of the public provided quite a challenge by "being cynical about restoring nature in the city. Nature belongs outside of the city in parks and people are in the city and the parks are for dogs, they would argue. And others wouldn't want us to cut down any trees, even when it was necessary. These cynics and skeptics and critics made nature in the city sound kind of negative."

Brastow considers there are four goals that are a focus of San Francisco environmental agencies.

- Restoration
- Nature in the City
- Stewardship
- Environmental literacy

He thinks that agencies need to be more "knitted together" to achieve these goals. To help achieve this he has been involved with creating an inter-agency biodiversity working group who are trying to collaboratively achieve these goals. "All these different agencies have a stake in this whether they own land, or whether they own the street-scape or the utilities commission and the storm water stuff. So the plan is to get the whole city family on the same page and speaking the same language so

coming up with a unified narrative and unified approach to land management.*"* This would give the public better and more unified information on which to base decisions.

Brastow understands the need to bring all the factors together. Not just *"*do the green"' but consider the water use and the biodiversity. He would like to see green roofs created which do not need to be watered so much through summer. The ones Brastow has seen require a lot of water. *"*We need to experiment more. Roofs are green roofs in winter but in summer they are brown roofs, but they are still alive! I want to also see sustainability and water conservation.*"* On the east coast it's a lot easier to green roof as it's raining all the time. The roofs are green and then go brown in the cold of winter. In San Francisco it is the opposite, roofs go brown in summer.

To Brastow, connecting to nature where a person lives is connecting to taking better care of nature around the planet. *"*Cities are fundamental to environmental sustainability. If we connect people to nature at home then it ripples out and they relate to all the other environmental stuff all around the world. We need to get people outside with a unified voice. Stories can get people to key in to nature in the city."

****

I found the conversation with Peter refreshing. He worked in city government but the focus was not about managing an urban crisis through nature, it was about nature itself, biodiversity, and connecting people to nature to increase their sense of place and land stewardship. There were similar themes to Portland, such as the community group who thinks nature should be outside the city. Similarly also, was the recognition of the need to bring all the stakeholders to do with nature in the city together in collaboration, that nature in the city bridges many aspects of city life and city design. I think the idea of voluntary stewardship that Peter works so hard towards is potentially a powerful tool in changing the relationship of urbanites to their nature in their city. Peter conveyed well his understanding of the movement in our cities towards creating a new relationship with nature.

B.8 Peter Brastow

	Motivators and Drivers		
Stages of social movement	**Environmental**	**Social** (including emotional)	**Economic**
Emergence	Biodiversity	Connecting people to nature	
Coalescence		Nature connection deepens through contact, collaboration of agencies	
Any Identified Barriers	Water use	Some community members object to nature in city, perceptions of beauty	Objections to loss of jobs by using volunteers

Scott Edmondson-16/12/2013

Planner/Economist

Information and Analysis Group

San Francisco Planning Department

Player	Arena	Strategy	Word	Connection to Nature
Scott Edmonson	Government	Policy	Wonder	Urban nature, young

I met with Edmondson directly after my meeting with Brastow as they work in the same building. We began talking about the Biophilic Cities conference and the focus on biodiversity. *"*It was where people's energies were at*."* Edmondson then pointed out that some of the conference was focussed on economics but *"*it begs the question of how this stuff is related*".* The most advanced sustainable planning systems for the built environment, says Edmondson, are the Living Building Challenge and the Eco Districts*. "*They both have biophilia as key components of their frameworks, but the way that they define it is kind of rudimentary. It's just nature in the city. It's more traditional*."*

Green roofs in San Francisco currently are created through the storm water management program. Biodiversity is seen as an element of sustainability but *"*sustainability is such a fractured kind of unsystematic, un-strategic initiative these days. Everybody is doing bits and pieces where they can so it's not stitched together*".* The conversation then turned to aspects of sustainability. How dependent should the human economy be on the natural economy? *"*There is a relationship. Right now the human economy is systematically destroying the natural economy. That's the sustainability problem. No matter how much biodiversity we create if our economy continues to destroy the natural system, then we have a problem*."*

Edmondson, being an economist, naturally has an economic slant on biophilic design and the relationship between the human and natural economy. He discussed the necessity to link these together in biophilic design, to recognise the impact and interrelationships of one to the other. San Francisco has both an Urban Forest plan and a Green Connections plan, both of which *"*are plans to integrate nature and habitat value into the human environment".

Brastow had talked a lot about butterfly species found in the San Francisco area and one of his stories was retold by Edmondson with a different perspective that I found interesting:

The Western Tiger Swallow Tail Butterfly Story

"In one of the major streets of the CBD there was a recent discovery of the Western Tiger Swallow Tail butterfly. 'Tigers on Market Street'. So that is a big phenomenon. But what is really interesting about it is that it is not so much biophilia by design, but it is nature invading and adapting to a human space. Adaptation is occurring; those trees are not the right trees in terms of species, but they are laid out in a linear way

which is how the butterflies use them. Also in Market Street the trees are in the bottom of this big canyon, which is like a river canyon. The hypothesis is that they are adapting because there are those similarities. It was also discovered that these butterflies and some other species were congregating in the road intersections. So what we are seeing is that what you would think is a total 'a-biophilic', 'a-nature' environment is being reinterpreted and being re-understood to have characteristics that mimic a natural environment. So this is the reverse. It's not us doing biophilic design, it's nature adapting and illuminating the biophilia. The redesign plan on Market Street had been including ripping the trees out and it was only the discovery of these butterflies and intervention by an activist group that stopped this. Now the plan is to look at how to redesign Market Street to include the butterflies and other animals. This is biophilia in action."

We discussed how people respond to butterflies. Edmondson thinks there is a special connection people have with butterflies and people are very keen to protect them. We both wondered if it was because they are so beautiful and it triggers people's response to aesthetics.

Although there is not a focus on biophilic design on Edmonson's planning department, he is aware that there is a growing interest in the city to bring San Francisco up to speed on green walls and green roofs. A policy report has been written that summarises other cities' experiences and contains relevant information that would go into formulating a green roof, green wall policy for San Francisco. This had followed from the Planning Department sponsoring a *CitiesAlive* conference in San Francisco in 2013, which had generated significant interest. At this point there is nothing in the building code or planning code to implement green roofs, but a green roof can be used as an option to manage storm water. Edmondson doesn't think there have been many takers for this option. It is all still under debate and unclear which department would be undertaking any green roof initiatives as far as policy. Edmondson thinks there is more of a drive to do biophilic design amongst architects and landscape architects. Architects have a big capacity to influence the design of a building. The *CitiesAlive* conference had brought that thinking out into different realms of planning and water management.

The conversation concluded with a discussion about economics, which Edmonson sees is an important dimension. *"*The biosphere is the principal economy of the planet and the fundamental principles of this regenerative system or regenerative

economy are the ones we need to mimic in our human economy. The transition to this is the social system, economic system design challenge.”

****

The conversation with Scott was again a different perspective. I was speaking to an economist. This did make me think and consider things in these terms. I liked the idea of viewing things as interrelating economies, the human and the natural. It also though is a matter of terminology as the principles are also ones of sustainability. I wondered if the Tiger Swallow Tail story represented the perspective of self-organisation from the natural world. It reflects the same principles that Mary Rowe in New York talked about: self-organising and adapting for survival.

B.9 Scott Edmondson

	Motivators and Drivers		
Stages of social movement	**Environmental**	**Social** (including emotional)	**Economic**
Emergence		Connecting natural and human economies	
Coalescence			
Any Identified Barriers			

Kirsten Weeks-19/12/2013

Energy and Building Ecology Specialist

ARUP

Player	Arena	Strategy	Word	Connection to Nature
Kirsten Weeks	Industry	Research	Vitality	Urban, youth

Weeks has always wanted to make a big difference and *"*do as much good as I can for the environment, with people as part of the environment. I explored different areas and ended up in design, particularly green buildings and sustainable design. I find there is something particularly compelling about green roofs and restoration of natural ecosystems in the built environment; and then also using either actual natural ecosystems or using built systems that work like natural ecosystems in order to solve problems in the built environment. I design built systems that take inspiration from natural ecosystems in that they don't generate waste, they use waste as resources, the loops are closed."

Her passion for green roofs has seen Weeks involved in efforts to set the stage for a lot of green roofs to be built. She has observed that there has been an increased interest in San Francisco in urban agriculture, biodiversity and green roof policy, particularly in relation to storm water management. Weeks instigated meetings with interested parties one of whom was SPUR, a San Francisco policy and urban design think tank. The SPUR green roof task force of which Weeks is part compiled recommendations for green roofs in San Francisco which were presented at the *CitiesAlive* conference and endorsed by a San Franciscan 'supervisor'. Supervisors are government representative who sit below the Mayor.

Soon after Weeks joined ARUP she was involved in a study with ARUP and Walmart who had approached ARUP to study green roofs. She thinks Walmart was interested because they thought that a green roof could save money and help them reach their energy and environmental performance goals for their buildings. Weeks has also been involved in a study assessing the green roof and policy environments in different US cities. The question the study addresses is how much it cost to build

a building and meet policy, with and without a green roof. She explained that in this perspective the "premium for the green roof shrinks a lot and then pays back in a shorter time*".* This study then led to doing a study for the United States General Services Administration which commissioned ARUP on behalf of Congress. This was to research the benefits, challenges and cost performance of green roofs on public buildings. In doing the study they put *"*dollar values to the benefits, including the social benefits and things such as air quality and habitat value and heat island reduction. When you added it all up it did have a positive value for the individual owner/occupier but not a very big one, about $2.60 per square foot. But to the community it was a significant $30 per square foot. So we could take this to the policy maker and say you are quite justified in offering an incentive of say $5 a square foot because the community is going to benefit six times that*."*

"I do this because I believe inherently that this is a valuable thing, to cover our hard surfaces in our cities with something that mimics a natural ecosystem. But as I have gone through these benefits, I feel my hunch is substantiated by research."

Weeks understands that sometimes a green roof on its own is not the most cost effective for a particular outcome, but it is the multiple benefits that make it worthwhile and *"*exciting. People who are into this are passionate about it. I think because we intuitively understand that we need more nature in our cities. The figures are needed to convince someone who doesn't have the intuitive sense that this is worth doing*."* She has been pleased to find that the figures support her intuition. We talked about the overlap between areas which benefit from more nature in our cities and how much more could be done if all these areas contributed a little.

The recent increase in interest in green roofs and nature in the city Weeks sees as a continuance and progression of the environmental movement. Some interest, she thinks is driven by climate change and people's awareness of this. Weeks also considers that people want to be at the cutting edge and seen as leading the field. Information to facilitate this is shared more easily through media now. The Living Building Challenge has also progressed things. This is a certification where all different components are required. "It even has a beauty component. Of the standards that I know this is the most progressive and hardest to meet."

****

Kirsten began describing her journey of passion that has brought her to where she is and how she has always been driven by altruism to help the environment. Her

professional career has focussed on scientific research that has helped provide the quantitative results to progress what she describes as her inherent knowing, her hunch. Not many people who I had met could so clearly articulate how their career was driven by their intuition and present a beautiful blending of the two.

B.10 Kirsten Weeks

	Motivators and Drivers		
Stages of social movement	**Environmental**	**Social** (including emotional)	**Economic**
Emergence		Intuitive knowing, altruism	
Coalescence	Multiple benefits	Research	Supporting financial figures
Any Identified Barriers			

Mary Davidge-17/12/2013

Principal,

Mary Davidge Associates

Green Building Consultant

Google HQ

Player	Arena	Strategy	Word	Connection to Nature
Mary Davidge	Industry	Research		

Google has a reputation as being very “closed shop” and hard to visit or get much information from. The sense I had got in other conversations was one of frustration

as people know Google are doing good things, particularly in design and biophilia, but they are not sharing their findings. I had heard from both Judith Heerwagen and Bill Browning that they were involved in consulting with Mary Davidge on design elements of biophilia. I was to meet with their contact at Google headquarters in Silicon Valley and get to join her for Google's famous buffet lunch.

I began with the obvious question: Why is Google interested in green buildings and biophilic design? *"*It's not just about productivity but one of Google's values is health and wellbeing of their employees. This is why we have worked with Terrapin Bright Green and others because we are looking for data about what aspects of the built environment can support human health and wellbeing. And not just being healthy, not just getting the toxic things out of the building but to create a more vibrant and energising user experience. And out of all the things we think we can do that is definitely one of the ones that is most promising*."*

She pointed out some immediate design features such as the day lit stairs and views to nature. *"*We know it's a better experience and it's going to affect their long term health*."* In Davidge's conversations with her employers she is told that their charter *"*is to help Googlers live 30 years longer than the average person. So we need to think about what would really help that. What are the goals and what type of environment do we want to create? What is most promising? It's pretty clear that one of the things is access to nature. It's obvious. So the why is straightforward. The how is more difficult*."*

I commented on how this seemed to reflect a care Google has towards their employees and Davidge agreed remarking how they wouldn't serve the quality of food they do if they were just concerned about productivity. Davidge has been working with Google for nearly ten years and keeps seeing genuine concern for the health, well-being and experience of their employees. *"*So I think that's the why, that's simply put. Research tells us there is a psychological and physiological impact of having access to nature, so why not do it?"

We talked about the increase in creativity aspect which I had had reflected throughout many of my interviews. Davidge commented that in talking with people many of them express that *"*they are more in that state of flow more when they have access to nature. I think research proves this*."* I told her about the indoor biofilter living walls in Toronto and she told me that they did have some of these inside Google as indoor air quality was really important. Although the air was not so bad in Silicon

Valley Davidge explained that what they did here was for Googles headquarters worldwide. *"*Sometimes this necessitates only indoor biophilia*."*

Davidge explained that her company doesn't design but develops the guidelines for the designers. "We help the design team use the guidelines. So for instance on biophilia, if we were to say that they need to incorporate these four strategies we help them by doing case studies on where they would use these four strategies. What technologies they might use. We have a case history of what has worked for us in the past so each design team doesn't have to start from the beginning." I thought how much this made sense and that governments could take note. Davidge has to ensure that any project has enough biophilia and at least has achieved the baseline amount. Her role is to identify what has ideas based on what has worked previously. I commented on what a fantastic case study and data set they must have here, especially as the results are global and they are compiling a lot of information. Davidge agreed. All data is owned by Google. Employee surveys are also carried out. I suggested that perhaps direct conversation and interviews with employees could gain more information. Davidge thought this was a good idea as the surveys do not reveal clearly what aspects of the biophilic design people are mainly responding to.

Google also have LEED strategies and her work helps in this as well. Google are just in the process of beginning some ground buildings which will incorporate more biophilic design. So far the work has been to retrofit the existing buildings.

"Going forward each project will have a requirement to meet those baseline biophilic metrics. I think it will grow over time."

****

The interview with Mary was highly enjoyable combined with the pleasure and excitement of being at the famous Google Headquarters. Someone early on in Google made some good decisions as to the direction of the company and its employee relationships. It was very clear it was all about the health and wellbeing of the workers and encouraging that it was also very clear that biophilic design was the answer, especially when they have global researchers at their disposal. It is a shame that this amazing research and innovations are not shared publicly, but Mary did suggest that one day in the right manner this may be possible.

B.11 Mary Davidge

	Motivators and Drivers		
Stages of social movement	**Environmental**	**Social** (including emotional)	**Economic**
Emergence		Health and wellbeing, intuitively obvious	
Coalescence		Research results	
Any Identified Barriers			

Jeff Joslin-18/12/2013

Director of Current Planning

San Francisco Planning Department

Player	Arena	Strategy	Word	Connection to Nature
Jeff Joslin	Government	Policy	Humble	Urban nature, adult

Joslin had lived in Portland for 23 years and so knew Liptan and Houck very well, having also worked with them. Both he and Liptan recently went for a green roof tour in Switzerland which Joslin thought had been very *"*cataclysmic*"* for green roof efforts in San Francisco. Joslin trained as an architect and has always had a sustainability interest. He was involved with working with Hock and Liptan on the original bonuses and incentives that were part of Portland's planning code. *"*Hopefully I will be repeating that experience here.*"*

Joslin had been on the east coast of the US having lunch with a colleague after having just accepted his position in San Francisco. The colleague was the founding chair of Green Roofs for Healthy Cities and informed Joslin that they were considering the next green roof conference being held in Seattle. Joslin suggested they have it in San Francisco instead, especially because San Francisco was so far behind in green roof initiatives. There are no incentives, requirements or specific programs. Joslin hoped that *"*the conference would jumpstart the conversation and start leading us towards some policy and regulatory elements*".* He thinks it was very successful as previously there had been no real internal dialogue around the concept of green roofs. *"*We are not very practised at working together across departments and this was clearly the kind of technology and effort that was going to require that*."* One of the first things that happened after the conference was the formation of a San Francisco branch of SWISSNEX, a Swiss government initiative which helps educate other cities about green roofs. This is how the tour of green roofs in Switzerland had occurred. It included academics, industry representatives, policy advocates and government. "It was an incredibly informative trip, for me particularly, because we saw very directly in the case of these cities what happens as a direct result of the right policies and programs. They have been doing it in Switzerland longer. As Tom Liptan is the 'godfather' of green roofs over here, Stephan Brenneisan is the Swiss equivalent*."* Joslin explains that Switzerland has been building green roofs so consistently and for so long there is no longer need to discuss the efficacy or reasonability. They are at a point where they are studying now how green roofs contribute to biodiversity.

Joslin personally feels that San Francisco does not need three to five years to figure out if green roofs work there or not. *"*I am more of the thinking if we build them they will come*."* One of the things he learnt in Switzerland is that sometimes they fail. Joslin clarifies that they might fail as a plant culture but all the other functionalities are there such as storm water remediation, filtration, insulating value, promoting roof life. The option is to refine the planting or wait and let nature take over. Joslin thinks that left to their own devices true believers, early adopters or others who are motivated will continue to add to the green roof inventory, but very slowly. He explains that at the point where you introduce incentives, regulations or a blend there are predictable results. First, he says, there is a steep incline in the proliferation of green roofs. Then next there is a drop in the cost of the green roofs as the market responds to the increased demand with more products and increased expertise available.

Again the impact of the conference is reiterated as educating the San Francisco community of the potential benefits of green roofs. Joslin also mentions the document created by SPUR and the significance of this in aiding the creation of a road map for green roofs implementation in San Francisco. He feels that this document and the conference galvanised a high level of participation between primary agencies. These agencies are the Department of Planning, the Public Utilities Commission, the Department of Public Works and the San Francisco Office of the Environment.

Joslin hopes that ARUP and Weeks will keep bringing together the collective economic case as this is helpful in developmental conversation. He says it is there in bits and pieces but not collectively. When there is the economic case and avoided cost calculated it is easier to translate this into financial incentives, Joslin explains. I asked Joslin if there was a major driver for green roofs in San Francisco. He explained that because of the multiple benefits there may not be the overarching driver but a number may contribute. I also asked him if there had been much conversation about the human health and wellbeing of having increased nature in the city. "That's been more of an internal conversation than a public conversation, but I think we know intuitively it has a lot to contribute*."*

We discussed green walls and Joslin agrees it is harder to make the economic case for them, even though they are aesthetically pleasing and well-liked. I told him about the indoor green walls in Toronto that I was so impressed with. The local San Francisco green wall at the Drew School is not considered sustainable by his department, yet he does acknowledge the aesthetics and pleasure that people get from it.

Joslin then took me through his presentation for *CitiesAlive*. In it were density maps of San Francisco and we discussed the number of new developments being built. Most places I had visited in the US had exhibited signs of financial crisis, with building and development slowed. I asked Joslin where was their crisis? *"*There is no crisis here. But when you look at green roofs we are at the bottom of the heap*."* It was interesting he related these two points but we both tacitly understood why. In other cities, green roofs had frequently been in response to crisis. "There is fear concerning that we don't have everything we need in place. We don't have a tool kit in place and we haven't had a road map. And we haven't had Tom*!"* I commented how often these 'local champions', the risk takers, have been vital to progression. Joslin agreed. *"*His story is very methodical. Tom saw roofs elsewhere. He thought intuitively it made sense. He stuck one on his garage. He monitored the shit out of it

and came up with some results. He took them to his boss who thought it was interesting and decided to scale it up to see if it works on a public roof. All results were scalable and it went from there.*"* In these few short sentences Joslin had summed up two core repeated themes of my journey: the intuitive knowing and the local champion risk takers.

Again Joslin presented a recurring theme, and one that I related to as occurring in my home town. *"*San Francisco has a special challenge. We have silos. We have bureaucracies who don't talk to one another*."* Joslin showed me photos in his presentation of a green roof on a local building that had not been maintained and died after the building had changed owners. The green roof then naturally re-foliated and is now considered successful. San Francisco also has a green roof on their City Hall similar to Chicago. Joslin considers that as a result of the conference San Francisco has a number of champions and they have a roadmap, two components that were missing prior.

His presentation included relating the global challenges to San Francisco. "And we have the obvious of climate change and sea rise. Sea rise is very real to us here because we are always seeing it. It's not good, we are experiencing storm surges. For me it's not about sustainability, it's about survivability. We need to keep passionately making the case."

****

Jeff was a perfect last interview. He summed up the San Francisco story beautifully. So much of what he mentioned were the recurring themes of my journey which I think reflected the depth of both our understandings and learnings. I saw many similarities between San Francisco and my home city. There are possible impending crises, but neither city has yet faced the ones that other US cities are experiencing. Thus the need for the local champions, who, as Jeff says, and I have heard repeated, have an "intuitive knowing". I could sense Jeff's desire to be prepared and to compile the tool kit. After his involvement with Portland, I also get the sense he is the person for the job. I enjoyed his attitude, which is similar to mine, in that the proof is there for the benefits of nature in the city. We don't need to reinvent the wheel in every city; we just need to do.

B.12 Jeff Joslin

	Motivators and Drivers		
Stages of social movement	**Environmental**	**Social** (including emotional)	**Economic**
Emergence	Climate change and sea level rise	Intuitive knowing	
Coalescence	Multiple benefits	Conference	
Any Identified Barriers		Silos between departments	

California Academy of Sciences-20/12/2013

Kendra Hauser tour guide

I had the opportunity through my contacts to be taken on a private tour of the California Academy of Sciences, a science museum and a scientific and educational institution. The Academy has the largest green roof in San Francisco. We started with an interior tour and I discovered a wonderful green wall which had been created as a back drop for the educational talks. The wall uses the same techniques as the Patric Blanc living walls and is created by a man who trained under Blanc. My tour guide, Hauser, says the response to the wall by the public is very positive. *"*People think the wall is more applicable to having at their house rather than having a living roof. People love a big green roof but I think they get a little daunted by the scale of it.*"*

Hauser offered to tell me the story of the current building's design. When they were deciding to redo the building *"*the thinking was that a building was needed for the 21st century and one that represents our commitment to science and education. We have researchers all over the world. The Academy thought it was a natural movement to have science education and a green building because it is another way we can teach about science. It is another way we can teach about how to be

sustainable, about how to preserve the natural world. It wasn't a push to make it happen, we didn't need to convince anyone. Everyone felt this was the next step.*"*

The Academy is a double LEED platinum and very energy efficient, with recycling initiatives. The building has a lot of natural light, not only save on lighting but also because the architect wanted the building to feel open and transparent so people could feel everything, and it creates a "piazza feel" in the building. The windows also act as heating and cooling ventilators. The natural light is also for the health of the employees.

We then went upon the roof. It is a stunning roof with a curved roof. The architect described his vision at the tender stage, *"*It will be like a giant hand had lifted the park up and put a building under it.*"* The curves sweep into seven domes which represent the seven hills of San Francisco. Within these domes are the windows, which not only give light to the public but also to the animals and plants housed below which provides another level of complexity to monitor and factor in. "The idea is also to encourage people to interact and become interested in green roofs, to encourage them to go away and think about them further. We want to promote green roofs.*"* I asked her why and she listed the reasons: *"*They have functional benefits for the building such as increasing the roof's life span, heating and cooling savings, storm water management, sound reduction and for urban heat island. They are also great for biodiversity and we can encourage wild life on our roof. We have the species you don't normally see in an urban environment. The third aspect is for the human benefit and being able to look out on to greenery, so a health benefit. They provide amenities for the public plus the possibility of growing food. So we try to educate the public around all the benefits.*"*

The biodiversity on the roof has increased from an initial nine species to currently over eighty species. We try to encourage biodiversity by creating habitat niches such as logs and rocks and also a bee box.

There are volunteers who come regularly to help maintain the roof. Hauser relates *"*how a lot of them come for the nature interaction as they may have indoor jobs, or for respite or to relax*".*

Youtube-20/12/2013

Again it was only through a contact that I was able to have a personal tour of the Youtube headquarters. The building has a green roof that undulates. There is no access, except for maintenance but it is visible through windows. They do water the roof a bit but basically leave it “to what grows grows”. It helped achieve LEED platinum rating.

Throughout the building there were scattered biophilic design features. One was the use of fractal patterns in the creative think tank room. Images of flickering fires were on a tower of screen and the idea was to help the employees to step outside their normal environment and to step outside the box in their thinking. There are atriums for light and indoor trees in a mini forest arrangement.

****

I met with a lot of people in San Francisco and saw a lot of initiatives. It was a perfect finale to my tour as many of the concepts that had arisen along my journey were presented in this city.

Everyone I interviewed, apart from Mary at Google, mentioned the significance of the CitiesAlive conference. This sits in line with social movement theory as a significant stage as it unites the interested people. The barrier of siloed departments was recognised and mentioned frequently. Another interesting point was that there was no significant villain as there had often been in other cities, there were potential ones. This means there was no motivating crisis. San Francisco, as Joslin mentioned, is behind other cities in green roofs. It was depending on the local champions who were acting on their passion and intuitive knowing.

APPENDIX C MATRIX OF WEBSITES

Table C.1 Matrix of websites

Country	City	Title	Link
Australia	Melbourne	Melbourne Water Encourages Australian Citizens to Build 10,000 Rain Gardens	http://goo.gl/ozkCNY
	Sydney	The world's tallest vertical garden lives and breathes in Sydney	http://goo.gl/kz7aDA
Austria	Hausmannstätten	Luscious Green Roofs Top a Modern Tunnel Monitoring Complex in Austria	http://goo.gl/ai9wzl
America	Eureka Springs	Breathtaking Thorncrown Chapel is one of America's greatest architectural masterpieces	http://goo.gl/LbpPd1
	New York	Patrick Blanc's Gorgeous Vertical Gardens Flank the 10th Annual Orchid Show at NYBG	http://goo.gl/GNI6EE
		The Dragonfly: vertical farming vision for New York's skyline	http://goo.gl/znS6OQ
		Get a Free Fruit Tree at MillionTreesNYC's Fall Tree Giveaway!	http://goo.gl/d7z8z3

Country	City	Title	Link
America cont.	New York cont.	How New York Is Building an Entire Neighborhood on Top of a Rail Yard	http://goo.gl/in5gEV
		Grow Studio Unveils Plans for a Community Rooftop Farm in Harlem!	http://goo.gl/VmrQYp
		Osborne Association's Innovative Blue and Green Roof Brings Urban Beekeeping to the South Bronx	http://goo.gl/K3FQUh
		Blesso Properties Creates Innovative Eco-Urban Designs for NYC Real Estate	http://goo.gl/jCJMs5
		Brooklyn Bridge Park Unveils 10 Designs to Turn Dilapidated Warehouses into Greenery-Filled Destinations	http://goo.gl/X9XUZY
		Cook + Fox's LEED-CI Platinum 641 Avenue of the Americas is Capped With a Sprawling Green Roof	http://goo.gl/NGu2c6
		Mayor Bloomberg Announces Plan for Willets Point, Queens to be Revamped into New Green Neighborhood	http://goo.gl/2HeUTU
		New York's High Line: Why cities want parks in the sky	http://goo.gl/jvZ3Yb
		Waterfront New York City Theatre Would Feature an Elevated Park that Meets the High Line	http://goo.gl/3xUDEt
		The High Line's Final Section Will Harken Back to a Wonderfully Wild Aesthetic	http://goo.gl/ucnvj3

Country	City	Title	Link
America	New York	NYC DEP Unveils Plan to Add Stormwater-Filtering Green Infrastructure to Bed-Stuy Streets	http://goo.gl/Jvx057
		Bjarke Ingels chosen to design swanky yet 'affordable' High Line-hugging condos in Chelsea	http://goo.gl/gH19Vo
		A Bold Concept for Post-Sandy Manhattan	http://goo.gl/aNflB2
	Boston	TREEPODS: Carbon-Scrubbing Artificial Trees for Boston City Streets	http://goo.gl/QNuCEI
	Mountain View	Exclusive Preview: Google's New Built-from-Scratch Googleplex	http://goo.gl/0jMdoD
		Google's new headquarters: an upgradable, futuristic greenhouse	http://goo.gl/YykCco
	Sunnyvale	Biophilia grows in Silicon Valley	http://goo.gl/P8hNX4
	Oregon	The Blue Room, biophilia and retrofitting Oregon's prisons	http://goo.gl/Iwj7Ah
	San Francisco	Drew School	http://goo.gl/UJBI7M
Asia	Singapore	Pelli Clarke Pelli's Yale-NUS Campus Breaks Ground in Singapore	http://goo.gl/AeKmk
	Vietnam	Vietnam Constructs World's Largest Dragon-Shaped Bridge – And It Breathes Fire!	http://goo.gl/SNoce

Country	City	Title	Link
	Bangladesh	“Shobuj Pata” (Green Leaf) Eco Community Development / JET, JCI, and Terraplan	http://goo.gl/KZgzy
	Lebanon	A Green Project in Lebanon	https://goo.gl/Wq8VLL
Brazil	São Paulo	São Paulo Replaces Parking Spots with Mini ‘Parklets’ for a More Pedestrian-Friendly Urban Environment	http://goo.gl/JiWD8Z
Canada	Vancouver	North America’s Largest Green Wall is Now Complete in Vancouver	http://goo.gl/WQg5Z6
China	Southwest China City	Vincent Callebaut Unveils Plans for Futuristic “Flavors Orchard” Farm City in China	http://goo.gl/BHzqbo
	Beijing	MAD Architects Break Ground on Mountainous Chaoyang Park Plaza in Beijing	http://goo.gl/QNKtSs
		Jean Nouvel Unveils Plans for Nature-Filled National Art Museum of China	http://goo.gl/RxA5gT
	Nanjing	MAD Architects Unveil Mountain-Shaped Nanjing Zendai Himalayas Center	http://goo.gl/5S4pEF
	Shenzhen	Self-sustaining "farmscrapers" proposed for Shenzhen	http://goo.gl/3RZbQR
	Hong Kong	New Hong Kong school campus to boast a green, bioclimatic facade	http://goo.gl/k2muVe

Country	City	Title	Link
Denmark	Vinge	This Clever Train Station Doubles as a Part of the Landscape	http://goo.gl/zkdPpn
	Copenhagen	How one city that's vulnerable to climate change is fighting back	http://goo.gl/97q8BK
England	Cornwall	New Biodiversity Treehouse Planned for the Eden Project's Largest Indoor Rainforest	http://goo.gl/zRur5Y
	Staplehurst	England's First Passive House is a Vaulted Green-Roofed Wonder	http://goo.gl/duROLA
	London	Two Hyde Park Bus Shelters Adorned with 'Living Roofs'	http://goo.gl/B7u9uI
France	Paris	An amazing 650-foot-long undulating green roof tops this Parisian lab	http://goo.gl/y9CPwR
		France decrees new rooftops must be covered in plants or solar panels	http://www.theguardian.com/world/2015/mar/20/france-decrees-new-rooftops-must-be-covered-in-plants-or-solar-panels?CMP=soc_567
Germany	Berlin	Spiraling Green8 Skyscraper is a 'Vertical Garden City' for Berlin	http://goo.gl/ej9Q0e
Italy	Moena	Carpark Hidden Inside a Green-Roofed Bridge Respects the Mountains in Italy	http://goo.gl/V27LiU
	Turin	Vertical Forest: An Urban Treehouse That protects Residents from Air and Noise Pollution	http://goo.gl/LIi9dH

Country	City	Title	Link
	Milan	Bosco Verticale by Stefano Boeri Greens Milan's Skyline	http://goo.gl/o9OeOa
Senegal	Dakar	Senegal begins planting the Great Green Wall against climate change	http://goo.gl/336prp
Spain	Barcelona	Vertical School Gardens - Educational Successes in Barcelona	http://goo.gl/TNPev2
Sri Lanka	Colombo	Clearpoint Tower in Sri Lanka Will Become the World's Tallest Vertical Garden	http://goo.gl/rIQX9n
Sweden	Halland	Mixed-Use Butterfly Square Absorbs Solar Energy Through Wing-Like Green Roofs	http://goo.gl/Dq86GU
Taiwan	Taipei	DNA-inspired twisting Agora Garden underway in Taipei City	http://goo.gl/ZYfmX
United Arab Emirates	Dubai	Dubai's Sustainable City Will be Powered by 600,000 Square Feet of Solar Cells	http://goo.gl/Go9SM
		Aladdin City: Construction to begin on Dubai Creek's epic fantasy towers next year	http://goo.gl/DMGnLY

APPENDIX D
GOOGLE TRENDS

The graphs are broad and purely indicative, but interesting in revealing trends. The drop- off at the end of some is only due to the lack of inputted data at that point. The high peaks in biophilia and biophilia hypothesis coincide with the release of a music album by popular Icelandic songstress, Björk.

Biophilia:

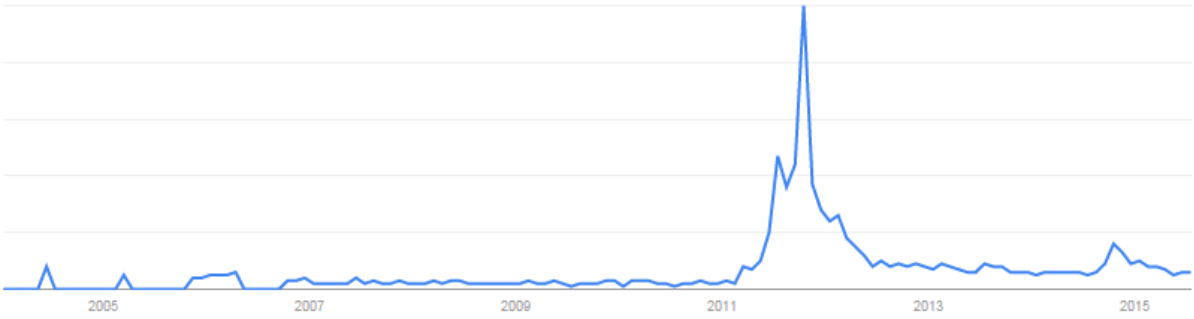


Figure B.1 Biophilia google trends

Biophilia Hypothesis:

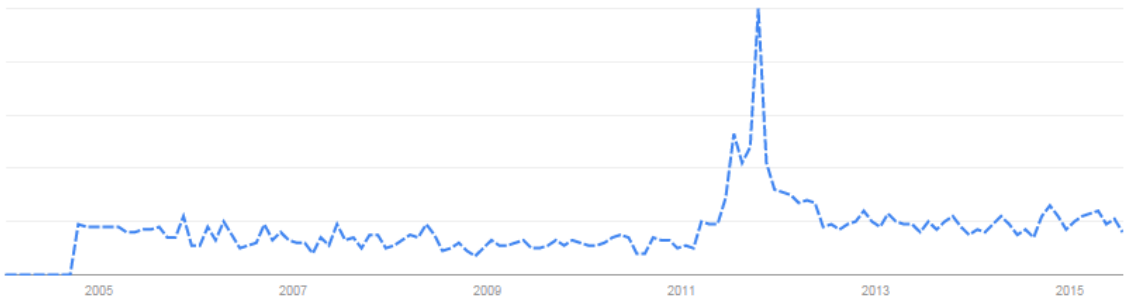
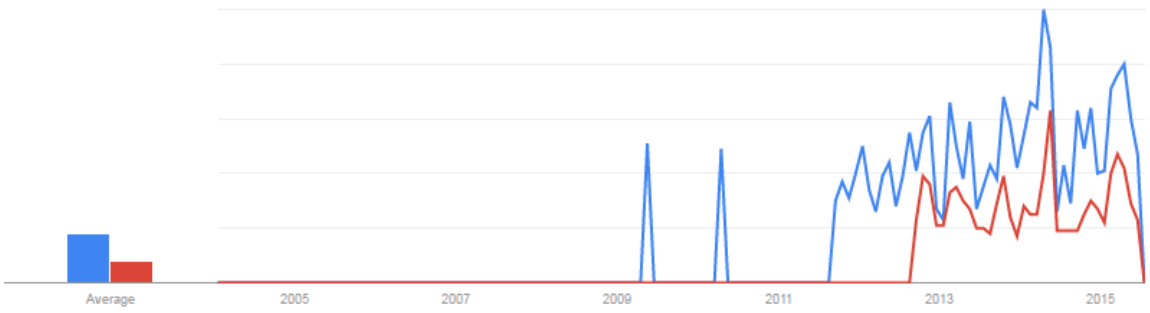


Figure C.2 Biophilia hypothesis google trends

Figure C.3 What countries are looking at Biophilia Hypothesis



Biophilic (blue) and Biophilic Design (red)

Figure C.4 Biophilic and biophilic design google trends